

# Part II. Reference

# DocBook Element Reference

This reference describes every element in the DocBook DTD.

In DocBook V3.1, introduced in February, 1999, the following elements were added to DocBook: `answer`, `audiodata`, `audioobject`, `caption`, `colophon`, `constant`, `imagedata`, `imageobject`, `imageobjectco`, `informalfigure`, `inlinemediaobject`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `objectinfo`, `qandadiv`, `qandaentry`, `qandaset`, `question`, `section`, `sectioninfo`, `textobject`, `varname`, `videodata`, `videoobject`.

DocBook V4.0, introduced in January, 2001, the following elements were added: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `bibliographyinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `classsynopsis`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `initializer`, `interfacename`, `methodname`, `methodparam`, `methodsynopsis`, `modifier`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `remark`, `revdescription`, `setindexinfo`, `sidebarinfo`, `simplemsgentry`.

The following additional changes were made in DocBook V4.0: `artheader` was renamed `articleinfo`; `comment` was renamed `remark`; `docinfo` was broken into a set of other `info` elements; and `bookbiblio`, `interfacedefinition`, and `seriesinfo` were removed.

DocBook V4.2, introduced in FIXME: April, 2002, the following elements were added: `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliosource`, `blockinfo`, `citebiblioid`, `coref`, `errortext`, `personblurb`, `personname`, `refsection`, `refsectioninfo`, `textdata`.

Additional changes made to DocBook V4.2 are summarized in the DocBook V4.2 Specification<sup>iv</sup>.

## Organization of Reference Pages

The description of each element in this reference is divided into the following sections:

### Synopsis

Provides a quick synopsis of the element. The content of the synopsis table varies according to the nature of the element described, but may include any or all of the following sections:

#### Content Model or Declared Content

Describes the content model of the element in SGML/XML DTD terms. See the section called “Understanding Content Models”.

#### Inclusions

Lists “inclusions.” Inclusions are an SGML feature. Included elements can appear anywhere inside the element that includes them, even in places that aren't ordinarily valid. For example, `Chapter` includes `IndexTerm`. This means that within a `Chapter`, `IndexTerm` can appear inside `Emphasis`, for instance, even though the content model of `Emphasis` does not explicitly allow `IndexTerms`.

#### Exclusions

<sup>iv</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/docbook-4.2.html>

Lists “exclusions.” Exclusions are an SGML feature. Excluded elements cannot appear anywhere inside the element that excludes them, even in places that are ordinarily valid. For example, `Footnote` excludes `Footnote`. This means that a `Footnote` cannot appear inside a `Para` inside a `Footnote`, even though `Footnote` appears in the content model of `Para`.

Lists elements that are excluded from appearing at any level below the element described.

#### Attributes

Provides a synopsis of the attributes on the element. For brevity, common attributes are described only once, in this introduction.

#### Tag Minimization

Indicates if start- or end-tags may be omitted. Tag omission is dependent on both the DTD and your SGML declaration. If a tag is described as omissible here, it is omissible if your declaration allows tag omission. The standard DocBook declaration does not.

#### Parameter Entities

Lists the parameter entities in which the element described appears. Parameter entities are important when you are customizing the DTD.

#### Description

Describes the semantics of the element in detail.

#### Processing expectations

Summarizes specific formatting expectations of the element. Many processing expectations are influenced by attribute values. Be sure to consult the description of element attributes as well.

#### Future changes

Identifies changes that are scheduled for future versions of the DTD. These changes are highlighted because they involve some backward-incompatibility that may make currently valid DocBook documents no longer valid under the new version.

#### Attributes

Describes the semantics of each attribute in detail.

#### See Also

Lists similar or related elements.

#### Examples

Provides examples of proper usage for the element. Generally, the smallest example required to reasonably demonstrate the element is used. In many cases, a formatted version of the example is also shown.

All of the examples printed in the book use the SGML version of DocBook. The CD-ROM includes the full text of all of the examples.

Formatted examples are indicated using a vertical bar.

## Understanding Content Models

Each element synopsis begins with a concise description of the elements it can contain. This description is in DTD “content model” syntax, with all parameter entities expanded.

Content models are the way that DTDs describe the name, number, and order of other elements that may be used inside an element. The primary feature of content model syntax is that it is concise, but this conciseness comes at the cost of legibility until you are familiar with the syntax.

There are six components to content model syntax: element names, keywords, repetitions, sequences, alternatives, and groups.

### Element names

An element name in a content model indicates that an element of that type may (or must) occur at that position.

A content model of `Para` indicates that the element must contain a single paragraph.

### Keywords

There are two keywords that occur in the content models of DocBook elements: `EMPTY`, and `#PCDATA`.

A content model that consists of the single keyword `EMPTY` identifies an element as an empty element. Empty elements are not allowed to have any content. In order for the word “EMPTY” to have this special meaning, it must be the first and only word in the content model. The word “EMPTY” at any other place is treated as an element name.

The `#PCDATA` keyword indicates that text may occur at that position. The text may consist of entity references and any characters that are legal in the document character set. For XML documents, the document character set is always Unicode. In SGML the declaration can identify character sets and ranges that are allowed. DocBook SGML documents use the ISO Latin 1 character set.

### Repetitions

An unadorned element name indicates that an element must occur exactly once at that position. A content model can also specify that an element may occur zero or more times, one or more times, or exactly zero or one time. This is accomplished by following the element name with one of the following characters: `*` for zero or more times, `+` for one or more times, or `?` for exactly zero or one times.

A content model of `Para+` indicates that the element must contain at least one paragraph and may contain many.

### Sequences

If element names in a content model are separated by commas, then they must occur in sequence.

A content model of `Title, Para` indicates that the element must contain a single title followed by a single paragraph.

### Alternatives

If element names in a content model are separated by vertical bars (`|`), then they are alternatives. These are sometimes called “or groups” because they require the selection of one or another element.

A content model of `Phrase | Para` indicates that the element must contain either a single phrase or a single paragraph.

In SGML, there is another connector: the ampersand (&). The ampersand is a kind of combination of alternative and sequence, which means that all of the elements must occur, but they can occur in any order. DocBook does not have any content models that use the ampersand connector. XML does not allow it.

## Groups

Finally, parentheses may be used around part of a content model. A group formed this way can have repetition indicators and may occur as part of a sequence.

A content model of `(Literal | Replaceable)+` indicates that either `Literal` or `Replaceable` must occur and they can be repeated (and mixed) any number of times.

## Content models and validity

A parser uses the content models to determine if a given document is valid. In order for a document to be valid, the content of every element in the document must “match” the content model for that element.

In practical terms, match means that it must be possible to expand the content model until it exactly matches the sequence of elements in the document.

For example, consider the content model of the `Epigraph` element: `Attribution?, (FormalPara | Para | SimPara)+`. This indicates that the following document fragment is valid:

```
<epigraph>
<para>Some text</para>
</epigraph>
```

It is valid because the following expansion of the content model exactly matches the actual content: choose zero occurrences of `Attribution`, choose the alternative `Para` from the group, and choose to let the “+” match once.

By the same token, this example is not valid because there is no expansion of the content model that can match it:

```
<epigraph>
<para>Some text</para>
<attribution>John Doe</attribution>
</epigraph>
```

There is one additional restriction on the matching ability of the parser: it is not allowed to “look ahead.” This means that there are many useful content models that are ambiguous.

## Ambiguity

Ambiguity is not allowed. The parser must always be able to choose exactly what to match based upon the next input token. Consider the following content model: `Meta*, Title?, Meta*`.

The intent is clear: to allow some meta-information and a single, optional `Title`. But this content model is ambiguous for the following reason: if the document content begins with a `Meta` element, it is impossible to tell if it matches the `Meta` before the `Title` or after without looking ahead.

Ambiguous content models are detected by the parser when it reads the DTD. It is not sufficient that your document simply be unambiguous; it must not be possible to construct any ambiguous document.

## #PCDATA and repetition

The #PCDATA keyword can always match the empty string. This makes it impossible to force an element that may contain characters not to be empty. In other words, the following content model *does not* guarantee that the element is not empty: (#PCDATA)+.

In XML, the #PCDATA keyword is only allowed in optional, repeatable “or groups”, and it must be the first member of the group.

## Common Attributes

The following attributes occur on all elements. They are summarized here once for brevity and to make the additional attributes that occur on many elements stand out.

Name	Type	Default
Arch	CDATA	<i>None</i>
Condition	CDATA	<i>None</i>
Conformance	NMTOKENS	<i>None</i>
ID	ID	<i>None/Required<sup>a</sup></i>
Lang	CDATA	<i>None</i>
OS	CDATA	<i>None</i>
Remap	CDATA	<i>None</i>
Role	CDATA	<i>None</i>
Revision	CDATA	<i>None</i>
RevisionFlag	<i>Enumerated:</i> Changed Added Deleted Off	<i>None</i>
Security	CDATA	<i>None</i>
UserLevel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
Vendor	CDATA	<i>None</i>
XrefLabel	CDATA	<i>None</i>

<sup>a</sup>On a few elements, the ID is required, but on most it is not.

### Arch

Arch designates the computer or chip architecture to which the element applies.

### Condition

**V4.0** Condition is a general-purpose effectivity attribute with no specified semantics. Many DocBook users observed that in order to add an effectivity condition that was unique to their environment required “abusing” the

semantics of one of the existing attributes, or adding their own, making their customization an extension rather than a subset.

The `Condition` attribute provides a standard place for application-specific effectivity.

## Conformance

`Conformance` indicates standards conformance characteristics of the item contained in the element. These characteristics are application-specific. DocBook provides no defaults.

## ID

`ID` is an identifying string for the element. It must be unique at least within the document and must begin with a letter.

## Lang

`Lang` should be a language code drawn from ISO 639 (perhaps extended with a country code drawn from ISO 3166, as `en-US`). Use it when you need to signal your application to change hyphenation and other display characteristics.

## OS

`OS` indicates the operating system to which the element is applicable.

## Remap

`Remap` contains an element name or similar semantic identifier assigned to the content in a previous markup scheme.

## Role

`Role` contains a string used to classify or subclassify an element.

While `Role` is a common attribute in the sense that it occurs on almost all elements, it is not part of either of the common attributes parameter entities (`%common.attrib;` or `%idreq.common.attrib;`). It is parameterized differently because it is useful to be able to subclass `Role` independently on different elements.

## Revision

`Revision` indicates the editorial revision to which the element belongs.

## RevisionFlag

`RevisionFlag` indicates the revision status of element; the default is that the element hasn't been revised. `RevisionFlag` is intended only for simple revision management: to track the entire history of a document use a proper revision control system. Use `RevisionFlag` for indicating changes from one version to the next, no more.

## Security

**V4.0** `Security` identifies something about the security level associated with the element to which it applies.

## UserLevel

UserLevel indicates the level of user experience to which element applies.

Vendor

Vendor indicates the computer vendor to which the element applies.

XrefLabel

XrefLabel holds text to be used when a cross reference (XRef) is made to the element.

## Attribute Types

SGML offers a small selection of attribute types. (XML offers a subset of these.) For convenience, a brief description of each of these types is provided here:

CDATA

A string of characters.

NUMBER

A number. Numbers must begin with a hyphen or digit and can include the decimal point.

NMTOKEN

A sequence of name characters (letters, digits, hyphens, and periods). This differs from a CDATA attribute because it cannot contain spaces, punctuation, or other non-name characters.

NMTOKENS

A sequence of one or more space-delimited NMTOKEN values.

NUTOKEN

A sequence of number characters (digits, hyphens, and periods). This differs from a NUMBER field because it is not required to begin with a digit or a hyphen.

ENTITY

An entity name. The value of an ENTITY attribute must be the name of a declared entity.

NAME

A name. A name must begin with a letter and can consist of letters, digits, hyphens, and periods.

NAMES

A sequence of one or more space-delimited NAME values.

ID

An ID. IDs are names that must be globally unique within the document. The ID attribute declares the ID.

IDREF

An single ID. IDs are names that must be globally unique within the document. The value of an IDREF attribute must be the name of an ID attribute defined in the document.

#### IDREFS

A sequence of one or more space-delimited ID values.



## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <abbrev>Assn.</abbrev> of Computing Machinery would probably never
abbreviate &ldquo;Association&rdquo; like this.
</para>
```

The Assn. of Computing Machinery would probably never abbreviate “Association” like this.

For additional examples, see also bibliography, biblioset, footnote, glossary.

# abstract

abstract -- A summary

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
abstract ::=
(title?,
 (formalpara|para|simpara)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An abstract can occur in most components of DocBook. It is expected to contain some sort of summary of the content with which it is associated (by containment).

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes suppressed. Often presented in alternate outputs.

## Parents

These elements contain abstract: appendix, appendixinfo, article, articleinfo, bibliodiv, bibliography, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, blockquote, bookinfo, callout, chapter, chapterinfo, glossary, glossaryinfo, glossdiv, index, indexinfo, itemizedlist, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, objectinfo, orderedlist, partinfo, partintro, preface, prefaceinfo, procedure, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1, refsect1info, refsect2, refsect2info, refsect3, refsect3info, refsection, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdiv, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1, sect1info, sect2, sect2info, sect3, sect3info, sect4, sect4info, sect5, sect5info, section, sectioninfo, setindex, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo, simplesect, step, variablelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in abstract: formalpara, para, simpara, title.

## See Also

blockquote, epigraph, highlights, sidebar.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter><title>Some Chapter</title>
```

```
<abstract>
<para>
In brief, &hellip;
</para>
</abstract>
<para>
In this chapter, &hellip;
</para>
</chapter>
```

For additional examples, see also section.

# accel

accel -- A graphical user interface (GUI) keyboard shortcut

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
accel ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An accelerator is usually a letter used with a meta key (such as control or alt) to activate some element of a GUI without using the mouse to point and click at it.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Often underlined.

## Parents

These elements contain accel: `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `interface`.

## Children

The following elements occur in accel: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## See Also

`guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `menuchoice`, `mousebutton`, `shortcut`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para os="windows">
You can exit most Windows applications by selecting
<guimenuitem><accel>Q</accel>uit</guimenuitem> or
<guimenuitem>E<accel>x</accel>it</guimenuitem> from
the <guimenu><accel>F</accel>ile</guimenu> menu.
</para>
```

You can exit most Windows applications by selecting Quit or Exit from the File menu.

# ackno

ackno -- Acknowledgements in an Article

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
ackno ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Acknowledgements in an Article.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain ackno: article.

## Children

The following elements occur in ackno: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<article>
<articleinfo>
<author><firstname>Norman</firstname><surname>Walsh</surname></author>
</articleinfo>
<para>
This is an odd, minimalist sort of article example.
</para>
<ackno>
First, I'd like to thank the members of the academy, &hellip;
</ackno>
</article>
```

# acronym

acronym -- An often pronounceable word made from the initial (or selected) letters of a name or phrase

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
acronym ::=
(#PCDATA|acronym|emphasis|trademark|link|olink|ulink|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A pronounceable contraction of initials. An acronym is often printed in all capitals or small capitals, although this is sometimes incorrect (consider dpi or bps).

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain acronym: abbrev, acronym, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridge-head, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, firstterm, foreignphrase, glossentry, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, label, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, member, msgaud, olink, para, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentrytitle, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink, wordasword.

## Children

The following elements occur in acronym: acronym, anchor, beginpage, emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

abbrev, emphasis, foreignphrase, phrase, quote, wordasword.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
In the United States, <acronym>NASA</acronym> stands for the
National Aeronautics and Space Administration.
</para>
```

In the United States, NASA stands for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration.

For additional examples, see also `application`, `command`, `glossary`, `hardware`, `option`, `variablelist`.

# action

action -- A response to a user event

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
action ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediabobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

Actions are usually associated with GUIs. An event might be movement or clicking of the mouse, a change in focus, or any number of other occurrences.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

The content model of `Action` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`) in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain `action`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`,

refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in action: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenu-item, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, oclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Action.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Selecting <guimenuitem>Close</guimenuitem> closes the file and automatically
runs <action>end of job cleanup</action>.
</para>
```

Selecting Close closes the file and automatically runs end of job cleanup.

# address

address -- A real-world address, generally a postal address

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
address ::=
(#PCDATA|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|othername|
affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|street|pob|postcode|city|state|
country|phone|fax|email|otheraddr)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
format	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> linespecific	"linespecific"
linenumbering	<i>Enumeration:</i> numbered unnumbered	<i>None</i>

## Description

An address is generally a postal address, although it does contain elements for FAX and Email addresses as well as the catch-all OtherAddr.

The linespecific notation on the Format attribute makes line breaks and other spaces significant in an Address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant.

## Future Changes

The xml:space attribute is automatically provided in the XML DTD.

## Parents

These elements contain address: affiliation, answer, appendix, appendixinfo, article, articleinfo, author, bibliodiv, biblioentry, bibliography, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, blockquote, bookinfo, callout, caution, chapter, chapterinfo, confgroup, constraintdef, editor, example, figure, footnote, glossary, glossaryinfo, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, indexdiv, indexinfo, informalexample, informalfigure, itemizedlist, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, objectinfo, orderedlist, othercredit, para, partinfo, partintro, preface, prefaceinfo, procedure, publisher, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1, refsect1info, refsect2, refsect2info, refsect3, refsect3info, refsection, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdiv, refsynopsisdivinfo,

revdescription, sect1, sect1info, sect2, sect2info, sect3, sect3info, sect4, sect4info, sect5, sect5info, section, sectioninfo, setindex, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebar, sidebarinfo, simplesect, step, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in address: affiliation, authorblurb, city, contrib, country, email, fax, firstname, honorific, lineage, otheraddr, othername, personname, phone, pob, postcode, state, street, surname.

## Attributes

format

The Format attribute applies the linespecific notation to all Addresses. All white space and line breaks must be preserved.

linenumbering

**V4.0** Line numbering indicates whether or not the lines of an Address are to be automatically numbered. The details of numbering (every line or only selected lines, on the left or right, etc.) are left up to the processing application. Be aware that not all processors are capable of numbering lines.

## See Also

city, country, email, fax, otheraddr, phone, pob, postcode, state, street.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>An example of a postal mail address in the United States:
<address>
John and Jane Doe
<street>100 Main Street</street>
<city>Anytown</city>, <state>NY</state> <postcode>12345</postcode>
<country>USA</country>
</address>
</para>
```

An example of a postal mail address in the United States:

John and Jane Doe  
100 Main Street  
Anytown, NY 12345  
USA

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>An example of a post office box address in the United States:
<address>
```

```
<pob>P.O. Box 1234</pob>
<city>Anytown</city>, <state>MA</state> <postcode>12345</postcode>
<country>USA</country>
</address>
</para>
```

An example of a post office box address in the United States:

P.O. Box 1234  
Anytown, MA 12345  
USA

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>Addresses can also include phone numbers:
<address>
John Smith
<street>100 Pine Blvd</street>
<city>Anytown</city>, <state>NY</state> <postcode>12345</postcode>
<country>USA</country>
<phone>914.555.1212</phone>
<fax>914.555.1212</fax>
</address>
</para>
```

Addresses can also include phone numbers:

John Smith  
100 Pine Blvd  
Anytown, NY 12345  
USA  
914.555.1212  
914.555.1212

For additional examples, see also `confgroup`, `otheraddr`, `publisher`.

# affiliation

affiliation -- The institutional affiliation of an individual

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
affiliation ::=  
(shortaffil?, jobtitle*, orgname?, orgdiv*, address*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The institutional affiliation of an author, contributor, or other individual.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, *Affiliation* will be removed from some of the places in which it now occurs. Instead of appearing inside *Author*, for example, a new wrapper element will be created to hold *Author*, *AuthorBlurb*, and *Affiliation*.

## Parents

These elements contain *affiliation*: *address*, *appendixinfo*, *articleinfo*, *author*, *biblioentry*, *bibliographyinfo*, *bibliomixed*, *bibliomset*, *biblioset*, *blockinfo*, *bookinfo*, *chapterinfo*, *collab*, *editor*, *glossaryinfo*, *indexinfo*, *objectinfo*, *othercredit*, *partinfo*, *prefaceinfo*, *refentryinfo*, *referenceinfo*, *refsect1info*, *refsect2info*, *refsect3info*, *refsectioninfo*, *refsynopsisdivinfo*, *sect1info*, *sect2info*, *sect3info*, *sect4info*, *sect5info*, *sectioninfo*, *setindexinfo*, *setinfo*, *sidebarinfo*.

## Children

The following elements occur in *affiliation*: *address*, *jobtitle*, *orgdiv*, *orgname*, *shortaffil*.

## See Also

*corpname*, *firstname*, *honorific*, *jobtitle*, *lineage*, *orgdiv*, *orgname*, *othername*, *shortaffil*, *surname*.

## Examples

For examples, see `author`, `authorgroup`, `bookinfo`, `contractsponsor`.

# alt

alt -- Text representation for a graphical element

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
alt ::=  
(#PCDATA)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A text (or other nonvisual) description of a graphical element. This is intended to be an alternative to the graphical presentation.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain alt: `equation`, `informalequation`, `inlineequation`.

## See Also

`audioobject`, `caption`, `graphic`, `imageobject`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `mediaobject`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## Examples

For examples, see `equation`, `informalequation`, `inlineequation`.

# anchor

anchor -- A spot in the document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
anchor ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Name	Type	Default
revisionflag	<i>Enumeration:</i> added changed deleted off	<i>None</i>
revision	CDATA	<i>None</i>
arch	CDATA	<i>None</i>
vendor	CDATA	<i>None</i>
security	CDATA	<i>None</i>
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>
remap	CDATA	<i>None</i>
xreflabel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
conformance	NMTOKENS	<i>None</i>
os	CDATA	<i>None</i>
userlevel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
id	ID	<i>Required</i>
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>
condition	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

An anchor identifies a single spot in the content. This may serve as the target for a cross reference, for example, from a `Link`. The `Anchor` element may occur almost anywhere.

`Anchor` has the `Role` attribute and all of the common attributes except `Lang`.

## Processing expectations

`Anchor` has no content and generally produces no output. It is a link target.

## Parents

These elements contain anchor: abbrev, acronym, action, answer, appendix, application, article, attribution, bibliodiv, bibliography, bibliomisc, blockquote, bridgehead, callout, caution, chapter, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, constraintdef, database, emphasis, entry, filename, firstterm, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossary, glossdiv, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, important, index, indexdiv, interfacename, itemizedlist, keycap, label, lineanotation, link, listitem, literal, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, member, msgaud, msgexplan, msgtext, note, olink, option, optional, orderedlist, para, parameter, partintro, phrase, preface, primary, primaryie, procedure, productname, programlisting, property, qandadiv, qandaset, question, quote, refentrytitle, refpurpose, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, remark, replaceable, revdescription, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, setindex, sidebar, simpara, simplesect, step, subscript, subtitle, superscript, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, tip, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput, variablelist, warning, wordasword.

## Attributes

pagenum

PageNum indicates the page on which the anchor occurs in some printed version of the document.

The PageNum attribute does not influence the pagination or page numbering of an SGML application processing the document; it is informative, not declarative.

## See Also

link, olink, ulink, xref.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The anchor element<anchor id="example.anchor.1"/> is empty and contributes
nothing to the flow of the content in which it occurs. It is only useful
as a target.
</para>
```

The anchor element is empty and contributes nothing to the flow of the content in which it occurs. It is only useful as a target.

# answer

answer -- An answer to a question posed in a QandASet

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
answer ::=
(label?,
(calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|functsynopsis|classsynopsis|
fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
figure|table|procedure|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|
indexterm)*,
qandaentry*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Within a QandAEntry, a Question may have an Answer. An Answer is optional (some questions have no answers) and may be repeated (some questions have more than one answer).

## Processing expectations

Answers are frequently introduced with a label, such as “A:”. If an Answer has a Label child element, the content of that Label is used as the label for the Answer. The DefaultLabel attribute on the nearest ancestor QandASet of an Answer can be used to indicate that a processing application should automatically generate a label for the Answer.

## Parents

These elements contain answer: qandaentry.

## Children

The following elements occur in answer: address, anchor, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, functsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, label, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, method-synopsis, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Examples

For examples, see `qandaset`.

# appendix

appendix -- An appendix in a Book or Article

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
appendix ::=
(beginpage?, appendixinfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 tocchap?,
 ((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 (sect1*|
 (refentry)*|
 simplesect*|
 (section)*))|
 (sect1+|
 (refentry)+|
 simplesect+|
 (section)+),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Appendixes usually occur at the end of a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Usually introduces a forced page break and often starts on the next recto page. Sometimes restarts page numbering. Typically, appendixes are lettered rather than numbered, and appear in the table of contents.

## Parents

These elements contain appendix: `article`, `book`, `part`.

## Children

The following elements occur in appendix: abstract, address, anchor, appendixinfo, authorblurb, beginpage, bibliography, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glossary, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, index, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, lot, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, sect1, section, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, simplesect, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, toc, tocchap, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes. The second Appendix might be labeled “B”, for example.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Appendix.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

article, book, chapter, colophon, dedication, part, partintro, preface, set.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE book PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<book>
<chapter><title>Required Chapter</title>
<para>
At least one chapter, reference, part, or article is required in a book.
</para>
</chapter>
<appendix><title>Demonstration Appendix</title>
<para>
This appendix demonstrates an appendix in a book. It has the
same broad content model as a chapter.
</para>
</appendix>
</book>
```

For additional examples, see also book.

# appendixinfo

appendixinfo -- Meta-information for an Appendix

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
appendixinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The AppendixInfo element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a Appendix. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain appendixinfo: appendix.

## Children

The following elements occur in appendixinfo: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

# application

application -- The name of a software program

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
application ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|functsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> hardware software	<i>None</i>

## Description

The appellation “application” is usually reserved for larger software packages—WordPerfect, for example, but not **grep**. In some domains, Application may also apply to a piece of hardware.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain application: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refclass, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in application: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

class

Class identifies an application as either a hardware application or a software application.

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Application.

## See Also

database, filename, hardware, medialabel, productname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
<application>Word Perfect</application> is one of several word
```

processors to claim support for <acronym>SGML</acronym>.  
</para>

Word Perfect is one of several word processors to claim support for SGML.

For additional examples, see also `envar`, `medialabel`, `systemitem`.

# area

area -- A region defined for a Callout in a graphic or code example

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
area ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
units	<i>Enumeration:</i> calspair linecolumn linecolumnpair linerange other	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>
otherunits	NMTOKEN	<i>None</i>
linkends	IDREFS	<i>None</i>
coords	CDATA	<i>Required</i>

## Description

An *Area* is an empty element holding information about a region in a graphic, program listing, or screen.

The region is generally decorated with a number, symbol, or other distinctive mark. The mark is usually used as the label for the *Callout* in a *CalloutList*, which allows the reader to identify which callouts are associated with which regions. The marks may be generated by the processing application from the *Areas*, or it may be added by some other process. (This is an interchange issue. See Appendix F.)

For a complete description of callouts, see *Callout*.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element provides data for processing but it is not expected to be rendered directly.

The processing expectations of *Callouts* are likely to deserve special consideration for interchange. See Appendix F.

The *Coords*, which are required, identify the location of the region. The coordinates are CDATA; how they are interpreted depends on the *Units* specified:

CALSPair

The coordinates are expressed using the semantics of the CALS graphic attributes. The format of the coordinates is “x1,y1 x2,y2”. This identifies a rectangle with the lower-left corner at (x1,y1) and the upper-right corner at

(x2,y2). The X and Y coordinates are integers in the range 0 to 10000; they express a percentage of the total distance from 0.00 to 100.00%.

#### LineColumn

The coordinates are expressed using lines and columns. The format of the coordinates is “line column.” In a graphic context, the meaning of this unit is unspecified.

#### LineRange

The coordinates are expressed using lines. The format of the coordinates is “startingline endingline.” In a graphic context, the meaning of this unit is unspecified.

#### LineColumnPair

The coordinates are expressed as a continuous flow of characters. The format of the coordinates is “line1 col1 line2 col2”. This identifies a flow of characters that begins at col1 of line1 and extends to col2 of line2. If line1 and line2 are different, then the region includes all of the intervening lines (including text that occurs before col1 and after col2). In other words, this unit does not specify a rectangle. In a graphic context, the meaning of this unit is unspecified.

#### OtherUnits

If specified, then the `OtherUnits` attribute is expected to identify the units in some implementation-specific way.

The `Units` attribute is not required, if it is not specified, the semantics of the coordinates must be inherited from the surrounding `AreaSpec` or `AreaSet` element or implied in some implementation-specific manner.

In processing systems in which the mark is inserted automatically, the `Label` attribute is provided as a mechanism for specifying what the mark should be.

The author may point to any relevant information with `Linkends`. DocBook does not specify a semantic for these links. One possible use would be for providing a link back to the appropriate `Callout` in an online environment.

## Parents

These elements contain area: `areaset`, `areaspec`.

## Attributes

#### coords

`Coords` provides the coordinates of the `Area`. The coordinates should be interpreted using the `Units` (or `OtherUnits`) specified.

#### label

`Label` specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation. The `Area` label might be drawn on top of the figure, for example, at the position indicated by `Coords`.

#### linkends

`Linkends` points to the `Callout(s)` which refer to this `Area`. (This provides bidirectional linking, which may be useful in online presentation.)

otherunits

If none of the `Units` are applicable, set `Units` to `Other` and set `OtherUnits` to some application-specific description of the desired units.

units

`Units` indicate how the specified `Coords` are to be interpreted. The default units vary according to the type of callout specified; `CALSPair` for graphics and `LineColumn` for line-oriented elements.

## Examples

For examples, see `graphicco`, `mediaobjectco`, `programlistingco`.

# areaset

areaset -- A set of related areas in a graphic or code example

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
areaset ::=  
(area+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
units	<i>Enumeration:</i> calspair linecolumn linecolumnpair linerange other	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>
otherunits	NMTOKEN	<i>None</i>
coords	CDATA	<i>Required</i>

## Description

An `AreaSet` contains one or more `Areas`. These areas are bound in a set in order to associate them with a single `Callout` description. See `Area` for a more complete description of the areas.

For a complete description of callouts, see `Callout`.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed.

## Future Changes

The `Coords` attribute will be removed in DocBook V5.0.

## Parents

These elements contain areaset: `areaspec`.

## Children

The following elements occur in areaset: `area`.

## Attributes

### coords

`Coords` provides the coordinates of the `AreaSet`. The coordinates should be interpreted using the `Units` (or `OtherUnits`) specified. *This attribute is erroneous since the enclosed `Areas` must also provide `Coords`. It will go away in *DocBook 4.0*.*

### label

`Label` specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation.

### otherunits

If none of the `Units` are applicable, set `Units` to `Other` and set `OtherUnits` to some application-specific description of the desired units.

### units

`Units` indicate how `Coords` are to be interpreted.

## Examples

For examples, see `graphicco`, `mediaobjectco`, `programlistingco`.

# areaspec

areaspec -- A collection of regions in a graphic or code example

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
areaspec ::=  
((area|areaset)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
otherunits	NMTOKEN	<i>None</i>
units	<i>Enumeration:</i> calspair linecolumn linecolumnpair linerange other	<i>None</i>

## Description

An `AreaSpec` holds a collection of regions and/or region sets in a graphic, program listing, or screen that are associated with `Callout` descriptions. See `Area` for a description of the attributes.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element provides data for processing but it is not expected to be rendered directly.

## Parents

These elements contain `areaspec`: `graphicco`, `imageobjectco`, `programlistingco`, `screenco`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `areaspec`: `area`, `areaset`.

## Attributes

`otherunits`

If none of the `Units` are applicable, set `Units` to `Other` and set `OtherUnits` to some application-specific description of the desired units.

`units`

Units indicate how the specified `Coords` are to be interpreted. The default units vary according to the type of callout specified; `CALSPair` for graphics and `LineColumn` for line-oriented elements.

## See Also

`calloutlist`, `co`, `coref`, `graphicco`, `imageobjectco`, `mediaobjectco`, `programlistingco`, `screenco`.

## Examples

For examples, see `graphicco`, `mediaobjectco`, `programlistingco`.

# arg

arg -- An argument in a `CmdSynopsis`

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
arg ::=  
(#PCDATA|arg|group|option|synopfragmentref|replaceable|sbr)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
rep	<i>Enumeration:</i> norepeat repeat	"norepeat"
choice	<i>Enumeration:</i> opt plain req	"opt"

## Description

See `CmdSynopsis` for more information.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context.

## Parents

These elements contain `arg`: `arg`, `cmdsynopsis`, `group`, `synopfragment`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `arg`: `arg`, `group`, `option`, `replaceable`, `sbr`, `synopfragmentref`.

## Attributes

`choice`

`Choice` indicates whether the `Arg` is required (`Req` or `Plain`) or optional (`Opt`). Arguments identified as `Plain` are required, but are shown without additional decoration.

`rep`

A `Rep` value of `Repeat` indicates that the `Arg` is repeatable. This is frequently rendered with an ellipsis.

## See Also

`cmdsynopsis`, `group`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `sbr`, `synopfragment`, `synopfragmentref`.

## Examples

For examples, see `cmdsynopsis`, `refentry`, `synopfragment`.

# article

article -- An article

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
article ::=
((title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?))? ,
articleinfo?, tocchap?, lot* ,
(((calloutlist | glosslist | itemizedlist | orderedlist | segmentedlist |
  simplelist | variablelist | caution | important | note | tip | warning |
  literallayout | programlisting | programlistingco | screen | screenco |
  screenshot | synopsis | cmdsynopsis | funcsynopsis | classsynopsis |
  fieldsynopsis | constructorsynopsis | destructorsynopsis |
  methodsynopsis | formalpara | para | simpara | address | blockquote |
  graphic | graphicco | mediaobject | mediaobjectco | informalequation |
  informalexample | informalfigure | informaltable | equation | example |
  figure | table | msgset | procedure | sidebar | qandaset | productionset |
  constraintdef | anchor | bridgehead | remark | highlights | abstract |
  authorblurb | epigraph | indexterm | beginpage)+,
(sect1* |
  (refentry)* |
  simplesect* |
  (section)*)) |
(sect1+ |
  (refentry)+ |
  simplesect+ |
  (section)+),
((toc | lot | index | glossary | bibliography) |
  (appendix) |
  ackno*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
parentbook	IDREF	<i>None</i>
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> faq journalarticle productsheet specification techreport whitepaper	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `Article` element is a general-purpose container for articles. The content model is both quite complex and rather loose in order to accommodate the wide range of possible `Article` structures. Although changes to the `Article` element have been discussed on several occasions, no better model has been presented.

An `Article` is composed of a header and a body. The body may include a table of contents and multiple lists of tables, figures, and so on, before the main text of the article and may include a number of common end-matter components at the end.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Frequently causes a forced page break in print media. May be numbered separately and presented in the table of contents.

## Future Changes

The `ToC` element in the content model may be replaced by `TocChap`. This change may be delayed if the DocBook technical committee decides to review the whole `ToC/LoT` apparatus.

## Parents

These elements contain article: `book`, `part`.

## Children

The following elements occur in article: `abstract`, `ackno`, `address`, `anchor`, `appendix`, `articleinfo`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glossary`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `index`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `lot`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `refentry`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `sect1`, `section`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `simplesect`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `toc`, `tocchap`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Attributes

`class`

Class identifies the type of article.

`parentbook`

`ParentBook` holds the ID of an enclosing `Book`, if applicable.

`status`

`Status` identifies the editorial or publication status of the `Article`.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

appendix, book, chapter, colophon, dedication, part, partintro, preface, set.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<article>
<articleinfo>
  <author><firstname>Norman</firstname><surname>Walsh</surname></author>
  <authorinitials>ndw</authorinitials>
  <artpagenums>339-343</artpagenums>
  <volumenum>15</volumenum>
  <issuenum>3</issuenum>
  <publisher><publishername>The TeX User's Group</publishername></publisher>
  <pubdate>1994</pubdate>
  <title>A World Wide Web Interface to CTAN</title>
  <titleabbrev>CTAN-Web</titleabbrev>
  <revhistory>
    <revision>
      <revnumber>1.0</revnumber>
      <date>28 Mar 1994</date>
      <revremark>Submitted.</revremark>
    </revision>
    <revision>
      <revnumber>0.5</revnumber>
      <date>15 Feb 1994</date>
      <revremark>First draft for review.</revremark>
    </revision>
  </revhistory>
</articleinfo>
<para>
The body of the article &hellip;
</para>
</article>
```

For additional examples, see also `ackno`, `contractsponsor`, `qandaset`.

# articleinfo

articleinfo -- Meta-information for an Article

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
articleinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ArticleInfo` element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a `Article`. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

Prior to version 4.0 of DocBook, this element was named `ArtHeader`.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain `articleinfo`: `article`, `biblioentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `articleinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliaset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itemset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

## See Also

appendixinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

# artpagenums

artpagenums -- The page numbers of an article as published

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
artpagenums ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element holds the page numbers of an article as published. Its content is not intended to influence the page numbers used by a presentation system formatting the parent `Article`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed. Although it appears at the beginning of the content model for `BlockQuote` and `Epigraph`, it is often output at the end.

## Parents

These elements contain `artpagenums`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `artpagenums`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Examples

For examples, see `article`.

# attribution

attribution -- The source of a block quote or epigraph

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
attribution ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `Attribution` identifies the source to whom a `BlockQuote` or `Epigraph` is ascribed.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain attribution: `blockquote`, `epigraph`.

## Children

The following elements occur in attribution: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`,

cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keySYM, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

blockquote, epigraph.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE blockquote PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<blockquote>
<attribution>William Shakespeare</attribution>
<literallayout>
What say you? Will you yield, and this avoid?
Or, guilty in defense, be thus destroyed?
</literallayout>
</blockquote>
```

What say you? Will you yield, and this avoid?  
Or, guilty in defense, be thus destroyed?

—William Shakespeare

For additional examples, see also `blockquote`, `chapter`, `literallayout`.

# audiodata

audiodata -- Pointer to external audio data

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
audiodata ::=  
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
srccredit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumeration:</i> BMP CGM-BINARY CGM-CHAR CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a IGES JPEG JPG linespecific PCX PIC PNG PS SGML SVG TBL TEX TIFF WMF WPG	<i>None</i>
entityref	ENTITY	<i>None</i>
fileref	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

This empty element points to external audio data.

## Processing expectations

There are two ways to provide content for `AudioData`: `EntityRef` or `FileRef`. It is best to use only one of these methods. However, if multiple sources are provided, `EntityRef` will be used in favor of `FileRef`.

## Parents

These elements contain `audiodata`: `audioobject`.

## Attributes

`entityref`

`EntityRef` identifies the general entity which points to the content of the audio data.

`fileref`

`FileRef` specifies the name of the file which contains the content of the audio data.

`format`

`Format` identifies the format of the audio data. The `Format` must be a defined notation.

`srccredit`

`SrcCredit` contains details about the source of the audio data.

## Examples

For examples, see `audioobject`.

# audioobject

audioobject -- A wrapper for audio data and its associated meta-information

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
audioobject ::=  
(objectinfo?, audiodata)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

AudioObject is a wrapper for AudioData.

## Processing expectations

Its content is rendered aurally or not at all. It might not be rendered, depending on its placement within a MediaObject or InlineMediaObject and the constraints on the publishing system. For a more detailed description of the semantics involved, see MediaObject.

## Parents

These elements contain audioobject: inlinemediobject, mediobject.

## Children

The following elements occur in audioobject: audiodata, objectinfo.

## See Also

alt, caption, graphic, imageobject, inlinegraphic, inlinemediobject, mediobject, textobject, videoobject.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE mediobject PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"  
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">  
<mediobject>  
<audioobject>  
  <objectinfo>  
    <title>Phaser sound effect</title>  
  </objectinfo>  
  <audiodata fileref="phaser.wav"/>  
</audioobject>  
<textobject>  
<phrase>A <trademark>Star Trek</trademark> phaser sound effect</phrase>
```

</textobject>  
</mediaobject>

# author

author -- The name of an individual author

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
author ::=
  ((personname |
    (honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|othername|affiliation|
     authorblurb|contrib)+),
   (personblurb|email|address)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `Author` element holds information about the author of the document in which it occurs; it is meta-information about the current document or document section, not a reference to the author of an external document.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `author`: `appendixinfo`, `application`, `articleinfo`, `attribution`, `authorgroup`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `bridgehead`, `chapterinfo`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossaryinfo`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `indexinfo`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `objectinfo`, `olink`, `para`, `partinfo`, `phrase`, `prefaceinfo`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentryinfo`, `refentrytitle`, `referenceinfo`, `refpurpose`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `author`: `address`, `affiliation`, `authorblurb`, `contrib`, `email`, `firstname`, `honorific`, `lineage`, `othername`, `personblurb`, `personname`, `surname`.

## See Also

`authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `collab`, `collabname`, `contrib`, `corpauthor`, `editor`, `othercredit`, `personblurb`, `personname`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE author PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<author>
  <honorific>Mr</honorific>
  <firstname>Norman</firstname>
  <surname>Walsh</surname>
  <othername role='mi'>D</othername>
  <affiliation>
    <shortaffil>ATI</shortaffil>
    <jobtitle>Senior Application Analyst</jobtitle>
    <orgname>ArborText, Inc.</orgname>
    <orgdiv>Application Development</orgdiv>
  </affiliation>
</author>
```

For additional examples, see also `ackno`, `article`, `authorgroup`, `bibliography`, `biblioset`, `book`, `bookinfo`, `othercredit`.

# authorblurb

authorblurb -- A short description or note about an author

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
authorblurb ::=
(title?,
 (formalpara|para|simpara)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A short description of an author.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `authorblurb`: `address`, `appendix`, `appendixinfo`, `article`, `articleinfo`, `author`, `bibliodiv`, `biblioentry`, `bibliography`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `bookinfo`, `callout`, `chapter`, `chapterinfo`, `editor`, `glossary`, `glossaryinfo`, `glossdiv`, `index`, `indexinfo`, `itemizedlist`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `objectinfo`, `orderedlist`, `othercredit`, `partinfo`, `partintro`, `preface`, `prefaceinfo`, `procedure`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3`, `refsect3info`, `refsection`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1`, `sect1info`, `sect2`, `sect2info`, `sect3`, `sect3info`, `sect4`, `sect4info`, `sect5`, `sect5info`, `section`, `sectioninfo`, `setindex`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`, `simplesect`, `step`, `variablelist`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `authorblurb`: `formalpara`, `para`, `simpara`, `title`.

## See Also

`author`, `authorgroup`, `collab`, `collabname`, `contrib`, `corpauthor`, `editor`, `othercredit`, `personblurb`, `personname`.

## Examples

For examples, see `authorgroup`.

# authorgroup

authorgroup -- Wrapper for author information when a document has multiple authors or collaborators

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
authorgroup ::=
((author|editor|collab|corpauthor|othercredit)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The AuthorGroup element is a wrapper around multiple authors or other collaborators.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes given very special treatment, especially on title pages or other displayed areas. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain authorgroup: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in authorgroup: author, collab, corpauthor, editor, othercredit.

## See Also

author, authorblurb, collab, collabname, contrib, corpauthor, editor, othercredit, personblurb, personname.

## Examples

The example below demonstrates AuthorGroup and many of the elements of Author.

```
<!DOCTYPE authorgroup PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<authorgroup>
  <author>
    <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
    <firstname>Lois</firstname>
```

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

```

<surname>Common-Demoninator</surname>
<affiliation>
  <shortaffil>Director, M. Behn School of Coop. Eng.</shortaffil>
  <jobtitle>Director of Cooperative Efforts</jobtitle>
  <orgname>The Marguerite Behn International School of
    Cooperative Engineering</orgname>
</affiliation>
</author>

<editor>
  <firstname>Peter</firstname>
  <surname>Parker</surname>
  <lineage>Sr.</lineage>
  <othername>Spiderman</othername>
  <authorblurb>
    <para>
      Peter's a super hero in his spare time.
    </para>
  </authorblurb>
</editor>
</authorgroup>

```

For additional examples, see also bibliography, bookinfo, collab.

# authorinitials

authorinitials -- The initials or other short identifier for an author

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
authorinitials ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Author initials occur most frequently in a Revision or Comment.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain authorinitials: appendixinfo, application, articleinfo, attribution, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomisc, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, bridgehead, chapterinfo, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossaryinfo, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, indexinfo, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, objectinfo, olink, para, partinfo, phrase, prefaceinfo, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentryinfo, refentrytitle, referenceinfo, refpurpose, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, remark, revision, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in authorinitials: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## Examples

For examples, see article, revhistory.

# beginpage

beginpage -- The location of a page break in a print version of the document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
beginpage ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `BeginPage` element marks the location of an actual page break in a print version of the document, as opposed to where a page break might appear in a further rendition of the document. This information may be used, for example, to allow support staff using an online system to coordinate with a user referring to a page number in a printed manual.

## Processing expectations

The break identified by `BeginPage` may be displayed in an online version of the document or used for legacy purposes, but it is not expected to cause a page break when the document is processed by an SGML system.

## Parents

These elements contain `beginpage`: `abbrev`, `accel`, `acronym`, `action`, `appendix`, `application`, `article`, `attribution`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliomisc`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constraintdef`, `database`, `dedication`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `example`, `exceptionname`, `figure`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `initializer`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `itemizedlist`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keysym`, `label`, `legalnotice`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lot`, `lotentry`, `manvolnum`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `member`, `methodname`, `modifier`, `mousebutton`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msglevel`, `msgorig`, `msgtext`, `note`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `parameter`, `part`, `partintro`, `phrase`, `preface`, `procedure`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `refentry`, `refentrytitle`, `reference`, `refpurpose`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `remark`, `returnvalue`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `seg`, `setindex`, `sgmltag`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplesect`, `step`, `structfield`, `structname`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tip`, `toc`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `token`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `variablelist`, `varname`, `warning`, `wordasword`.

## Attributes

pagenum

PageNum contains the page number of the page in the printed document which begins at the location of the BeginPage element.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter id="ch-publish">
<chapterinfo>
<beginpage pagenum="64"/> <!-- first edition -->
</chapterinfo>
<title>Publishing DocBook Documents</title>

<para>Creating and editing &SGML;/&XML; documents is usually only half the
battle. After you've composed your document, you'll want to publish
it. Publishing, for our purposes, means either print or web
publishing. For &SGML; and &XML; documents, this is usually
accomplished with some kind of <glossterm>stylesheet</glossterm>. In
the (not too distant) future, you may be able to publish an &XML;
document on the Web by simply putting it online with a stylesheet, but
for now you'll probably have to translate your document into &HTML;.
</para>

<!-- ... -->
</chapter>
```

# bibliocoverage

bibliocoverage -- The spatial or temporal coverage of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
bibliocoverage ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
otherspatial	CDATA	<i>None</i>
spatial	<i>Enumeration:</i> dcmibox dcmipoint iso3166 otherspatial tgn	<i>None</i>
temporal	<i>Enumeration:</i> dcmiperiod othertemporal w3c-dtf	<i>None</i>
othertemporal	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `bibliocoverage` element satisfies coverage element of the Dublin Core Metadata Initiative<sup>i</sup>.

The Dublin Core defines coverage as “the extent or scope of the content of the resource.” It goes on to say:

Coverage will typically include spatial location (a place name or geographic coordinates), temporal period (a period label, date, or date range) or jurisdiction (such as a named administrative entity).

Recommended best practice is to select a value from a controlled vocabulary (for example, the Thesaurus of Geographic Names<sup>ii</sup> [TGN]) and that, where appropriate, named places or time periods be used in preference to numeric identifiers such as sets of coordinates or date ranges.

DocBook 4.2 added `bibliocoverage`, `bibliorelation`, and `bibliosource` to make the DocBook meta-information wrappers a complete superset of the Dublin Core.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

<sup>i</sup><http://dublincore.org/>

<sup>ii</sup><http://www.getty.edu/research/tools/vocabulary/tgn/>

This element is used for both spatial and temporal coverage, but the intent is that only one is specified at a time. In other words, on any given instance of the `bibliocoverage` element, specify either a `spatial` or a `temporal` encoding, but not both.

## Parents

These elements contain `bibliocoverage`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `bibliocoverage`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Attributes

`spatial`

Identifies the encoding scheme for the supplied spatial identifier. See the Dublin Core Qualifiers<sup>iii</sup> for details about the meaning of each encoding.

`otherspatial`

Used to identify the encoding scheme when `spatial` is set to `otherspatial`.

`temporal`

Identifies the encoding scheme for the supplied temporal identifier. See the Dublin Core Qualifiers<sup>iv</sup> for details about the meaning of each encoding.

`othertemporal`

Used to identify the encoding scheme when `temporal` is set to `othertemporal`.

<sup>iii</sup><http://dublincore.org/documents/dcmes-qualifiers/>

<sup>iv</sup><http://dublincore.org/documents/dcmes-qualifiers/>

# bibliodiv

bibliodiv -- A section of a Bibliography

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
bibliodiv ::=
((title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|functsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 (biblioentry|bibliomixed)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

BibliODiv is a section of a Bibliography. A bibliography might be divided into sections in order to group different types of sources together, like books, journal articles, web sites, and so on.

A bibliography may contain any number of BiblioEntry or BiblioMixed elements or any number of BiblioODivs, but it cannot contain a mixture of both at the same level.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Some systems may display only those entries within a BiblioDiv that are cited in the containing document. This may be an interchange issue. See Appendix F.

## Parents

These elements contain bibliodiv: bibliography.

## Children

The following elements occur in bibliodiv: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, biblioentry, bibliomixed, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, functsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco,

highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the BiblioDiv.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## Examples

For examples, see `bibliography`.

# biblioentry

biblioentry -- An entry in a Bibliography

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
biblioentry ::=
((articleinfo|
  (abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
   authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
   contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
   edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
   biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
   bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
   productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
   releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|
   titleabbrev|volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|
   surname|lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|
   indexterm))+) )
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A BiblioEntry is an entry in a Bibliography. The contents of BiblioEntry is a “database” of named fields. Presentation systems frequently suppress some elements in a BiblioEntry.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

BiblioEntries are “raw.” They contain a database-like collection of named fields. It is the responsibility of the processing system to select elements from within a BiblioEntry, present them in the correct order, and add all punctuation.

There is no expectation that a system will present all of the fields in a BiblioEntry or that they will be displayed in the order in which they occur.

Correct formatting of BiblioEntries is an interchange issue. See Appendix F.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of BiblioEntry in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

BookBiblio will be discarded.

## Future Changes

`ArticleInfo` will be dropped from the content model of `BiblioEntry`.

## Parents

These elements contain `biblioentry`: `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `biblioentry`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `articleinfo`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `biblioset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `lineage`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

## See Also

`bibliomisc`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`.

## Examples

For examples, see `bibliography`, `biblioset`.

# bibliography

bibliography -- A bibliography

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
bibliography ::=
(bibliographyinfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 (bibliodiv+|
 (biblioentry|bibliomixed)+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A bibliography. A DocBook bibliography may contain some preferatory matter, but its main content is a set of bibliography entries (either `BiblioEntry` or `BiblioMixed`). These may occur inside `BiblioDivs`, instead of appearing directly in the `Bibliography`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. A `Bibliography` in a `Book` frequently causes a forced page break in print media.

Some systems may display only those entries within a `Bibliography` that are cited in the containing document. This may be an interchange issue. See Appendix F.

The two styles of bibliography entry have quite different processing expectations. `BiblioEntry`s are “raw;” they contain a database-like collection of named fields. `BiblioMixed` entries are “cooked;” the fields occur in the order in which they will be presented and additional punctuation may be sprinkled between the fields.

See `BiblioEntry` and `BiblioMixed` for further discussion.

## Parents

These elements contain bibliography: appendix, article, book, chapter, glossary, part, preface, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section.

## Children

The following elements occur in bibliography: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, bibliodiv, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Bibliography.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## Examples

The entries in a Bibliography come in two general forms, “raw” and “cooked”. A raw entry is a database-like collection of named fields:

```
<!DOCTYPE bibliography PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<bibliography>
<title>A Test Bibliography</title>

<bibliodiv><title>Books</title>

<biblioentry>
  <abbrev>AhoSethiUllman96</abbrev>
  <authorgroup>
    <author><firstname>Alfred V.</firstname><surname>Aho</surname></author>
    <author><firstname>Ravi</firstname><surname>Sethi</surname></author>
    <author><firstname>Jeffrey D.</firstname><surname>Ullman</surname></author>
  </authorgroup>
  <copyright><year>1996</year>
    <holder>Bell Telephone Laboratories, Inc.</holder></copyright>
  <editor><firstname>James T.</firstname><surname>DeWolf</surname></editor>
  <isbn>0-201-10088-6</isbn>
  <publisher>
    <publishername>Addison-Wesley Publishing Company</publishername>
  </publisher>
```

```

    <title>Compilers, Principles, Techniques, and Tools</title>
</biblioentry>

<biblioentry xreflabel="Kites75">
  <authorgroup>
    <author><firstname>Andrea</firstname><surname>Bahadur</surname></author>
    <author><firstname>Mark</firstname><surname>Shwarek</surname></author>
  </authorgroup>
  <copyright><year>1974</year><year>1975</year>
    <holder>Product Development International Holding N. V.</holder>
  </copyright>
  <isbn>0-88459-021-6</isbn>
  <publisher>
    <publishername>Plenary Publications International, Inc.</publishername>
  </publisher>
  <title>Kites</title>
  <subtitle>Ancient Craft to Modern Sport</subtitle>
  <pagenums>988-999</pagenums>
</biblioentry>

</bibliodiv>
<bibliodiv><title>Periodicals</title>

<biblioentry>
  <abbrev>Walsh97</abbrev>
  <biblioset relation='journal'>
    <title>XML: Principles, Tools, and Techniques</title>
    <publisher>
      <publishername>O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.</publishername>
    </publisher>
    <issn>1085-2301</issn>
    <editor><firstname>Dan</firstname><surname>Connolly</surname></editor>
  </biblioset>
  <biblioset relation='article'>
    <title>A Guide to XML</title>
    <author><surname>Walsh</surname><firstname>Norman</firstname></author>
    <copyright><year>1997</year><holder>ArborText, Inc.</holder></copyright>
    <pagenums>97-108</pagenums>
  </biblioset>
</biblioentry>

</bibliodiv>

</bibliography>

```

A cooked entry is formatted, including additional #PCDATA, so that it is easy to render.

```

<!DOCTYPE bibliography PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<bibliography><title>References</title>

<bibliomixed>
  <bibliomset relation='article'>
    <surname>Walsh</surname>, <firstname>Norman</firstname>.
    <title role='article'>Introduction to Cascading Style Sheets</title>.
  </bibliomset>
  <bibliomset relation='journal'>
    <title>The World Wide Web Journal</title>
    <volumenum>2</volumenum><issuenum>1</issuenum>.
    <publishername>O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.</publishername> and

```

```
<corpname>The World Wide Web Consortium</corpname>.  
<pubdate>Winter, 1996</pubdate></bibliomset>.  
</bibliomixed>  
  
</bibliography>
```

# bibliographyinfo

bibliographyinfo -- Meta-information for a Bibliography

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
bibliographyinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The BibliographyInfo element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a Bibliography. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain bibliographyinfo: bibliography.

## Children

The following elements occur in bibliographyinfo: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itermset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

# biblioid

biblioid -- An identifier for a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
biblioid ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
otherclass	CDATA	<i>None</i>
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> doi isbn issn libraryofcongress other pubnumber uri	<i>None</i>

## Description

A bibliographic identifier, such as an ISBN number, Library of Congress identifier, or URI.

This element supercedes the `isbn`, `issn`, and `pubsnumber` elements.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `biblioid`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `biblioid`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Attributes

`class`

Identifies the encoding scheme of the identifier.

`otherclass`

Identifies the encoding scheme of the identifier when `class` is `other`.

## See Also

`invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `productnumber`, `pubsnumber`, `seriesvolnums`, `volumenum`.

# bibliomisc

bibliomisc -- Untyped bibliographic information

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
bibliomisc ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `BiblioMisc` element is a wrapper for bibliographic information that does not fit neatly into the other bibliographic fields (such as `Author` and `Publisher`).

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. It is recommended that the `Role` attribute be used to identify the kind of information that this element contains.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `bibliomisc`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsectlinfo`,

refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in `bibliomisc`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `gubutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## See Also

`biblioentry`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`.

# bibliomixed

bibliomixed -- An entry in a Bibliography

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
bibliomixed ::=
(#PCDATA|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|contractnum|
contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|edition|
editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|biblioid|
citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|bibliocoverage|
othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|productnumber|
pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|releaseinfo|
revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|volumenum|
citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|
othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm|bibliomset)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

BiblioMixed is an entry in a Bibliography. The contents of BiblioMixed includes all necessary punctuation for formatting. Presentation systems usually display all of the elements in a BiblioMixed.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

BiblioMixed entries are “cooked.” In addition to named fields, they can contain interspersed #PCDATA to provide punctuation and other formatting information.

The processing system is generally expected to present each and every element in the entry, and all interspersed #PCDATA, in the order in which it occurs.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of BiblioEntry in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Future Changes

BiblioSet will be removed from the content model of BiblioMixed. Allowing a “raw” container inside a “cooked” one confuses processing expectations.

## Parents

These elements contain bibliomixed: bibliodiv, bibliography.

## Children

The following elements occur in `bibliomixed`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliomset`, `bibliorelation`, `biblioset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `lineage`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

## See Also

`biblioentry`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`.

## Examples

For examples, see `bibliography`, `bibliomset`.

# bibliomset

bibliomset -- A “cooked” container for related bibliographic information

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
bibliomset ::=
(#PCDATA|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliomset|collab|confgroup|contractnum|
contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|edition|
editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|biblioid|
citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|bibliocoverage|
othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|productnumber|
pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|releaseinfo|
revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|volumenum|
citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|
othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm|bibliomset)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
relation	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

BibliomSet is a “cooked” wrapper for a collection of bibliographic information.

The purpose of this wrapper is to assert the relationship that binds the collection. For example, in a BibliomMixed entry for an article in a journal, you might use two BibliomSets to wrap the fields related to the article and the fields related to the journal.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

BibliomSets are “cooked.” In addition to named fields, they can contain interspersed #PCDATA to provide punctuation and other formatting information.

The processing system is generally expected to present each and every element in the set, all interspersed #PCDATA, in the order in which it occurs.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of BibliomSet in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Future Changes

BiblioSet will be removed from the content model of BiblioMSet. Allowing a “raw” container inside a “cooked” one confuses processing expectations.

## Parents

These elements contain bibliomset: bibliomixed, bibliomset.

## Children

The following elements occur in bibliomset: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliomset, bibliorelation, biblioset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, confgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, lineage, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## Attributes

relation

Relation identifies the relationship between the various elements in the BiblioMSet.

## See Also

biblioentry, bibliomisc, bibliomixed, biblioset.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE bibliomixed PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<bibliomixed>
  <bibliomset relation='article'>
    <surname>Walsh</surname>, <firstname>Norman</firstname>.
    <title role='article'>Introduction to Cascading Style Sheets</title>.
  </bibliomset>
  <bibliomset relation='journal'>
    <title>The World Wide Web Journal</title>
    <volumenum>2</volumenum><issuenum>1</issuenum>.
    <publishername>O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.</publishername> and
    <corpname>The World Wide Web Consortium</corpname>.
    <pubdate>Winter, 1996</pubdate></bibliomset>.
</bibliomixed>
```

For additional examples, see also bibliography.

# bibliorelation

bibliorelation -- The relationship of a document to another

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
bibliorelation ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> doi isbn issn libraryofcongress other pubnumber uri	<i>None</i>
type	<i>Enumeration:</i> hasformat haspart hasversion isformatof ispartof isreferencedby isreplacedby isrequiredby isversionof othertype references replaces requires	<i>None</i>
otherclass	CDATA	<i>None</i>
othertype	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `bibliorelation` element satisfies the relation element of the Dublin Core Metadata Initiative<sup>[i](http://dublincore.org/)</sup>.

The Dublin Core defines relation as “a reference to a related resource.” It goes on to note that “recommended best practice is to reference the resource by means of a string or number conforming to a formal identification system.”

DocBook 4.2 added `bibliocoverage`, `bibliorelation`, and `bibliosource` to make the DocBook meta-information wrappers a complete superset of the Dublin Core.

<sup>[i](http://dublincore.org/)</sup><http://dublincore.org/>

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain bibliorelation: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in bibliorelation: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Attributes

`class`

Identifies the encoding scheme of the identifier.

`otherclass`

Identifies the encoding scheme of the identifier when `class` is `other`.

`type`

Identifies the relationship type of the identifier. See the Dublin Core Qualifiers<sup>ii</sup> for details about the relationship types.

`othertype`

Identifies the relationship type of the identifier when `type` is `othertype`.

<sup>ii</sup><http://dublincore.org/documents/dcmes-qualifiers/>

# biblioset

biblioset -- A “raw” container for related bibliographic information

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
biblioset ::=
((abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
relation	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

BiblioSet is a “raw” wrapper for a collection of bibliographic information.

The purpose of this wrapper is to assert the relationship that binds the collection. For example, in a BiblioEntry for an article in a journal, you might use two BiblioSets to wrap the fields related to the article and the fields related to the journal.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

BiblioSets are “raw.” They contain a database-like collection of named fields. It is the responsibility of the processing system to select elements from within a BiblioSet, present them in the correct order, and add all punctuation.

There is no expectation that a system will present all of the fields in a BiblioSet or that they will be displayed in the order in which they occur.

Correct formatting of BiblioSets is an interchange issue. See Appendix F.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of BiblioSet in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain biblioset: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in biblioset: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, biblioset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, configgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corppauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, lineage, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## Attributes

relation

Relation identifies the relationship between the various elements in the BiblioSet.

## See Also

biblioentry, bibliomisc, bibliomixed, bibliomset.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE biblioentry PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<biblioentry>
  <abbrev>Walsh97</abbrev>
  <biblioset relation='journal'>
    <title>XML: Principles, Tools, and Techniques</title>
    <publisher>
      <publishername>O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.</publishername>
    </publisher>
    <issn>1085-2301</issn>
    <editor><firstname>Dan</firstname><surname>Connolly</surname></editor>
  </biblioset>
  <biblioset relation='article'>
    <title>A Guide to XML</title>
    <author><surname>Walsh</surname><firstname>Norman</firstname></author>
    <copyright><year>1997</year><holder>ArborText, Inc.</holder></copyright>
    <pagenums>97-108</pagenums>
  </biblioset>
</biblioentry>
```

For additional examples, see also bibliography.

# bibliosource

bibliosource -- The source of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
bibliosource ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
otherclass	CDATA	<i>None</i>
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> doi isbn issn libraryofcongress other pubnumber uri	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `bibliosource` element satisfies the source element of the Dublin Core Metadata Initiative<sup>*i*</sup>.

The Dublin Core defines source as “a reference to a resource from which the present resource is derived.” It goes on to note that “the present resource may be derived from the source resource in whole or in part. Recommended best practice is to reference the resource by means of a string or number conforming to a formal identification system.”

DocBook 4.2 added `bibliocoverage`, `bibliorelation`, and `bibliosource` to make the DocBook meta-information wrappers a complete superset of the Dublin Core.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `bibliosource`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

<sup>*i*</sup><http://dublincore.org/>

## Children

The following elements occur in bibliosource: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Attributes

`class`

Identifies the encoding scheme of the identifier.

`otherclass`

Identifies the encoding scheme of the identifier when `class` is `other`.

# blockinfo

blockinfo -- Meta-information for a block element

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
blockinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `blockinfo` element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a block element. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain `blockinfo`: `equation`, `example`, `figure`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `legalnotice`, `msgset`, `orderedlist`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaentry`, `qandaset`, `table`, `variablelist`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `blockinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `biblioset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itermset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

# blockquote

blockquote -- A quotation set off from the main text

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
blockquote ::=
(title?, attribution?,
 (calloutlist | glosslist | itemizedlist | orderedlist | segmentedlist |
 simplelist | variablelist | caution | important | note | tip | warning |
 literallayout | programlisting | programlistingco | screen | screenco |
 screenshot | synopsis | cmdsynopsis | funcsynopsis | classsynopsis |
 fieldsynopsis | constructorsynopsis | destructorsynopsis |
 methodsynopsis | formalpara | para | simpara | address | blockquote |
 graphic | graphicco | mediaobject | mediaobjectco | informalequation |
 informalexample | informalfigure | informaltable | equation | example |
 figure | table | msgset | procedure | sidebar | qandaset | productionset |
 constraintdef | anchor | bridgehead | remark | highlights | abstract |
 authorblurb | epigraph | indexterm | beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Block quotations are set off from the main text, as opposed to occurring inline.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

Epigraph will not be allowed in BlockQuote in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain blockquote: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, caution, chapter, colophon, constraintdef, dedication, example, figure, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, informalfigure, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in blockquote: abstract, address, anchor, attribution, authorblurb, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis,

constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, tip, title, variablelist, warning.

## See Also

abstract, attribution, epigraph, highlights, sidebar.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE blockquote PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<blockquote><attribution>Richard Dawkins</attribution>
<para>
The universe that we observe has precisely the properties we should
expect if there is, at bottom, no design, no purpose, no evil and
no good, nothing but pitiless indifference.
</para>
</blockquote>
```

The universe that we observe has precisely the properties we should expect if there is, at bottom, no design, no purpose, no evil and no good, nothing but pitiless indifference.

—Richard Dawkins

For additional examples, see also [attribution](#), [literallayout](#).

# book

book -- A book

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
book ::=
((title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 bookinfo?,
 (dedication|toc|lot|glossary|bibliography|preface|chapter|
 reference|part|article|appendix|index|setindex|colophon)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
fpi	CDATA	<i>None</i>
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A complete book. This is probably the most common document starting point in DocBook documents. The content model of Book was made dramatically less restrictive in DocBook V3.1.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Generally causes a forced page break, restarts page numbering, and may generate additional front and back matter (tables of contents and indexes, for example) automatically. In a Set, Book almost always begins on the next available recto page.

The input order of major components is taken to be the desired output order.

## Parents

These elements contain book: set.

## Children

The following elements occur in book: appendix, article, bibliography, bookinfo, chapter, colophon, dedication, glossary, index, lot, part, preface, reference, setindex, subtitle, title, titleabbrev, toc.

## Attributes

fpi

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

FPI holds the Formal Public Identifier for the Book.

## label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes. The third Book in a Set might be labeled “Volume III”, for example.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

## status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Book.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

appendix, article, chapter, colophon, dedication, part, partintro, preface, set.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE book PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<book>
<title>An Example Book</title>
<titleabbrev>Example</titleabbrev>
<bookinfo>
  <legalnotice><para>No notice is required.</para></legalnotice>
  <author><firstname>Norman</firstname><surname>Walsh</surname></author>
</bookinfo>
<dedication>
<para>
This book is dedicated to you.
</para>
</dedication>
<preface><title>Forword</title>
<para>
Some content is always required.
</para>
</preface>
<chapter><title>Required Chapter</title>
<para>
At least one chapter, reference, part, or article is required in a book.
</para>
</chapter>
<appendix><title>Optional Appendix</title>
<para>
Appendixes are optional.
</para>
</appendix>
</book>
```

For additional examples, see also appendix, collab, set, xref.

# bookinfo

bookinfo -- Meta-information for a Book

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
bookinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartment|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printheory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
contents	IDREFS	<i>None</i>

## Description

Meta-information for a Book.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of BookInfo in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

BookBiblio will be discarded.

## Future Changes

The contents attribute will be removed.

## Parents

These elements contain bookinfo: book.

## Children

The following elements occur in bookinfo: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, biblioset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, configroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corppauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itermset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## Attributes

contents

Contents, if specified, should contain a list of all the IDs of the chapter-level subelements of the Book, in their natural order.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE bookinfo PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<bookinfo>
  <title>User's Guide for the DocBook DTD</title>
  <authorgroup>
    <author><firstname>Terry</firstname><surname>Allen</surname></author>
    <author><firstname>Eve</firstname><surname>Maler</surname>
      <affiliation><orgname>Arbortext, Inc.</orgname></affiliation>
    </author>
    <author><firstname>Norman</firstname><surname>Walsh</surname>
      <affiliation><orgname>Arbortext, Inc.</orgname></affiliation>
    </author>
  </authorgroup>
  <edition>User's Guide version 1.0 for DocBook V3.0</edition>
  <pubdate>1997</pubdate>
  <copyright><year>1992</year>
    <year>1993</year>
    <year>1994</year>
    <year>1995</year>
    <year>1996</year>
    <year>1997</year>
  <holder>Arbortext, Inc.,
  HaL Computer Systems, Inc.,
  Fujitsu Software Corp., and
  O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.
</holder>
```

</copyright>

<legalnotice>

<para>Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute the DocBook DTD and its accompanying documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted in perpetuity, provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph appear in all copies.</para>

</legalnotice>

<legalnotice>

<para>The copyright holders make no representation about the suitability of this DTD for any purpose. It is provided <quote>as is</quote> without expressed or implied warranty. If you modify the DocBook DTD in any way, except for declaring and referencing additional general entities and declaring additional notations, identify your DTD as a variant of DocBook.</para>

</legalnotice>

</bookinfo>

For additional examples, see also book, collab.

# bridgehead

bridgehead -- A free-floating heading

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
bridgehead ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
renderas	<i>Enumeration:</i> other sect1 sect2 sect3 sect4 sect5	<i>None</i>

## Description

Some documents, usually legacy documents, use headings that are not tied to the normal sectional hierarchy. These headings may be represented in DocBook with the `BridgeHead` element.

`BridgeHeads` may also be useful in fiction or journalistic works that don't have a nested hierarchy.

## Processing expectations

A `BridgeHead` is formatted as a block, using the same display properties as the section heading which it masquerades as. The `RenderAs` attribute controls which heading it mimics.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain bridgehead: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `constraintdef`, `glossary`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `itemized-list`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in bridgehead: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`renderas`

The `RenderAs` attribute identifies how the `BridgeHead` should be rendered. In this way, a `BridgeHead` can be made to appear as a `Sect1`, for example.

## See Also

`sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `simplesect`.

## Examples

For examples, see chapter.

# callout

callout -- A “called out” description of a marked Area

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
callout ::=
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
arearefs	IDREFS	<i>Required</i>

## Description

A “callout” is a visual device for associating annotations with an image, program listing, or similar figure. Each location is identified with a mark, and the annotation is identified with the same mark. This is somewhat analagous to the notion of footnotes in print.

An example will help illustrate the concept. In the following example, the synopsis for the **mv** command is annotated with two marks. Note the location of the old and new filenames.

```
mv 1 oldfile 2 newfile
```

Somewhere else in the document, usually close by, a `CalloutList` provides a description for each of the callouts:

**1** The old filename. The **mv** command renames the file currently called *oldfile*, which must exist when **mv** is executed.

**2** The new filename. The **mv** command changes the name of the old file to *newfile*. If *newfile* exists when **mv** is executed, it will be replaced by the old file.

Each `Callout` contains an annotation for an individual callout or a group of callouts. The `Callout` points to the areas that it annotates with ID references. The areas are identified by coordinates in an `Area` or `AreaSet`, or by an explicit `CO` element.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

Callouts usually generate text that points the reader to the appropriate area on the object being augmented. Often, these are numbered bullets or other distinct visual icons. The same icons should be used in both places. In other words, whatever identifies the callouts on the object should generate the same icons on the respective callouts.

In online environments, it may also be possible to establish a linking relationship between the two elements.

The processing expectations of Callouts are likely to deserve special consideration for interchange. See Appendix F. This is especially true if your interchange partners are producing documentation in a medium that has restricted visual presentation features, such as aural media or Braille.

## Parents

These elements contain callout: `calloutlist`.

## Children

The following elements occur in callout: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `simplpara`, `simplelist`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Attributes

`arearefs`

`AreaRefs` must point to one or more `Areas` or `AreaSets`. These, in turn, identify the portions of the object described by this `Callout`.

## Examples

For examples, see `programlistingco`, `screenco`.

# calloutlist

calloutlist -- A list of Callouts

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
calloutlist ::=
((title,titleabbrev?)+,
 callout+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A CalloutList is a list of annotations or descriptions. Each Callout points to the area on a Graphic, Program-Listing, or Screen that it augments.

The areas are identified by coordinates in an Area or AreaSet, or by an explicit CO element.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

Introductory material may appear before the first list item.

## Parents

These elements contain calloutlist: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, caution, chapter, colophon, constraintdef, dedication, entry, example, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, graphicco, highlights, imageobjectco, important, index, informalexample, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, para, partintro, preface, procedure, programlistingco, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, screenco, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in calloutlist: callout, title, titleabbrev.

## See Also

areaspec, co, coref, graphicco, imageobjectco, itemizedlist, listitem, mediaobjectco, orderedlist, programlistingco, screenco, segmentedlist, simplelist, variablelist.

## Examples

For examples, see `programlistingco`, `screenco`.

# caption

caption -- A caption

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
caption ::=
(calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|formalpara|para|simpara|blockquote)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `Caption` is an extended description of a `MediaObject`. Unlike a `TextObject`, which is an alternative to the other elements in the `MediaObject`, the `Caption` augments the object.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain `caption: mediaobject`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `caption`: `blockquote`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `formalpara`, `glosslist`, `important`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## See Also

`alt`, `audioobject`, `graphic`, `imageobject`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `mediaobject`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## Examples

For examples, see `imageobject`, `informalfigure`.

# caution

caution -- A note of caution

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
caution ::=
(title?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table|
 procedure|sidebar|anchor|bridgehead|remark|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `Caution` is an admonition, usually set off from the main text.

In some types of documentation, the semantics of admonitions are clearly defined (`Caution` might imply the possibility of harm to equipment whereas `Warning` might imply harm to a person) However, DocBook makes no such assertions.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Often outputs the generated text “Caution” or some other visible indication of the type of admonition, especially if a `Title` is not present. Sometimes outputs a graphical icon or other symbol as well.

## Parents

These elements contain `caution`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `dedication`, `entry`, `glossary`, `glossdiv`, `highlights`, `index`, `itemizedlist`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `textobject`, `variablelist`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `caution`: `address`, `anchor`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemized-`

list, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, orderedlist, para, procedure, programlisting, programlistingco, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, title, variablelist.

## See Also

important, note, tip, warning.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE caution PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<caution><title>No User Servicable Parts Inside</title>
<para>
Breaking this seal voids all warranties.
</para>
</caution>
```

### **No User Servicable Parts Inside**

Breaking this seal voids all warranties.

# chapter

chapter -- A chapter, as of a book

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
chapter ::=
(beginpage?, chapterinfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 tocchap?,
 ((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 (sect1*|
 (refentry)*|
 simplesect*|
 (section)*))|
 (sect1+|
 (refentry)+|
 simplesect+|
 (section)+),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Chapter is a chapter of a Book.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Usually introduces a forced page break and often starts on the next recto page. The first chapter of a document usually restarts page numbering. Typically, chapters are numbered and presented in the table of contents.

## Parents

These elements contain chapter: book, part.

## Children

The following elements occur in chapter: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, bibliography, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, chapterinfo, classsynopsis, cmd-synopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glossary, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, index, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, lot, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, sect1, section, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, simplesect, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, toc, tocchap, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes. The fourth Chapter in a Book might be labeled “4”, for example.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Chapter.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

appendix, article, book, colophon, dedication, part, partintro, preface, set.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter label="6" id="figures">
<!--beginpage pagenum='129'-->
<chapterinfo>
<keywordset>
  <keyword>images</keyword>
  <keyword>illustrations</keyword>
</keywordset>
<itermset>
  <indexterm zone="figures"><primary>Figures</primary></indexterm>
```

```

    <indexterm zone="figures"><primary>Pictures</primary></indexterm>
    <indexterm zone="notreal">
      <primary>Sections</primary><secondary>Not Real</secondary>
    </indexterm>
  </itemset>
</chapterinfo>
<title>Pictures and Figures</title>
<epigraph>
<attribution>William Safire</attribution>
<para>
Knowing how things work is the basis for appreciation, and is
thus a source of civilized delight.
</para>
</epigraph>
<para>
Pictures and figures &hellip;
</para>
<sect1><title>Top Level Section</title>
<para>
&hellip;
</para>
<bridgehead id="notreal" renderas='sect3'>Not a Real Section</bridgehead>
<para>
This paragraph appears to be under a Sect3 heading, but it's really
in the same Sect1 as the preceding paragraph.
</para>
</sect1>
</chapter>

```

For additional examples, see also `abstract`, `appendix`, `beginpage`, `book`, `collab`, `highlights`, `index-term`, `olink`, `part`, `section`, `set`, `titleabbrev`, `xref`.

# chapterinfo

chapterinfo -- Meta-information for a Chapter

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
chapterinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ChapterInfo` element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a `Chapter`. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain `chapterinfo`: `chapter`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `chapterinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliaset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itermset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

# citation

citation -- An inline bibliographic reference to another published work

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
citation ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|functsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The content of a Citation is assumed to be a reference string, perhaps identical to an abbreviation in an entry in a Bibliography.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain citation: application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, para, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentrytitle, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara,

subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in citation: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errorrtex, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

citebiblioid, citerefentry, citetitle.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Consult <citation>AhoSethiUllman96</citation> for more details on
abstract syntax tree construction.
</para>
```

Consult [AhoSethiUllman96] for more details on abstract syntax tree construction.

# citebiblioid

citebiblioid -- A citation of a bibliographic identifier

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
citebiblioid ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
otherclass	CDATA	<i>None</i>
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> doi isbn issn libraryofcongress other pubnumber uri	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `citebiblioid` identifies a citation to another work by bibliographic identifier.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `citebiblioid`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `citebiblioid`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Attributes

`class`

Identifies the encoding scheme of the identifier.

`otherclass`

Identifies the encoding scheme of the identifier when `class` is `other`.

## See Also

`citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`.

# citerefentry

citerefentry -- A citation to a reference page

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
citerefentry ::=  
(refentrytitle,manvolnum?)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element is a citation to a RefEntry. It must include a RefEntryTitle that should exactly match the title of a RefEntry.

## Processing expectations

This element implicitly links to the RefEntry with the same RefEntryTitle (in the same volume, as defined by ManVolNum).

Formatted inline. Usually the ManVolNum is put in parentheses.

## Parents

These elements contain citerefentry: application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, para, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentrytitle, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in citerefentry: manvolnum, refentrytitle.

## See Also

citation, citebiblioid, citetitle.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"  
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">  
<para>
```

For a further description of print formats, consult the  
<citerefentry><refentrytitle>printf</refentrytitle>  
<manvolnum>3S</manvolnum></citerefentry> manual page.  
</para>

For a further description of print formats, consult the printf(3S) manual page.

For additional examples, see also manvolnum, refentry.

# citetitle

citetitle -- The title of a cited work

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
citetitle ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
pubwork	<i>Enumeration:</i> article book chapter journal manuscript part refentry section series set	<i>None</i>

## Description

CiteTitle provides inline markup for the title of a cited work.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Often italicized for Books and quoted for Articles.

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `citetitle`: `appendixinfo`, `application`, `articleinfo`, `attribution`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `bridgehead`, `chapterinfo`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossaryinfo`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `indexinfo`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `objectinfo`, `olink`, `para`, `partinfo`, `phrase`, `prefaceinfo`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentryinfo`, `refentrytitle`, `referenceinfo`, `refpurpose`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `citetitle`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `gubutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`pubwork`

`Pubwork` identifies the genre of the cited publication.

## See Also

`citation`, `citebiblioid`, `citerefentry`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
For a complete methodology for DTD creation, see
<citetitle pubwork="book">Developing SGML DTDs: From Text to Model
to Markup</citetitle> by Eve Maler and Jeanne El Andaloussi.
</para>
```

For a complete methodology for DTD creation, see *Developing SGML DTDs: From Text to Model to Markup* by Eve Maler and Jeanne El Andaloussi.

For additional examples, see also [emphasis](#), [footnote](#), [literallayout](#), [productnumber](#), [ulink](#).

# city

city -- The name of a city in an address

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
city ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The name of a city in an Address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an Address, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain city: address.

## Children

The following elements occur in city: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

address, country, email, fax, otheraddr, phone, pob, postcode, state, street.

## Examples

For examples, see address, otheraddr.

# classname

classname -- The name of a class, in the object-oriented programming sense

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
classname ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ClassName` tag is used to identify the name of a class. This is likely to occur only in documentation about object-oriented programming systems, languages, and architectures.

DocBook does not contain a complete set of inlines appropriate for describing object-oriented programming environments. (While it has `ClassName`, for example, it has nothing suitable for methods.) This will be addressed in a future version of DocBook.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `classname`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `oclass`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `classname`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## See Also

`interface`, `property`, `structfield`, `structname`, `symbol`, `token`, `type`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
All user-interface components must be descendants of the
<classname>Widget</classname> class.
</para>
```

All user-interface components must be descendants of the Widget class.

# classsynopsis

classsynopsis -- The syntax summary for a class definition

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
classsynopsis ::=
((ooclass|oointerface|ooexception)+,
 (classsynopsisinfo|fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|
  destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
language	CDATA	<i>None</i>
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> class interface	"class"

## Description

A `ClassSynopsis` contains the syntax summary of a class (generally speaking, a class in the object-oriented programming language sense).

This is one of the few places where DocBook attempts to model as well as describe. Unlike `FuncSynopsis` which was designed with C language function prototypes in mind, the content model of `ClassSynopsis` was designed to capture a wide range of object-oriented language semantics.

## Processing expectations

For the most part, the processing application is expected to generate all of the parenthesis, semicolons, commas, and so on. required in the rendered synopsis. The exception to this rule is that the spacing and other punctuation inside a parameter that is a pointer to a function must be provided in the source markup.

## Parents

These elements contain classsynopsis: answer, appendix, application, article, attribution, bibliodiv, bibliography, bibliomisc, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, citation, citetitle, constraintdef, emphasis, entry, example, figure, footnote, foreignphrase, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, informalfigure, itemizedlist, lineannotation, link, listitem, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, msgexplan, msgtext, note, olink, orderedlist, para, partintro, phrase, preface, procedure, productname, programlisting, qandadiv, qandaset, question, quote, refentrytitle, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, remark, revdescription, screen, screeninfo, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, seg, setindex, sidebar, simpara, simplesect, step, synopsis, term, tip, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in `classsynopsis`: `classsynopsisinfo`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `fieldsynopsis`, `methodsynopsis`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`.

## Attributes

class

**V4.0** The `Class` attribute identifies the whether this is the synopsis of a class or an interface.

language

**V4.0** Identifies the language (Java, C++, Perl, etc.) of the class for which this is a synopsis allows stylesheets to select an appropriate rendering.

# classsynopsisinfo

classsynopsisinfo -- Information supplementing the contents of a ClassSynopsis

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
classsynopsisinfo ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediobject|
indexterm|beginpage|textobject|lineannotation)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
format	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> linespecific	"linespecific"
linenumbering	<i>Enumeration:</i> numbered unnumbered	<i>None</i>

## Description

Supplementary information in a ClassSynopsis. See ClassSynopsis.

Unlike the other info elements, ClassSynopsisInfo is not a container for meta-information. Instead ClassSynopsisInfo is a verbatim environment for adding additional information to a class synopsis.

## Processing expectations

This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant.

## Parents

These elements contain classsynopsisinfo: classsynopsis.

## Children

The following elements occur in classsynopsisinfo: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu,

guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, lineannotation, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remarkable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, textobject, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

format

**V4.0** The `Format` attribute applies the `linespecific` notation to all `ClassSynopsisInfos`. All white space and line breaks must be preserved.

linenumbering

**V4.0** Line numbering indicates whether or not the lines of a `ClassSynopsisInfo` are to be automatically numbered. The details of numbering (every line or only selected lines, on the left or right, etc.) are left up to the processing application. Be aware that not all processors are capable of numbering lines.

# cmdsynopsis

cmdsynopsis -- A syntax summary for a software command

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
cmdsynopsis ::=  
( (command | arg | group | sbr) + ,  
  synopfragment * )
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
sepchar	CDATA	" "
cmdlength	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `CmdSynopsis` summarizes the options and parameters of a command started from a text prompt. This is usually a program started from the DOS, Windows, or UNIX shell prompt.

`CmdSynopsis` operates under the following general model: commands have arguments, that may be grouped; arguments and groups may be required or optional and may be repeated.

## Processing expectations

The processing expectations of `CmdSynopsis` are fairly complex.

- Arguments are generally identified with a prefix character.

In the UNIX world, this character is almost universally the dash or hyphen although plus signs and double dashes have become more common in recent years.

In the DOS/Windows world, forward slashes are somewhat more common than dashes.

The DocBook processing expectations on this point are intentionally vague. In some environments it may be most convenient to generate these characters automatically, in other environments it may be more convenient to insert them literally in the content.

Whichever processing model you choose, note that this will be an interchange issue if you share documents with other users (see Appendix F).

- Brackets are used to distinguish between optional, required, or plain arguments. Usually square brackets are placed around optional arguments, [ -g ], and curly brackets are placed around required arguments, { -g }. Plain arguments are required, but are not decorated with brackets.
- Repeatable arguments are followed by an ellipsis.

- Multiple arguments within a group are considered exclusive and are separated by vertical bars.
- Groups, like arguments, may be optional, required, or plain and may or may not repeat. The same brackets and ellipses that are used to indicate these characteristics on arguments are used on groups.
- Arguments and groups may nest more-or-less arbitrarily.
- Formatted as a displayed block. The processing system is free to introduce line breaks where required, but the SBR element may be introduced by the author to provide an explicit break location.

## Parents

These elements contain `cmdsynopsis`: `answer`, `appendix`, `application`, `article`, `attribution`, `bibli-odiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliomisc`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `constraintdef`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `foreignphrase`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `olink`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `phrase`, `preface`, `procedure`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `remark`, `revdescription`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `seg`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplesect`, `step`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tip`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `cmdsynopsis`: `arg`, `command`, `group`, `sbr`, `synopfragment`.

## Attributes

`cmdlength`

`CmdLength` indicates displayed length of the command; this information may be used to intelligently indent command synopses which extend beyond one line.

`label`

`Label` specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation.

`sepchar`

`SepChar` specifies the character (a space by default) that should separate the `Command` and its top-level arguments.

## See Also

`arg`, `funcsynopsis`, `group`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `sbr`, `synopfragment`, `synopfragmentref`, `synopsis`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE cmdsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
```

```

<cmdsynopsis>
  <command>cd</command>
  <arg choice='req'><replaceable>directory</replaceable></arg>
</cmdsynopsis>
cd {directory}

<!DOCTYPE cmdsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<cmdsynopsis>
  <command>cal</command>
  <arg>-j</arg>
  <arg>-y</arg>
  <arg>month <arg>year</arg></arg>
</cmdsynopsis>
cal [-j] [-y] [month [year]]

<!DOCTYPE cmdsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<cmdsynopsis>
  <command>chgrp</command>
  <arg>-R
  <group>
    <arg>-H</arg>
    <arg>-L</arg>
    <arg>-P</arg>
  </group>
  </arg>
  <arg>-f</arg>
  <arg choice='plain'><replaceable>group</replaceable></arg>
  <arg rep='repeat' choice='plain'><replaceable>file</replaceable></arg>
</cmdsynopsis>
chgrp [-R [-H | -L | -P] ] [-f] group file...

<!DOCTYPE cmdsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<cmdsynopsis>
  <command>emacs</command>
  <arg>-t <replaceable>file</replaceable></arg>
  <arg>-q</arg>
  <arg>-u <replaceable>user</replaceable></arg>
  <arg>+<replaceable>number</replaceable></arg>
  <arg rep='repeat'>-f <replaceable>function</replaceable></arg>
  <sbr/>
  <arg rep='repeat'>-l <replaceable>file</replaceable></arg>
  <arg rep='repeat' choice='plain'><replaceable>file</replaceable></arg>
</cmdsynopsis>
emacs [-t file] [-q] [-u user] [+number] [-f function...] [-l file...] file...

```

Note the use of SBR in this example to force line breaks at reasonable places in the synopsis.

For additional examples, see also `refentry`, `synopfragment`.

## CO

co -- The location of a callout embedded in text

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
co ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>
linkends	IDREFS	<i>None</i>

## Description

A CO identifies (by its location) a point of reference for a callout. See [Callout](#).

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain co: [computeroutput](#), [literallayout](#), [programlisting](#), [prompt](#), [replaceable](#), [screen](#), [synopsis](#), [systemitem](#), [userinput](#).

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation.

linkends

Linkends points to the [Callout](#)(s) which refer to this CO. (This provides bidirectional linking, which may be useful in online presentation, for example.)

## See Also

[areaspec](#), [calloutlist](#), [coref](#), [graphicco](#), [imageobjectco](#), [mediaobjectco](#), [programlistingco](#), [screenco](#).

## Examples

For examples, see screenco.

# collab

collab -- Identifies a collaborator

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
collab ::=
(collabname,affiliation*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element identifies a collaborative partner in a document. It associates the name of a collaborator with his or her Affiliation.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain collab: appendixinfo, articleinfo, authorgroup, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in collab: affiliation, collabname.

## See Also

author, authorblurb, authorgroup, collabname, contrib, corpauthor, editor, othercredit, personblurb, personname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE book PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<book>
<bookinfo>
  <title>DocBook: The Definitive Guide</title>
  <authorgroup>
    <collab><collabname>Lenny Muellner</collabname></collab>
```

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

```
<collab><collabname>Norman Walsh</collabname></collab>
</authorgroup>
</bookinfo>
<chapter><title>Just an Example</title>
<para>
This is just an example, in real life, Lenny and Norm are both
<sgmltag>Author</sgmltag>s.
</para>
</chapter>
</book>
```

For additional examples, see also `contractsponsor`.

# collabname

collabname -- The name of a collaborator

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
collabname ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The name of a collaborator.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain collabname: collab.

## Children

The following elements occur in collabname: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

author, authorblurb, authorgroup, collab, contrib, corppauthor, editor, othercredit, personblurb, personname.

## Examples

For examples, see collab, contractsponsor.

# colophon

colophon -- Text at the back of a book describing facts about its production

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
colophon ::=
((title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|formalpara|para|simpara|blockquote)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A Colophon, if present, almost always occurs at the very end of a book. It contains factual information about the book, especially about its production, and includes details about typographic style, the fonts used, the paper used, and perhaps the binding method of the book.

Font geeks like Norm think every book should have one.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain colophon: book.

## Children

The following elements occur in colophon: blockquote, calloutlist, caution, formalpara, glosslist, important, itemizedlist, literallayout, note, orderedlist, para, programlisting, programlistingco, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Colophon.

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

appendix, article, book, chapter, dedication, part, partintro, preface, set.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE colophon PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<colophon>
<para>
Draft versions of this book were produced with the
DocBook DSSSL Stylesheets. Final production was
performed with Troff.
</para>
</colophon>
```

# colspec

colspec -- Specifications for a column in a table

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
colspec ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Name	Type	Default
colnum	CDATA	<i>None</i>
char	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colwidth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
charoff	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colname	CDATA	<i>None</i>
rowsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center char justify left right	<i>None</i>

## Description

The attributes of this empty element specify the presentation characteristics of entries in a column of a table.

Each ColSpec refers to a single column. Columns are numbered sequentially from left to right in the table. If the ColNum attribute is not specified, the ColSpec is for the next column after the preceding ColSpec or column 1 if it is the first ColSpec.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*.

## Parents

These elements contain colspec: entrytbl, tfoot, tgroup, thead.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

## Attributes

### align

`Align` specifies the horizontal alignment of `Entrys` (or `EntryTbls`) in the column. The default alignment is inherited from the enclosing `TGroup`. If `Char` is specified, see also `Char` and `CharOff`. Individual `Entrys` and `EntryTbls` can specify an alternate alignment.

### char

`Char` specifies the alignment character when the `Align` attribute is set to `Char`.

### charoff

`CharOff` specifies the percentage of the column's total width that should appear to the left of the first occurrence of the character identified in `Char` when the `Align` attribute is set to `Char`. This attribute is inherited from the enclosing `TGroup`.

### colname

`ColName` gives a symbolic name to a column. The symbolic name can then be used in subsequent `Entrys` and `SpanSpecs` to identify the column.

### colnum

`ColNum` gives the number of the column defined by this `ColSpec`. If not specified, this `ColSpec` describes the next column to the right of the column defined by the previous `ColSpec` or the first column (column 1) if this is the first `ColSpec`.

### colsep

If `ColSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn to the right of the column described by this `ColSpec`. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule to the right of the last column in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute of the enclosing `Table` or `InformalTable` and the `ColSep` of the last column in the table is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from enclosing elements. Individual `Entrys` or `EntryTbls` can override the `ColSpec` setting of this attribute.

### colwidth

`ColWidth` specifies the desired width of the relevant column. It can be either a fixed measure using one of the CALS units (36pt, 10pc, etc.) or a proportional measure. Proportional measures have the form “*number*\*”, meaning this column should be *number* times wider than a column with the measure “1\*” (or just “\*”). These two forms can be mixed, as in “3\*+1pc”.

### rowsep

If `RowSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn below the cells in the specified column. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule below the last row in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute of the enclosing `Table` or `InformalTable` and the `RowSep` of the last row is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from enclosing elements. Individual `Entrys` or `EntryTbls` can override the `ColSpec` setting of this attribute.

## See Also

`entry`, `entrytbl`, `informaltable`, `row`, `spanspec`, `table`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `tgroup`, `thead`.

## Examples

For examples, see `informaltable`, `table`.

# command

command -- The name of an executable program or other software command

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
command ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

This element holds the name of an executable program or the text of a command that a user enters to execute a program.

Command is an integral part of the `CmdSynopsis` environment as well as being a common inline.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

The content model of `Command` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`) in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain `command`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`,

parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in command: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errorrtype, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Command.

## See Also

constant, literal, replaceable, varname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
In <acronym>UNIX</acronym>,
<command>ls</command> is used to get a directory listing.
</para>
```

In UNIX, **ls** is used to get a directory listing.

For additional examples, see also cmdsynopsis, medialabel, option, parameter, refentry, synopfragment.

# computeroutput

computeroutput -- Data, generally text, displayed or presented by a computer

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
computeroutput ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage|co)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

ComputerOutput identifies lines of text generated by a computer program (messages, results, or other output).

Note that ComputerOutput is not a verbatim environment, but an inline.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information. It's often presented in a fixed width font.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain computeroutput: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal,

literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in `computeroutput`: `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `beginpage`, `classname`, `co`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `database`, `email`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `function`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `media-label`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `parameter`, `prompt`, `property`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `return-value`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`.

## Attributes

`moreinfo`

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `ComputerOutput`.

## See Also

`constant`, `envar`, `filename`, `lineannotation`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `markup`, `option`, `optional`, `parameter`, `programlisting`, `prompt`, `replaceable`, `screen`, `screenshot`, `sgmltag`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `userinput`, `varname`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The output from the date command,
<computeroutput>Sun Nov 16, 1997 21:03:29</computeroutput>,
uses fixed-width fields so that it can easily be parsed.
</para>
```

The output from the date command, Sun Nov 16, 1997 21:03:29, uses fixed-width fields so that it can easily be parsed.

# confdates

confdates -- The dates of a conference for which a document was written

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
confdates ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

ConfDates holds the dates of a conference for which a document was written or at which it was presented.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain confdates: `confgroup`.

## Children

The following elements occur in confdates: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`confgroup`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`, `conftitle`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`.

## Examples

For examples, see `confgroup`.

# confgroup

confgroup -- A wrapper for document meta-information about a conference

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
confgroup ::=
((confdates|conftitle|confnum|address|confsponsor)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

If a document, for example an `Article`, is written in connection with a conference, the elements in this wrapper are used to hold information about the conference: titles, sponsors, addresses, dates, etc.

## Processing Expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `confgroup`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `confgroup`: `address`, `confdates`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`, `conftitle`.

## See Also

`confdates`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`, `conftitle`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE confgroup PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<confgroup>
<confdates>April, 1998</confdates>
<conftitle>The World Wide Web Conference</conftitle>
<confnum>7</confnum>
<address>Brisbane, Australia</address>
<confsponsor>World Wide Web Conference Committee (W3C3)</confsponsor>
</confgroup>
```

# confnum

confnum -- An identifier, frequently numerical, associated with a conference for which a document was written

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
confnum ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

See ConfGroup.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain confnum: confgroup.

## Children

The following elements occur in confnum: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

confdates, confgroup, confsponsor, conftitle, contractnum, contractsponsor.

## Examples

For examples, see confgroup.

# confsponsor

confsponsor -- The sponsor of a conference for which a document was written

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
confsponsor ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

See ConfGroup.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain confsponsor: `confgroup`.

## Children

The following elements occur in confsponsor: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`confdates`, `confgroup`, `confnum`, `conftitle`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`.

## Examples

For examples, see `confgroup`.

# conftitle

conftitle -- The title of a conference for which a document was written

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
conftitle ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

See ConfGroup.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain conftitle: `confgroup`.

## Children

The following elements occur in conftitle: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`confdates`, `confgroup`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`.

## Examples

For examples, see `confgroup`.

# constant

constant -- A programming or system constant

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
constant ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> limit	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `Constant` identifies a value as immutable. It is most often used to identify system limitations or other defined constants.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `constant`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `constant`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## Attributes

class

Class identifies constants that are system or application limits (for example, the maximum length of a filename).

## See Also

command, computeroutput, literal, markup, option, optional, parameter, prompt, replaceable, sgmltag, userinput, varname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
In ACL, <constant>main::PCS</constant> contains the path component
separator character.
</para>
```

In ACL, `main::PCS` contains the path component separator character.

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The maximum legal length for a path name is
<constant class='limit'>PATH_MAX</constant>, defined in
<filename class='headerfile'>limits.h</filename>.
</para>
```

The maximum legal length for a path name is `PATH_MAX`, defined in `limits.h`.

# constraint

constraint -- A constraint in an EBNF production

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
constraint ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>Required</i>

## Description

This element is only available if you are using the EBNF Module.

A `Constraint` is a cross-reference to a description of a constraint that cannot be expressed in the grammar (generally logical rather than syntactic constraints).

## Parents

These elements contain constraint: `production`.

## Attributes

linkend

**EBNF** FIXME:

## Examples

For examples, see `productionset`.

# constraintdef

constraintdef -- The definition of a constraint in an EBNF production

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
constraintdef ::=
(title,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table|
 procedure|sidebar|anchor|bridgehead|remark|indexterm|beginpage))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element is only available if you are using the EBNF Module.

A `ConstraintDef` contains a description of a constraint that cannot be expressed in the grammar (generally logical rather than syntactic constraints).

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain `constraintdef`: `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `chapter`, `glossary`, `glossdiv`, `index`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `simplesect`, `step`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `constraintdef`: `address`, `anchor`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `synopsis`, `table`, `title`, `variablelist`.

## Examples

For examples, see `productionset`.

# constructorsynopsis

constructorsynopsis -- A syntax summary for a constructor

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
constructorsynopsis ::=  
(modifier*,methodname?,  
 (methodparam+|void),  
 exceptionname*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
language	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `ConstructorSynopsis` contains the syntax summary of a constructor in an object-oriented programming language. Unlike a `MethodSynopsis`, which it closely resembles, it may not identify a return type and the `MethodName` is optional (in some languages, constructor names can be generated automatically).

## Processing expectations

For the most part, the processing application is expected to generate all of the parenthesis, semicolons, commas, and so on. required in the rendered synopsis.

## Parents

These elements contain `constructorsynopsis`: `answer`, `appendix`, `application`, `article`, `attribution`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliomisc`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `foreignphrase`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `olink`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `phrase`, `preface`, `procedure`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `remark`, `revdescription`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `seg`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplesect`, `step`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tip`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `constructorsynopsis`: `exceptionname`, `methodname`, `methodparam`, `modifier`, `void`.

# contractnum

contractnum -- The contract number of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
contractnum ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The ContractNum element that occurs in bibliographic metadata contains information about the contract number of a contract under which a document was written.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain contractnum: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in contractnum: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

confdates, confgroup, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, contractsponsor.

## Examples

For examples, see contractsponsor.

# contractsponsor

contractsponsor -- The sponsor of a contract

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
contractsponsor ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The ContractSponsor element that occurs in bibliographic metadata contains information about the sponser of a contract under which a document was written.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain contractsponsor: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in contractsponsor: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

confdates, confgroup, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, contractnum.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<article>
<articleinfo>
  <title>Retrofitting Class A Widgets</title>
  <contractsponsor>Xyzzy Engineering Resources</contractsponsor>
  <contractnum>314-592-7</contractnum>
```

```
<pubsnumber>XER-314-7A</pubsnumber>
<corpauthor>Technical Documentation Consultants, Inc.</corpauthor>
<collab><collabname>John Whorfin</collabname>
  <affiliation><orgname>Yoyodyne Propulsion Systems</orgname></affiliation>
</collab>
</articleinfo>
<para>&hellip;</para>
</article>
```

# contrib

contrib -- A summary of the contributions made to a document by a credited source

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
contrib ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `Contrib` element contains a summary or description of the contributions made by an author, editor, or other credited source.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `contrib`: `address`, `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `author`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `editor`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `othercredit`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `contrib`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `collab`, `collabname`, `corpauthor`, `editor`, `othercredit`, `personblurb`, `personname`.

## Examples

For examples, see `othercredit`.

# copyright

copyright -- Copyright information about a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
copyright ::=  
(year+,holder*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `Copyright` element holds information about the date(s) and holder(s) of a document copyright. If an extended block of text describing the copyright or other legal status is required, use `LegalNotice`.

The `Copyright` element is confined to meta-information. For copyright statements in running text, see `Trademark`.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

A displayed copyright notice usually includes the copyright symbol, ©, as generated text and is formatted with commas separating multiple years. Additional generated text, such as the legend “All rights reserved,” may also be generated.

## Parents

These elements contain copyright: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `copyright`: `holder`, `year`.

## See Also

`legalnotice`, `productname`, `trademark`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE copyright PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"  
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">  
<copyright>  
  <year>1996</year>
```

```
<year>1997</year>  
<holder>O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.</holder>  
</copyright>
```

For additional examples, see also `bibliography`, `biblioset`, `bookinfo`.

# coref

coref -- A cross reference to a `co`

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
coref ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>Required</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `coref` plays a role for callouts that is analogous to the role of `footnoteref` for footnotes.

Use one `co` and one or more `coref` elements when you want to indicate that the same callout should appear in several places.

### Note

A `coref` is not a cross-reference to a callout (use `xref` for that), rather, it is an indication that the callout appears semantically in more than one place.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `coref`: `literallayout`, `programlisting`, `screen`, `synopsis`.

## Attributes

`label`

`Label` specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation.

`linkend`

`Linkend` points to the `co` referenced.

## See Also

areaspec, calloutlist, co, graphicco, imageobjectco, mediaobjectco, programlistingco, screenco.

# corpauthor

corpauthor -- A corporate author, as opposed to an individual

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
corpauthor ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

In documents that have no specific authors, but are credited as authored by a corporation, the CorpAuthor tag can be used in place of the Author tag to indicate authorship. This element is used in bibliographic metadata.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain corpauthor: appendixinfo, application, articleinfo, attribution, author-group, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomisc, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, bridgehead, chapterinfo, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossaryinfo, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, indexinfo, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, objectinfo, olink, para, partinfo, phrase, prefaceinfo, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentryinfo, refentrytitle, referenceinfo, refpurpose, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in corpauthor: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

author, authorblurb, authorgroup, collab, collabname, contrib, editor, othercredit, personblurb, personname.

## Examples

For examples, see `contractsponsor`, `set`.

# corpname

corpname -- The name of a corporation

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
corpname ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The name of a corporation.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain corpname: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in corpname: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

affiliation, jobtitle, orgdiv, orgname, publishername, shortaffil.

## Examples

For examples, see bibliography, bibliomset.

# country

country -- The name of a country

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
country ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The name of a country, typically in an address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an `Address`, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain `country`: `address`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `country`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`address`, `city`, `email`, `fax`, `otheraddr`, `phone`, `pob`, `postcode`, `state`, `street`.

## Examples

For examples, see `address`, `otheraddr`.

# database

database -- The name of a database, or part of a database

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
database ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> field key1 key2 name record table	<i>None</i>

## Description

The name of a database, or part of a database.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

The content model of `Database` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`) in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain database: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in database: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenu-item, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

class

Class allows the author to identify particular elements of a database.

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Database.

## See Also

application, filename, hardware, medialabel, productname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <database>ProjectStatus</database> database has been updated.
Please note that <database class='field'>Year</database> has been
extended to four digits.
</para>
```

The ProjectStatus database has been updated. Please note that Year has been extended to four digits.

# date

date -- The date of publication or revision of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
date ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The Date element identifies a date.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

DocBook does not specify the format of the date.

## Parents

These elements contain date: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsectlinfo, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, revision, sectlinfo, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in date: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

edition, printhistory, pubdate, releaseinfo, revhistory.

## Examples

For examples, see article, revhistory.

# dedication

dedication -- A wrapper for the dedication section of a book

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
dedication ::=
((title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|formalpara|para|simpara|blockquote|indexterm|
 beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A *Dedication* is a section at the very beginning of a book (before any other body matter) containing a tribute to something (frequently someone) in connection with the writing or publication of the *Book*.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Frequently appears on a page by itself at the beginning of a book.

## Parents

These elements contain *dedication*: *book*.

## Children

The following elements occur in *dedication*: *beginpage*, *blockquote*, *calloutlist*, *caution*, *formalpara*, *glosslist*, *important*, *indexterm*, *itemizedlist*, *literallayout*, *note*, *orderedlist*, *para*, *programlisting*, *programlistingco*, *screen*, *screenco*, *screenshot*, *segmentedlist*, *simpara*, *simplelist*, *subtitle*, *tip*, *title*, *titleabbrev*, *variablelist*, *warning*.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the *Dedication*.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

appendix, article, book, chapter, colophon, part, partintro, preface, set.

## Examples

For examples, see book.

# destructorsynopsis

destructorsynopsis -- A syntax summary for a destructor

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
destructorsynopsis ::=
(modifier*,methodname?,
 (methodparam+|void),
 exceptionname*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
language	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `DestructorSynopsis` contains the syntax summary of a destructor in an object-oriented programming language. Unlike a `MethodSynopsis`, which it closely resembles, it may not identify a return type and the `MethodName` is optional (in some languages, destructors have an immutable name which may be generated automatically).

## Processing expectations

For the most part, the processing application is expected to generate all of the parenthesis, semicolons, commas, and so on. required in the rendered synopsis.

## Parents

These elements contain `destructorsynopsis`: `answer`, `appendix`, `application`, `article`, `attribution`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliomisc`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `foreignphrase`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `olink`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `phrase`, `preface`, `procedure`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `remark`, `revdescription`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `seg`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplesect`, `step`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tip`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `destructorsynopsis`: `exceptionname`, `methodname`, `methodparam`, `modifier`, `void`.

# edition

edition -- The name or number of an edition of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
edition ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `Edition` contains the name or number of the edition of the document.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `edition`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `edition`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`date`, `printhistory`, `pubdate`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`.

## Examples

For examples, see `bookinfo`.

# editor

editor -- The name of the editor of a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
editor ::=
((personname|
 (honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|othername|affiliation|
  authorblurb|contrib)+),
 (personblurb|email|address)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The name of the editor of a document.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of Editor in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to hold Editor, AuthorBlurb, and Affiliation.

## Parents

These elements contain editor: appendixinfo, articleinfo, authorgroup, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in editor: address, affiliation, authorblurb, contrib, email, firstname, honorific, lineage, othername, personblurb, personname, surname.

## See Also

author, authorblurb, authorgroup, collab, collabname, contrib, corpauthor, othercredit, personblurb, personname.

## Examples

For examples, see `authorgroup`, `bibliography`, `biblioset`.

# email

email -- An email address

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
email ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Inline markup identifying an email address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Email may generate surrounding punctuation, such as angle brackets. This is an interchange issue. See Appendix F.

In some processing environments, Email may automatically generate a hypertext link (a `mailto:` URL).

In an Address, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain email: action, address, application, attribution, author, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, editor, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, othercredit, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in email: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

address, city, country, fax, otheraddr, phone, pob, postcode, state, street.

# Emphasis

Emphasis -- Emphasized text

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
emphasis ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

`emphasis` provides a method for indicating that certain text should be stressed in some way.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Emphasized text is traditionally presented in italics or boldface. A `Role` attribute of `bold` or `strong` is often used to generate boldface, if italics is the default presentation.

`emphasis` is often used wherever its typographic presentation is desired, even when other markup might theoretically be more appropriate.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain emphasis: `abbrev`, `ackno`, `acronym`, `application`, `artpagenums`, `attribution`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliosource`,

bridgehead, citation, citebiblioid, citetitle, city, collabname, confdates, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, corppauthor, corpname, country, date, edition, email, emphasis, entry, fax, firstname, firstterm, foreignphrase, glosssee, glossseealso, glossterm, holder, honorific, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, jobtitle, label, lineage, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, member, modespec, msgaud, olink, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, primary, primaryie, productname, productnumber, programlisting, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, quote, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo, refpurpose, releaseinfo, remark, revnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, shortaffil, simpara, state, street, subscript, subtitle, superscript, surname, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, volumenum, wordasword, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in emphasis: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corppauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

abbrev, acronym, foreignphrase, phrase, quote, wordasword.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <emphasis>most</emphasis> important example of this
phenomenon occurs in A. Nonymous's book
<citetitle>Power Snacking</citetitle>.
</para>
```

The *most* important example of this phenomenon occurs in A. Nonymous's book *Power Snacking*.

For additional examples, see also `index`, `programlistingco`, `type`.

# entry

entry -- A cell in a table

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
entry ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage|calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|
segmentedlist|simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|
warning|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|
screenco|screenshot|formalpara|para|simpara|graphic|mediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
nameend	CDATA	<i>None</i>
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>
char	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
charoff	CDATA	<i>None</i>
morerows	CDATA	<i>None</i>
spanname	CDATA	<i>None</i>
namest	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colname	CDATA	<i>None</i>
rowsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
rotate	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center	<i>None</i>

char justify left right	
----------------------------------	--

## Description

Entry is a cell in a table.

Each Entry may specify its starting column. Entries that do not explicitly specify a starting column begin implicitly in the column that is immediately adjacent to the preceding cell. Note that Entries with the MoreRows attribute from preceding rows implicitly occupy cells in the succeeding Rows.

Rows are not required to be full. It is legal for some entries to be completely absent (at the beginning, middle, or end of a row).

### Pernicious Mixed Content

The content model of the Entry element exhibits a nasty peculiarity that we call “pernicious mixed content”.<sup>18</sup>

Every other element in DocBook contains either block elements or inline elements (including #PCDATA) unambiguously. In these cases, the meaning of line breaks and spaces are well understood; they are insignificant between block elements and significant (to the SGML parser, anyway) where inline markup can occur.

Table entries are different; they can contain either block or inline elements, but not both at the same time. In other words, one Entry in a table might contain a paragraph or a list while another contains simply #PCDATA or another inline markup, but no single Entry can contain both.

Because the content model of an Entry allows both kinds of markup, each time the SGML parser encounters an Entry, it has to decide what variety of markup it contains. SGML parsers are forbidden to use more than a single token of lookahead to reach this decision. In practical terms, what this means is that a line feed or space after an Entry start tag causes the parser to decide that the cell contains inline markup. Subsequent discovery of a paragraph or another block element causes a parsing error.

All of these are legal:

```
<entry>3.1415927</entry>
<entry>General <emphasis>#PCDATA</emphasis></entry>
<entry><para>
A paragraph of text
</para></entry>
```

However, each of these is an error:

```
<entry>
Error, cannot have a line break before a block element
<para>
A paragraph of text.
</para></entry>
```

```
<entry><para>
A paragraph of text.
```

<sup>18</sup>A term coined by Terry Allen.

```

</para>           Error, cannot have a line break between block elements

<para>
A paragraph of text.
</para></entry>

<entry><para>
A paragraph of text.
</para>           Error, cannot have a line break after a block element

</entry>

```

When designing a DTD, it is wise to avoid pernicious mixed content. Unfortunately, the only way to correct the pernicious mixed content problem that already exists in DocBook is to require some sort of wrapper (a block element, or an inline like `Phrase`) around `#PCDATA` within table `Entries`. This is annoying and inconvenient in a great many tables in which `#PCDATA` cells predominate and, in addition, differ from CALS.

## Processing expectations

This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*.

The content of `Entry` is formatted to fit within the table cell that it occupies. Horizontal and vertical spanning may allow the content of an `Entry` to occupy several physical cells.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain entry: `row`.

## Children

The following elements occur in entry: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructor-synopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glosslist`, `glossterm`, `graphic`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `important`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `itemizedlist`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `mediaobject`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `note`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `orderedlist`, `othercredit`, `para`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `sgmltag`, `simplepara`, `simplelist`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`,

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

systemitem, tip, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, variablelist, varname, warning, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

### align

`Align` specifies the horizontal alignment of text (and other elements) within the `Entry`. If no alignment is specified, it is inherited from the `ColSpec` for the current column, or the `SpanSpec` if this entry occurs in a span. If `Char` is specified, see also `Char` and `CharOff`.

### char

`Char` specifies the alignment character when the `Align` attribute is set to `Char`.

### charoff

`CharOff` specifies the percentage of the column's total width that should appear to the left of the first occurrence of the character identified in `Char` when the `Align` attribute is set to `Char`. This attribute is inherited from the relevant `ColSpec` or `SpanSpec`.

### colname

`ColName` identifies the column in which this entry should appear; it must have been previously defined in a `ColSpec`. `Entry`s cannot be given out of order, the column referenced must be to the right of the last `Entry` or `EntryTbl` placed in the current row. It is an error to specify both a `ColName` and a `SpanName`.

### colsep

If `ColSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn to the right of this `Entry`. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule to the right of the last column in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute of the enclosing `Table` or `InformalTable` and the `ColSep` of an entry in the last column in the table is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from the the corresponding `ColSpec` or `SpanSpec` and enclosing elements.

### morerows

`MoreRows` indicates how many more rows, in addition to the current row, this `Entry` is to occupy. It creates a vertical span. The default of 0 indicates that the `Entry` occupies only a single row.

### nameend

`NameEnd` is the name (defined in a `ColSpec`) of the rightmost column of a span. On `Entry`, specifying both `NameSt` and `NameEnd` defines a horizontal span for the current `Entry`. (See also `SpanName`.)

### namest

`NameSt` (“name start”) is the name (defined in a `ColSpec`) of the leftmost column of a span. On `Entry`, specifying both `NameSt` and `NameEnd` defines a horizontal span for the current `Entry`. (See also `SpanName`.)

### rotate

If `Rotate` has the value 1 (true), the `Entry` is to be rotated 90 degrees counterclockwise in the table cell. A value of 0 (false) indicates that no rotation is to occur. If the stylesheet also specifies rotation, the value of `Rotate` is ignored; they are not additive. Only the values 0 and 1 are legal.

rowsep

If `RowSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn below the `Entry`. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule below the last row in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute of the enclosing `Table` or `InformalTable` and the `RowSep` of the last row is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from enclosing elements.

spanname

`SpanName` is the name (defined in a `SpanSpec`) of a span. This cell will be rendered with the specified horizontal span.

valign

`Valign` specifies the vertical alignment of text (and other elements) within the `Entry`. If no alignment is specified, it is inherited from enclosing elements.

## See Also

`colspec`, `entrytbl`, `informaltable`, `row`, `spanspec`, `table`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `tgroup`, `thead`.

## Examples

For examples, see `entrytbl`, `footnoteref`, `informaltable`, `table`.

# entrytbl

entrytbl -- A subtable appearing in place of an Entry in a table

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
entrytbl ::=  
(colspec*, spanspec*, thead?, tbody)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
nameend	CDATA	<i>None</i>
char	CDATA	<i>None</i>
charoff	CDATA	<i>None</i>
spanname	CDATA	<i>None</i>
namest	CDATA	<i>None</i>
tgroupstyle	CDATA	<i>None</i>
cols	CDATA	<i>Required</i>
colsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
rowsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colname	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center char justify left right	<i>None</i>

## Description

The EntryTbl element allows for a single level of nesting within tables. This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995*<sup>i</sup>.

An entry table may occur in a row instead of an Entry. EntryTbls have most of the elements of a table but may not include themselves, thus limiting nesting to a single level.

## Processing expectations

The content of EntryTbl is formatted, *as a table*, to fit within the table cell that it occupies. Horizontal and vertical spanning may allow an EntryTbl to occupy several physical cells in the table that contains it.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

If multiple `EntryTbls` occur in a single row, formatters that support `EntryTbl` are not required to ensure that subrows within the various tables are vertically aligned.

Many formatters are incapable of supporting `EntryTbls`. This is an interchange issue. See Appendix F.

## Parents

These elements contain `entrytbl`: `row`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `entrytbl`: `colspec`, `spanspec`, `tbody`, `thead`.

## Attributes

`align`

`Align` specifies the horizontal alignment of the `EntryTbl` in the cell in which it occurs. If no alignment is specified, it is inherited from the `ColSpec` for the current column, or the `SpanSpec` if this entry occurs in a span.

`char`

`Char` specifies the alignment character when the `Align` attribute is set to `Char`.

`charoff`

`CharOff` specifies the percentage of the column's total width that should appear to the left of the first occurrence of the character identified in `Char` when the `Align` attribute is set to `Char`. This attribute is inherited from the relevant `ColSpec` or `SpanSpec`.

`colname`

`ColName` identifies the column in which this entry table should appear; it must have been previously defined in a `ColSpec`. `EntryTbls` cannot be given out of order, the column referenced must be to the right of the last `Entry` or `EntryTbl` placed in the current row. It is an error to specify both a `ColName` and a `SpanName`.

`cols`

`Cols` specifies the number of columns in the `EntryTbl`.

`colsep`

If `ColSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn to the right of this `EntryTbl`. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule to the right of the last column in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute of the enclosing `Table` or `InformalTable` and the `ColSep` of an entry in the last column in the table is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from the the corresponding `ColSpec` or `SpanSpec` and enclosing elements.

`nameend`

`NameEnd` is the name (defined in a `ColSpec`) of the rightmost column of a span. On `EntryTbl`, specifying both `NameSt` and `NameEnd` defines a horizontal span for the current `EntryTbl`. (See also `SpanName`.)

namest

NameSt (“name start”) is the name (defined in a ColSpec) of the leftmost column of a span. On EntryTbl, specifying both NameSt and NameEnd defines a horizontal span for the current EntryTbl. (See also SpanName.)

rowsep

If RowSep has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn below the EntryTbl. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule below the last row in the table is controlled by the Frame attribute of the enclosing Table or InformalTable and the RowSep of the last row is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from enclosing elements.

spanname

SpanName is the name (defined in a SpanSpec) of a span. This cell will be rendered with the specified horizontal span.

tgroupstyle

TGroupstyle holds the name of a table group style defined in a stylesheet that will be used to process this document.

## See Also

colspec, entry, informaltable, row, spanspec, table, tbody, tfoot, tgroup, thead.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE informaltable PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<!-- entrytbl not supported, fake it in descrip.1 -->
<informaltable frame='all'>
<tgroup cols='3'>
<tbody>
<row>
  <entry>a1</entry>
  <entry>b1</entry>
  <entry>c1</entry>
</row>
<row>
  <entry>a2</entry>
  <entrytbl cols='3'>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry>b2a1</entry>
        <entry>b2b1</entry>
        <entry>b2c1</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>b2a2</entry>
        <entry>b2b2</entry>
        <entry>b2c2</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>b2a3</entry>
        <entry>b2b3</entry>
```

```

        <entry>b2c3</entry>
    </row>
</tbody>
</entrytbl>
<entry>c2</entry>
</row>
<row>
    <entry>a3</entry>
    <entry>b3</entry>
    <entry>c3</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</informaltable>

```

The preceding table would look something like this when formatted:

a1	b1			c1
a2	b2a1	b2b1	b2c1	c2
	b2a2	b2b2	b2c2	
	b2a3	b2b3	b2c3	
a3	b3			c3

# envar

envar -- A software environment variable

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
envar ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

EnVar is an environment variable used most often for the UNIX, DOS, or Windows environments.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain envar: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in envar: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## See Also

computeroutput, filename, prompt, systemitem, userinput.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
```

In order to translate public identifiers into local system identifiers,  
<application>Jade</application> and <application>SP</application> read the catalog files  
pointed to by <envar>SGML\_CATALOG\_FILES</envar>.  
</para>

In order to translate public identifiers into local system identifiers, Jade and SP read the catalog files pointed to by  
SGML\_CATALOG\_FILES.

# epigraph

epigraph -- A short inscription at the beginning of a document or component

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
epigraph ::=
(attribution?,
 ((formalpara|para|simpara)|
  literallayout)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An Epigraph is a short inscription, often a quotation or poem, set at the beginning of a document or component. Epigraphs are usually related somehow to the content that follows them and may help set the tone for the component.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

Epigraph will not be allowed in BlockQuote in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain epigraph: appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, chapter, glossary, glossdiv, index, itemizedlist, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, orderedlist, partintro, preface, procedure, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, simplesect, step, variablelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in epigraph: attribution, formalpara, literallayout, para, simpara.

## See Also

abstract, attribution, blockquote, highlights, sidebar.

## Examples

For examples, see chapter.

# equation

equation -- A displayed mathematical equation

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
equation ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?)?,
 (informalequation|
 (alt?,
 (graphic+|mediaobject+))))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

An `Equation` is a formal mathematical equation (with an optional rather than required title).

If the MathML Module is used, `Equation` can also contain the `mml:math` element.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. For an inline equation, use `InlineEquation`.

Processing systems that number equations or build a table of equations at the beginning of a document may have difficulty correctly formatting documents that contain both `Equations` with `Titles` and `Equations` without `Titles`. You are advised to use `InformalEquation` for equations without titles.

## Future Changes

In some future version of DocBook, probably V5.0, even though the change has not yet been announced, the `Title` on `Equation` will be required. For equations without titles, use `InformalEquation`.

## Parents

These elements contain `equation`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `constraintdef`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `tip`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in equation: alt, blockinfo, graphic, informalequation, mediaobject, title, titleabbrev.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

## See Also

example, figure, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, inlineequation, subscript, superscript, table.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE equation PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<equation><title>Fermat's Last Theorem</title>
  <alt>x^n + y^n ≠ z^n &forall; n ≠ 2</alt>
  <graphic fileref="figures/fermat.png"/>
</equation>
```

### Equation 1. Fermat's Last Theorem

$$x^n + y^n \neq z^n \forall n \neq 2$$

# errorcode

errorcode -- An error code

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
errorcode ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

An error code. Error codes are often numeric, but in some environments they may be symbolic constants.

DocBook provides four elements for identifying the parts of an error message: `ErrorCode`, for the alphanumeric error code (e.g., “-2”); `ErrorMessage`, for the symbolic name of the error (e.g., “ENOENT”); `ErrorText`, for the text of the error message (e.g., “file not found”); and `ErrorType`, for the error type (e.g., “recoverable”).

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain `errorcode`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `errorcode`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `ErrorCode`.

## See Also

`errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `msgset`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
On most DOS-derived systems, functions signal a <errorname>File
Not Found</errorname> error by returning
<errorcode>2</errorcode>. This is usually a
<errortype>recoverable</errortype> (non-fatal) error.
</para>
```

On most DOS-derived systems, functions signal a File Not Found error by returning 2. This is usually a recoverable (non-fatal) error.

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
On most UNIX systems, functions signal a <errorname>File
Not Found</errorname> error by returning
<errorcode>ENOENT</errorcode>, defined in
<filename>errno.h</filename>. This is usually a
<errortype>recoverable</errortype> (non-fatal) error.
</para>
```

On most UNIX systems, functions signal a File Not Found error by returning `ENOENT`, defined in `errno.h`. This is usually a recoverable (non-fatal) error.

# errorname

errorname -- An error name

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
errorname ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

`ErrorName` holds the symbolic name of an error.

DocBook provides four elements for identifying the parts of an error message: `ErrorCode`, for the alphanumeric error code (e.g., “-2”); `ErrorMessage`, for the symbolic name of the error (e.g., “ENOENT”); `ErrorText`, for the text of the error message (e.g., “file not found”); and `ErrorType`, for the error type (e.g., “recoverable”).

Prior to DocBook V4.2, the `ErrorMessage` element was the recommended element for error *messages*. However, this left no element for symbolic names, so the `ErrorText` element was added and the semantics of the error elements adjusted slightly.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `errorname`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `functsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `errorname`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## See Also

`errorcode`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `msgset`.

## Examples

For examples, see `errorcode`, `returnvalue`.

# errortext

errortext -- An error message.

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
errortext ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

ErrorText holds the text of an error message.

DocBook provides four elements for identifying the parts of an error message: `ErrorCode`, for the alphanumeric error code (e.g., “-2”); `ErrorName`, for the symbolic name of the error (e.g., “ENOENT”); `ErrorText`, for the text of the error message (e.g., “file not found”); and `ErrorType`, for the error type (e.g., “recoverable”).

Prior to DocBook V4.2, the `ErrorName` element was the recommended element for error *messages*. However, this left no element for symbolic names, so the `ErrorText` element was added and the semantics of the error elements adjusted slightly.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `errortext`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `errortext`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## See Also

`errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortype`, `msgset`.

# errortype

errortype -- The classification of an error message

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
errortype ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ErrorType` element identifies a class of error. The exact classifications are naturally going to vary by system, but “recoverable” and “fatal” are two possibilities.

DocBook provides four elements for identifying the parts of an error message: `ErrorCode`, for the alphanumeric error code (e.g., “-2”); `ErrorMessage`, for the symbolic name of the error (e.g., “ENOENT”); `ErrorText`, for the text of the error message (e.g., “file not found”); and `ErrorType`, for the error type (e.g., “recoverable”).

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `errortype`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `errortype`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## See Also

`errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `msgset`.

## Examples

For examples, see `errorcode`.

# example

example -- A formal example, with a title

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
example ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?),
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|functsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Example is a formal example with a title. Examples often contain ProgramListings or other large, block elements. Frequently they are given IDs and referenced from the text with XRef or Link.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. DocBook does not specify the location of the example within the final displayed flow of text; it may float or remain where it is located.

A list of examples may be generated at the beginning of a document.

## Parents

These elements contain example: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, constraintdef, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, tip, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in example: address, beginpage, blockinfo, blockquote, calloutlist, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, fieldsynopsis,

formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, orderedlist, para, programlisting, programlistingco, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, title, titleabbrev, variablelist.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

width

Width specifies the width (in characters) of the longest line in this Example (formatters may use this value to determine scaling or rotation).

## See Also

equation, figure, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, table.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE example PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<example><title>A DSSSL Function</title>
<programlisting>
(define (node-list-filter-by-gi nodelist gilist)
  ;; Returns the node-list that contains every element of the original
  ;; nodelist whose gi is in gilist
  (let loop ((result (empty-node-list)) (nl nodelist))
    (if (node-list-empty? nl)
      result
      (if (member (gi (node-list-first nl)) gilist)
          (loop (node-list result (node-list-first nl))
                (node-list-rest nl))
          (loop result (node-list-rest nl))))))
</programlisting>
</example>
```

### Example 31. A DSSSL Function

```
(define (node-list-filter-by-gi nodelist gilist)
  ;; Returns the node-list that contains every element of the original
  ;; nodelist whose gi is in gilist
  (let loop ((result (empty-node-list)) (nl nodelist))
    (if (node-list-empty? nl)
      result
```

```
(if (member (gi (node-list-first nl)) gilist)
    (loop (node-list result (node-list-first nl))
          (node-list-rest nl))
    (loop result (node-list-rest nl))))))
```

For additional examples, see also remark.

# exceptionname

exceptionname -- The name of an exception

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
exceptionname ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ExceptionName` element is used to identify the name of an interface. This is likely to occur only in documentation about object-oriented programming systems, languages, and architectures.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `exceptionname`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constructorsynopsis`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `ooexception`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `exceptionname`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

# fax

fax -- A fax number

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
fax ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Fax is a fax number in an address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed. In an Address, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain fax: address.

## Children

The following elements occur in fax: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

address, city, country, email, otheraddr, phone, pob, postcode, state, street.

## Examples

For examples, see address.

# fieldsynopsis

fieldsynopsis -- The name of a field in a class definition

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
fieldsynopsis ::=  
(modifier*, type?, varname, initializer?)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
language	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `FieldSynopsis` contains the syntax summary of a field (generally speaking, fields in the object-oriented programming language sense).

## Processing expectations

For the most part, the processing application is expected to generate all of the parenthesis, semicolons, commas, and so on. required in the rendered synopsis.

## Parents

These elements contain `fieldsynopsis`: `answer`, `appendix`, `application`, `article`, `attribution`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliomisc`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `foreignphrase`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `olink`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `phrase`, `preface`, `procedure`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `remark`, `revdescription`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `seg`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplesect`, `step`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tip`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `fieldsynopsis`: `initializer`, `modifier`, `type`, `varname`.

# figure

figure -- A formal figure, generally an illustration, with a title

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
figure ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?),
 (literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|
 mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|informalfigure|
 informaltable|indexterm|beginpage|link|olink|ulink)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
float	CDATA	"0"
pgwide	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Figure is a formal example with a title. Figures often contain Graphics, or other large, display elements. Frequently they are given IDs and referenced from the text with XRef or Link.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

Figures may contain multiple display elements. DocBook does not specify how these elements are to be presented with respect to one another.

DocBook does not specify the location of the figure within the final displayed flow of text; it may float or remain where it is located.

A list of figures may be generated at the beginning of a document.

## Parents

These elements contain figure: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, constraintdef, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, tip, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in figure: `address`, `beginpage`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `fieldsynopsis`, `funcsynopsis`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `link`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `olink`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `synopsis`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `ulink`.

## Attributes

`float`

If `Float` has the value 1 (true), then the processing system is free to move the figure to a convenient location. (Where convenient location may be described in the style sheet or may be application dependent.) A value of 0 (false) indicates that the figure should be placed precisely where it occurs in the flow.

`label`

`Label` specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit `Label` attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the `Label` is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

`pgwide`

If `Pgwide` has the value 0 (false), then the `Figure` is rendered in the current text flow (with flow column width). A value of 1 (true) specifies that the figure should be rendered across the full text page.

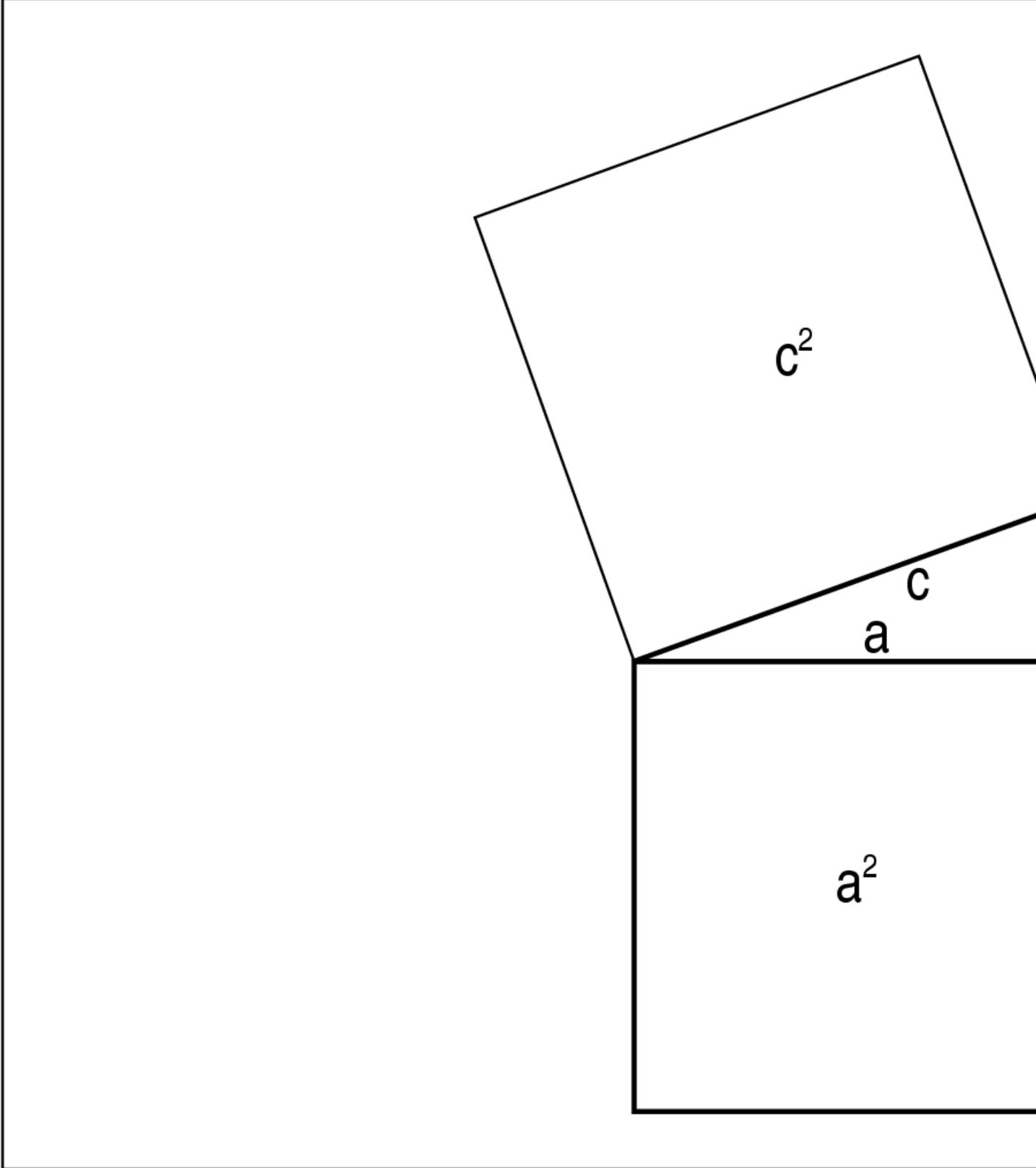
## See Also

`equation`, `example`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `table`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE figure PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<figure><title>The Pythagorean Theorem Illustrated</title>
<graphic fileref="figures/pythag.png"/>
</figure>
```

Figure 3. The Pythagorean Theorem Illustrated



For additional examples, see also `graphic`.

# filename

filename -- The name of a file

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
filename ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
path	CDATA	<i>None</i>
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> devicefile directory extension headerfile libraryfile partition symlink	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `Filename` is the name of a file on a local or network disk. It may be a simple name or may include a path or other elements specific to the operating system.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

The content model of `Filename` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`) in DocBook V4.0.

## Future Changes

Filename extensions can be explicitly identified with the `extension class` value.

## Parents

These elements contain filename: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in filename: `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `beginpage`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `database`, `email`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `error-type`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `function`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `parameter`, `prompt`, `property`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`.

## Attributes

`class`

Class allows the author to identify particular kinds of files.

`moreinfo`

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `Filename`.

`path`

Path contains the *search* path, possibly in a system or application specific form, on which the file can be found.

## See Also

`application`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `envar`, `hardware`, `medialabel`, `productname`, `prompt`, `systemitem`, `userinput`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The symbolic constants for error numbers are defined in
<filename class='headerfile'>errno.h</filename> in
<filename class='directory'>/usr/include/sys</filename>.
</para>
```

The symbolic constants for error numbers are defined in `errno.h` in `/usr/include/sys`.

For additional examples, see also `constant`, `errorcode`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keysym`, `literal`, `variablelist`.

# firstname

firstname -- The first name of a person

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
firstname ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The Western-style first name of an author, editor, or other individual.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an `Address`, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain `firstname`: `address`, `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `author`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `editor`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `othercredit`, `partinfo`, `personname`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `firstname`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`affiliation`, `honorific`, `lineage`, `othername`, `surname`.

## Examples

For examples, see `ackno`, `article`, `author`, `authorgroup`, `bibliography`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `book`, `bookinfo`, `othercredit`, `personname`.

# firstterm

firstterm -- The first occurrence of a term

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
firstterm ::=
(#PCDATA|acronym|emphasis|trademark|link|olink|ulink|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>None</i>

## Description

This element marks the first occurrence of a word or term in a given context.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. FirstTerms are often given special typographic treatment, such as italics.

## Parents

These elements contain firstterm: application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, para, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentrytitle, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in firstterm: acronym, anchor, beginpage, emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## Attributes

linkend

Linkend points to a related element, perhaps the Glossary definition of the term.

## See Also

glossterm.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
In an <firstterm>Object Oriented</firstterm> programming language,
data and procedures (called <glossterm>methods</glossterm>) are
bound together.
</para>
```

In an Object Oriented programming language, data and procedures (called methods) are bound together.

# footnote

footnote -- A footnote

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
footnote ::=
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

This element is a wrapper around the contents of a footnote.

Additional references to the same footnote may be generated with `FootnoteRef`.

## Processing expectations

The `Footnote` element usually generates a mark (a superscript symbol or number) at the place in the flow of the document in which it occurs. The body of the footnote is then presented elsewhere, typically at the bottom of the page.

Alternative presentations are also possible. In print environments that do not support footnotes at the bottom of the page, they may be presented as end notes occurring at the end of the component that contains the `Footnote`. Online systems may choose to present them inline or as “pop-ups,” or links, or any combination thereof.

## Parents

These elements contain footnote: `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `para`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Children

The following elements occur in footnote: `address`, `blockquote`, `calloutlist`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `fieldsynopsis`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `synopsis`, `variablelist`.

## Attributes

label

Label identifies the desired footnote mark.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
An annual percentage rate (<abbrev>APR</abbrev>) of 13.9%<footnote>
<para>
The prime rate, as published in the <citetitle>Wall Street
Journal</citetitle> on the first business day of the month,
plus 7.0%.
</para>
</footnote>
will be charged on all balances carried forward.
</para>
```

An annual percentage rate (APR) of 13.9%<sup>19</sup> will be charged on all balances carried forward.

For additional examples, see also `footnoteref`.

<sup>19</sup> The prime rate, as published in the *Wall Street Journal* on the first business day of the month, plus 7.0%.

# footnoteref

footnoteref -- A cross reference to a footnote (a footnote mark)

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
footnoteref ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>Required</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

This element forms an IDREF link to a `Footnote`. It generates the same mark or link as the `Footnote` to which it points.

In technical documentation, `FootnoteRef` occurs most frequently in tables.

## Processing expectations

The `FootnoteRef` element usually generates the same mark as the `Footnote` to which it points, although its mark can be influenced by the `Label` attribute.

Neither SGML nor XML provide a mechanism (at this time) for asserting that some IDREF links must point to specific classes of elements. If a `FootnoteRef` points to something other than a `Footnote`, the parser will not report it as an error. It is an error nonetheless. Processing is undefined.

## Parents

These elements contain `footnoteref`: `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `para`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Attributes

label

`Label` identifies the desired footnote mark.

## linkend

Linkend points to the Footnote referenced.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE informaltable PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<informaltable>
<tgroup cols='2'>
<tbody>
<row>
<entry>foo<footnote id='fnrexla'><para>A meaningless
word</para></footnote></entry>
<entry>3<footnote id='fnrexlb'><para>A meaningless
number</para></footnote></entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>bar<footnoteref linkend='fnrexla' /></entry>
<entry>5<footnoteref linkend='fnrexlb' /></entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</informaltable>
```

foo <sup>a</sup>	3 <sup>b</sup>
bar <sup>a</sup>	5 <sup>b</sup>

<sup>a</sup>A meaningless word

<sup>b</sup>A meaningless number

# foreignphrase

foreignphrase -- A word or phrase in a language other than the primary language of the document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
foreignphrase ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ForeignPhrase` element can be used to markup the text of a foreign word or phrase. “Foreign” in this context means that it is a language other than the primary language of the document and is not intended to be pejorative in any way.

## Processing expectations

ForeignPhrases are often given special typographic treatment, such as italics.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `foreignphrase`: `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `para`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`,

screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in `foreignphrase`: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

abbrev, acronym, emphasis, phrase, quote, wordasword.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Like so many others, it became a <foreignphrase>de facto</foreignphrase>
standard.
</para>
```

Like so many others, it became a *de facto* standard.

# formalpara

formalpara -- A paragraph with a title

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
formalpara ::=
(title,
 (indexterm)*,
 para)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Formal paragraphs have a title.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. The Title of a FormalPara is often rendered as a run-in head.

## Parents

These elements contain formalpara: abstract, answer, appendix, article, authorblurb, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, caution, chapter, colophon, constraintdef, dedication, entry, epigraph, example, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, highlights, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, orderedlist, partintro, personblurb, preface, printhistory, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in formalpara: indexterm, para, title.

## See Also

para, simpara.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE formalpara PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<formalpara><title>This Paragraph Has a Title</title>
<para>
This is a test. This is only a test. Had this been a real
```

example, it would have made more sense. Or less.  
</para>  
</formalpara>

**This Paragraph Has a Title.**

This is a test. This is only a test. Had this been a real example, it would have made more sense. Or less.

For additional examples, see also para.

# funcdef

funcdef -- A function (subroutine) name and its return type

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
funcdef ::=  
(#PCDATA|type|replaceable|function)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `FuncDef` contains the name of a programming language function, and its return type.

Within the `FuncDef`, the function name is identified with `Function`, and the rest of the content is assumed to be the return type.

In the following definition, `max` is the name of the function and `int` is the return type:

```
<funcdef>int <function>max</function></funcdef>
```

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. For a complete description of the processing expectations, see `FuncSynopsis`.

## Parents

These elements contain `funcdef`: `funcprototype`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `funcdef`: `function`, `replaceable`, `type`.

## See Also

`funcparams`, `funcprototype`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `paramdef`, `parameter`, `returnvalue`, `varargs`, `void`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE funcsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"  
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">  
<funcsynopsis>
```

```
<funcprototype>
<funcdef>int <function>rand</function></funcdef>
  <void/>
</funcprototype>
</functsynopsis>
int rand();
```

For additional examples, see also `funcparams`, `functsynopsis`, `paramdef`, `refentry`, `varargs`.

# funcparams

funcparams -- Parameters for a function referenced through a function pointer in a synopsis

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
funcparams ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

In some programming languages (like C), it is possible for a function to have a pointer to another function as one of its parameters. In the syntax summary for such a function, the `FuncParams` element provides a wrapper for the function pointer.

For example, the following prototype describes the function `sort`, which takes two parameters. The first parameter, `arr`, is an array of integers. The second parameter is a pointer to a function, `comp` that returns an int. The `comp` function takes two parameters, both of type `int *`:

```
<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>void <function>sort</function></funcdef>
  <paramdef>int *<parameter>arr</parameter>[]</paramdef>
  <paramdef>int <parameter>(* comp)</parameter>
  <funcparams>int *, int *</funcparams></paramdef>
</funcprototype>
```

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. For a complete description of the processing expectations, see `FuncSynopsis`.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain funcparams: methodparam, paramdef.

## Children

The following elements occur in funcparams: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## See Also

funcdef, funcprototype, funcsynopsisinfo, function, paramdef, parameter, returnvalue, varargs, void.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE funcsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<funcsynopsis>
<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>void <function>qsort</function></funcdef>
    <paramdef>void *<parameter>dataptr</parameter>[]</paramdef>
    <paramdef>int <parameter>left</parameter></paramdef>
    <paramdef>int <parameter>right</parameter></paramdef>
    <paramdef>int <parameter>(* comp)</parameter>
      <funcparams>void *, void *</funcparams></paramdef>
</funcprototype>
</funcsynopsis>
void qsort(dataptr, left, right, (* comp));
void *dataptr[];
int left;
int right;
int (* comp) (void *, void *);
```

For additional examples, see also funcsynopsis.

# funcprototype

funcprototype -- The prototype of a function

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
funcprototype ::=  
(funcdef,  
 (void|varargs|paramdef+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A wrapper for a function prototype in a `FuncSynopsis`.

## Processing expectations

See `FuncSynopsis`.

## Parents

These elements contain `funcprototype`: `funcsynopsis`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `funcprototype`: `funcdef`, `paramdef`, `varargs`, `void`.

## See Also

`funcdef`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `paramdef`, `parameter`, `returnvalue`, `varargs`, `void`.

## Examples

For examples, see `funcdef`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsis`, `paramdef`, `refentry`, `varargs`.

# funcsynopsis

funcsynopsis -- The syntax summary for a function definition

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
funcsynopsis ::=
((funcsynopsisinfo|funcprototype)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `FuncSynopsis` contains the syntax summary of a function prototype or a set of function prototypes. The content model of this element was designed specifically to capture the semantics of most C-language function prototypes (for use in UNIX reference pages).

This is one of the few places where DocBook attempts to model as well as describe. Using `FuncSynopsis` for languages that are unrelated to C may prove difficult.

## Processing expectations

For the most part, the processing application is expected to generate all of the parenthesis, semicolons, commas, and so on. required in the rendered synopsis. The exception to this rule is that the spacing and other punctuation inside a parameter that is a pointer to a function must be provided in the source markup.

With sufficient author cooperation, it should be possible to markup a function synopsis with enough clarity so that a processing system can generate either K&R-style or ANSI-style renderings.

### A Note on the Use of `VarArgs`

The content model of `FuncPrototype` is such that you cannot use `VarArgs` in a function prototype in which the first few parameters to the function are given explicitly before the variable arguments (generally rendered as an ellipsis).

In other words, the following synopsis cannot be rendered with `VarArgs`:

```
int printf(char *format, ...)
```

Instead, you can enclose the ellipsis in a final `Parameter`, like this:

```
<funcsynopsis>
<funcprototype><funcdef>int <function>printf</function></funcdef>
<paramdef>
  <parameter>char *format</parameter>
```

```
<parameter>...</parameter>
</paramdef>
</funcprototype>
</funcsynopsis>
```

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the content model fragment beginning with `FuncDef` will be removed from the content model of `FuncSynopsis`. Instead `FuncSynopsis` will become a mixture of `FuncSynopsisInfos` and `FuncPrototypes`.

## Future Changes

Future versions of DocBook may provide additional environments for describing the syntax summaries of functions in other programming languages.

## Parents

These elements contain `funcsynopsis`: `answer`, `appendix`, `application`, `article`, `attribution`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliomisc`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `constraintdef`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `foreignphrase`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `olink`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `phrase`, `preface`, `procedure`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `remark`, `revdescription`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `seg`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplpara`, `simplesect`, `step`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tip`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `funcsynopsis`: `funcprototype`, `funcsynopsisinfo`.

## Attributes

`label`

`Label` specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation.

## See Also

`cmdsynopsis`, `synopsis`.

## Examples

The function `max` returns the larger of two integers:

```
<!DOCTYPE funcsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
```

```

<funcsynopsis>
<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>int <function>max</function></funcdef>
  <paramdef>int <parameter>int1</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>int <parameter>int2</parameter></paramdef>
</funcprototype>
</funcsynopsis>
int max(int1, int2);
int int1;
int int2;

```

One can imagine a more flexible max function that takes any number of integer arguments and returns the largest integer in the list:

```

<!DOCTYPE funcsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<funcsynopsis>
<funcsynopsisinfo>
#include <varargs.h>;
</funcsynopsisinfo>
<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>int <function>max</function></funcdef>
  <varargs/>
</funcprototype>
</funcsynopsis>
#include <varargs.h>

int max(...);

```

The rand function takes no arguments and returns a pseudorandom integer between 0 and  $2^{31}-1$ :

```

<!DOCTYPE funcsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<funcsynopsis>
<funcprototype>
<funcdef>int <function>rand</function></funcdef>
  <void/>
</funcprototype>
</funcsynopsis>
int rand();

```

The qsort function takes several arguments, including a pointer to a function (the function that should perform the comparison between two elements in order to sort them).

```

<!DOCTYPE funcsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<funcsynopsis>
<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>void <function>qsort</function></funcdef>
  <paramdef>void *<parameter>dataptr</parameter>[ ]</paramdef>
  <paramdef>int <parameter>left</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>int <parameter>right</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>int <parameter>(* comp)</parameter>
  <funcparams>void *, void *</funcparams></paramdef>
</funcprototype>
</funcsynopsis>
void qsort(dataptr, left, right, (* comp));
void *dataptr[];

```

```
int left;  
int right;  
int (* comp) (void *, void *);
```

For additional examples, see also `funcdef`, `funcparams`, `paramdef`, `refentry`, `varargs`.

# funcsynopsisinfo

funcsynopsisinfo -- Information supplementing the FuncDefs of a FuncSynopsis

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
funcsynopsisinfo ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediobject|
indexterm|beginpage|textobject|lineannotation)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
format	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> linespecific	"linespecific"
linenumbering	<i>Enumeration:</i> numbered unnumbered	<i>None</i>

## Description

Supplementary information in a FuncSynopsis. See FuncSynopsis.

Unlike the other info elements, FuncSynopsisInfo is not a container for meta-information. Instead FuncSynopsisInfo is a verbatim environment for adding additional information to a function synopsis.

## Processing expectations

This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain funcsynopsisinfo: funcsynopsis.

## Children

The following elements occur in `funcsynopsisinfo`: `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `beginpage`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `database`, `email`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `function`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `parameter`, `prompt`, `property`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `textobject`, `token`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`.

## Attributes

`format`

The `Format` attribute applies the `linespecific` notation to all `FuncSynopsisInfos`. All white space and line breaks must be preserved.

`linenumbering`

**V4.0** Line numbering indicates whether or not the lines of a `FuncSynopsisInfo` are to be automatically numbered. The details of numbering (every line or only selected lines, on the left or right, etc.) are left up to the processing application. Be aware that not all processors are capable of numbering lines.

## See Also

`funcdef`, `funcparams`, `funcprototype`, `function`, `paramdef`, `parameter`, `returnvalue`, `varargs`, `void`.

## Examples

For examples, see `funcsynopsis`, `refentry`, `varargs`.

# function

function -- The name of a function or subroutine, as in a programming language

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
function ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

This element marks up the name of a function. To markup the parts of a function definition, see `FuncSynopsis`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

In some environments, the `Function` element generates additional punctuation, such as a set of trailing parenthesis.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain function: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcdef`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`,

primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in function: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenu-item, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `Function`.

## See Also

funcdef, funcparams, funcprototype, funcsynopsisinfo, paramdef, parameter, returnvalue, varargs, void.

## Examples

For examples, see `funcdef`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsis`, `paramdef`, `programlistingco`, `refentry`, `returnvalue`, `structname`, `type`, `varargs`.

# glossary

glossary -- A glossary

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
glossary ::=
(glossaryinfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 (glossdiv+|glossentry+),
 bibliography?)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A *Glossary* contains a collection of terms and brief descriptions or definitions of those terms.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. A *Glossary* in a *Book* frequently causes a forced page break in print media.

## Parents

These elements contain *glossary*: *appendix*, *article*, *book*, *chapter*, *part*, *preface*, *sect1*, *sect2*, *sect3*, *sect4*, *sect5*, *section*.

## Children

The following elements occur in *glossary*: *abstract*, *address*, *anchor*, *authorblurb*, *beginpage*, *bibliography*, *blockquote*, *bridgehead*, *calloutlist*, *caution*, *classsynopsis*, *cmdsynopsis*, *constraintdef*, *constructorsynopsis*, *destructorsynopsis*, *epigraph*, *equation*, *example*, *fieldsynopsis*, *figure*, *formalpara*, *funcsynopsis*, *glossaryinfo*, *glossdiv*, *glossentry*, *glosslist*, *graphic*, *graphicco*, *highlights*, *important*, *indexterm*, *informalequation*, *informalexample*, *informalfigure*, *informaltable*, *itemizedlist*, *literallayout*, *mediaobject*,

mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Glossary.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE glossary PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<glossary><title>Example Glossary</title>
<para>
This is not a real glossary, it's just an example.
</para>

<!-- ... -->

<glossdiv><title>E</title>

<glossentry id="xml"><glossterm>Extensible Markup Language</glossterm>
  <acronym>XML</acronym>
<glossdef>
  <para>Some reasonable definition here.</para>
  <glossseealso otherterm="sgml">SGML</glossseealso>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>

</glossdiv>

<!-- ... -->

<glossdiv><title>S</title>

<glossentry><glossterm>SGML</glossterm>
<glosssee otherterm="sgml"/>
</glossentry>

<glossentry id="sgml"><glossterm>Standard Generalized
  Markup Language</glossterm><acronym>SGML</acronym>
  <abbrev>ISO 8879:1986</abbrev>
<glossdef>
  <para>Some reasonable definition here.</para>
  <glossseealso otherterm="xml">XML</glossseealso>
</glossdef>
</glossentry>

</glossdiv>
</glossary>
```

# glossaryinfo

glossaryinfo -- Meta-information for a Glossary

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
glossaryinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `GlossaryInfo` element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a `Glossary`. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain `glossaryinfo`: `glossary`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `glossaryinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliaset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itermset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

# glossdef

glossdef -- A definition in a GlossEntry

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
glossdef ::=
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table|
 remark|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 glosseealso*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
subject	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `GlossDef` contains the description or definition of a `GlossTerm`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

The `Subject` attribute will be renamed `Keywords` in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain `glossdef`: `glossentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `glossdef`: `address`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `calloutlist`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `glosseealso`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `synopsis`, `table`, `variablelist`.

## Attributes

subject

Subject holds a list of keywords for the GlossDef's definition.

## See Also

glosssee, glossseealso.

## Examples

For examples, see glossary, glosslist.

# glossdiv

glossdiv -- A division in a Glossary

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
glossdiv ::=
((title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 glossentry+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `GlossDiv` is a section of a `Glossary`. A `Glossary` might be divided into sections in order to group terms, perhaps alphabetically.

A `Glossary` may contain any number of `GlossEntry` or `GlossDiv` elements, but it cannot contain a mixture of both at the same level.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain `glossdiv`: `glossary`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `glossdiv`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glossentry`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`,

itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the GlossDiv.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## Examples

For examples, see `glossary`.

# glossentry

glossentry -- An entry in a Glossary or GlossList

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
glossentry ::=
(glossterm, acronym?, abbrev?,
 (indexterm)*,
 revhistory?,
 (glossee|glossdef+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
sortas	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

GlossEntry is a wrapper around a glossary term and its definition.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Glossary entries are usually formatted to highlight the terms and definitions, frequently in a style similar to VarListEntry.

## Parents

These elements contain glossentry: glossary, glossdiv, glosslist.

## Children

The following elements occur in glossentry: abbrev, acronym, glossdef, glossee, glossterm, indexterm, revhistory.

## Attributes

sortas

SortAs specifies the string by which the element's content is to be sorted. If unspecified, the proper content is used.

## Examples

For examples, see glossary, glosslist.

# glosslist

glosslist -- A wrapper for a set of GlossEntry's

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
glosslist ::=
(glossentry+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

While Glossary's are usually limited to component or section boundaries, appearing at the end of a Book or Chapter, for instance, GlossLists can appear anywhere that the other list types are allowed.

Using a GlossList in running text, instead of a VariableList, for example, maintains the semantic distinction of a Glossary. This distinction may be necessary if you want to automatically point to the members of the list with GlossTerms in the body of the text.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain glosslist: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, caution, chapter, colophon, constraintdef, dedication, entry, example, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, highlights, important, index, informalexample, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in glosslist: glossentry.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE glosslist PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<glosslist>
<glossentry><glossterm>C</glossterm>
<glossdef>
<para>
A procedural programming language invented by K&R.
</para>
```



# glosssee

glosssee -- A cross-reference from one GlossEntry to another

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
glosssee ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
otherterm	IDREF	<i>None</i>

## Description

GlossSee directs the reader to another GlossEntry instead of this one. A “See” cross-reference occurs in place of the definition.

## Processing Expectations

Formatted as a displayed block, in the same style as a GlossDef.

GlossSee elements are expected to generate the necessary cross-reference text, usually “See” in English, as well as any necessary punctuation.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain glossee: `glossentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in glossee: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`otherterm`

`OtherTerm` points to the `GlossEntry` being cross-referenced. (Go see *that* one.)

## See Also

`glossdef`, `glossseealso`.

## Examples

For examples, see `glossary`.

# glossseealso

glossseealso -- A cross-reference from one GlossEntry to another

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
glossseealso ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
otherterm	IDREF	<i>None</i>

## Description

GlossSeeAlso directs the reader to another GlossEntry for additional information. It is presented in addition to the GlossDef.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block, in the same style as the GlossDef.

GlossSeeAlso elements are expected to generate the necessary cross-reference text, usually “See also” in English, as well as any necessary punctuation.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain glosseealso: glossdef.

## Children

The following elements occur in glosseealso: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

otherterm

OtherTerm points to the GlossEntry being cross-referenced. (Go see *that* one, too.)

## See Also

glossdef, glossee.

## Examples

For examples, see glossary.

# glossterm

glossterm -- A glossary term

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
glossterm ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
baseform	CDATA	<i>None</i>
linkend	IDREF	<i>None</i>

## Description

`GlossTerm` identifies a term that appears in a `Glossary` or `GlossList`. This element occurs in two very different places: it is both an inline, and a structure element of a `GlossEntry`. As an inline, it identifies a term defined in a glossary, and may point to it. Within a `GlossEntry`, it identifies the term defined by that particular entry.

## Processing expectations

As an inline, `GlossTerms` frequently get special typographic treatment, such as italics. In an online environment, they may also form a link (explicitly or implicitly) to the corresponding definition in a glossary.

`GlossTerms` must not be nested within other `GlossTerms`. Because DocBook is harmonizing towards XML, this restriction is difficult to enforce with the DTD. The processing of nested `GlossTerms` is undefined.

As part of a `GlossEntry`, `GlossTerms` are usually set as block and separated from the definition.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Future Changes

`RevHistory` will be removed.

## Parents

These elements contain `glossterm`: `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossentry`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `para`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `glossterm`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`baseform`

`BaseForm`, if specified, contains the root form of the word identified as a `GlossTerm`. If unspecified, the content of `GlossTerm` element should be used. `BaseForm` allows sorting, collating, and indexing to work properly even when different parts of speech are identified as `GlossTerms`. For example, `<glossterm>sort</glossterm>` and `<glossterm baseform="sort">sorting</glossterm>`

`linkend`

`Linkend` points to a related element, generally the `GlossEntry` that defines it.

## See Also

`firstterm`.

## Examples

For examples, see `beginpage`, `firstterm`, `glossary`, `glosslist`.

# graphic

graphic -- A displayed graphical object (not an inline)

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
graphic ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
srccredit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>
contentwidth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumeration:</i> BMP CGM-BINARY CGM-CHAR CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a IGES JPEG JPG linespecific PCX PIC PNG PS SGML SVG TBL TEX TIFF WMF WPG	<i>None</i>
entityref	ENTITY	<i>None</i>

fileref	CDATA	<i>None</i>
scalefit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
depth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
scale	CDATA	<i>None</i>
contentdepth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center left right	<i>None</i>

## Description

This element contains graphical data, or a pointer to an external entity containing graphical data. One of the deficiencies of the DocBook `Graphic` element is that there is no way to specify an alternate text description of the graphic. This has been rectified by the introduction of `MediaObject`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

There are several ways to provide content for a `Graphic`. It is best to use only one of these methods. However, if multiple graphic sources are provided, the processing expectations are as follows: element content should be used in favor of either `EntityRef` or `FileRef` and `EntityRef` should be used in favor of `FileRef`.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, `Graphic` will be declared `EMPTY`. This change will require that any embedded graphic content be stored outside the SGML source and pointed to with an `EntityRef` or `FileRef` attribute.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V5.0, `Graphic` will be discarded. At that time, graphics will have to be incorporated using `MediaObject` or `InlineMediaObject`.

## Parents

These elements contain `graphic`: `answer`, `appendix`, `appendixinfo`, `article`, `articleinfo`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliographyinfo`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `bookinfo`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `chapterinfo`, `constraintdef`, `entry`, `equation`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossaryinfo`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `graphicco`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `indexinfo`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `inlineequation`, `itemizedlist`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `objectinfo`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partinfo`, `partintro`, `preface`, `prefaceinfo`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3`, `refsect3info`, `refsection`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `revdescription`, `screenshot`, `sect1`, `sect1info`, `sect2`, `sect2info`, `sect3`, `sect3info`, `sect4`, `sect4info`, `sect5`, `sect5info`, `section`, `sectioninfo`, `setindex`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebar`, `sidebarinfo`, `simplesect`, `step`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Attributes

### align

Align specifies the horizontal alignment of the graphic on the page or within the element that frames it.

### depth

Depth specifies the desired depth (vertical distance, at least in horizontal writing systems) of the image.

### entityref

EntityRef identifies the general entity which contains (or points to) the content of the graphic.

### fileref

FileRef specifies the name of the file which contains the content of the graphic.

### format

Format identifies the format of the graphic content. The Format must be a defined notation.

### scale

Scale specifies integer representing a percentage scaling factor (retaining the relative dimensions of the original graphic). If unspecified, the value 100 (100%) is assumed.

### scalefit

If ScaleFit has the value 1 (true), then the graphic is to be scaled (uniformly) to the specified width or depth. The default value of 0 (false) indicates that the image will not be scaled to fit (although it may still be scaled by the Scale attribute).

### srccredit

SrcCredit contains details about the source of the Graphic.

### width

Width indicates the width of the graphic.

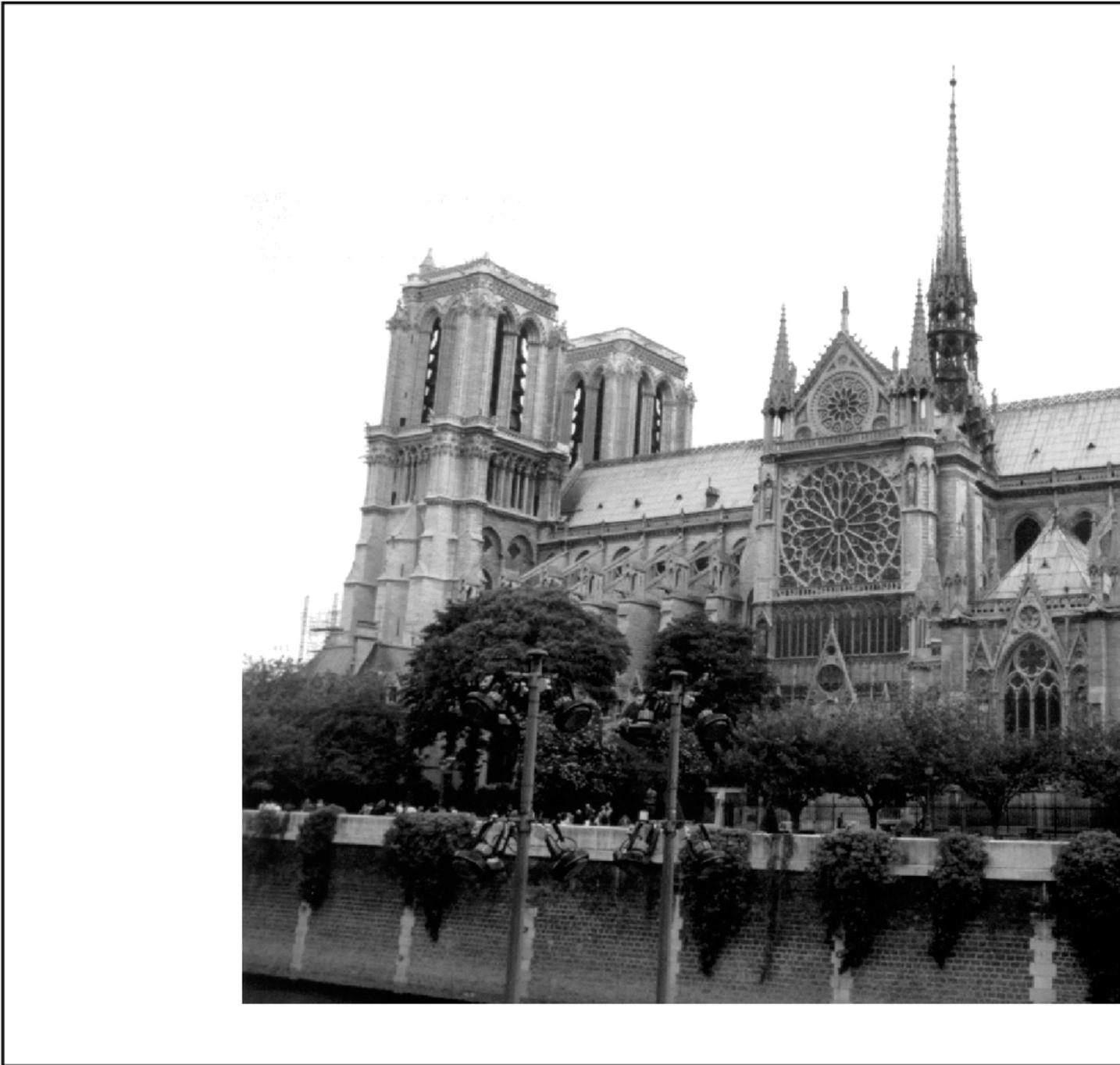
## See Also

alt, audioobject, caption, imageobject, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, mediaobject, textobject, videoobject.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE figure PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<figure><title>Notre Dame Cathedral</title>
<graphic srccredit="Norman Walsh, 1998" fileref="figures/notredame.png"/>
</figure>
```

**Figure 4. Notre Dame Cathedral**



For additional examples, see also `equation`, `figure`, `graphicco`, `informalequation`, `inlineequation`, `screenshot`.

# graphicco

graphicco -- A graphic that contains callout areas

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
graphicco ::=
(areaspec, graphic, calloutlist*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Callouts, such as numbered bullets, are an annotation mechanism. In an online system, these bullets are frequently “hot,” and clicking on them sends you to the corresponding annotation.

A GraphicCO is a wrapper around an AreaSpec and a Graphic. An AreaSpec identifies the locations (coordinates) on the Graphic in which the callouts occur. The GraphicCO may also contain the list of annotations in a CalloutList, although the CalloutList may also occur outside of the wrapper, elsewhere in the document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

The mandatory processing expectations of a GraphicCO are minimal: a system is expected to render the graphic, if possible, and the callout list, if present.

In online environments, the processing system may be able to instantiate the linking relationships between the callout marks on the graphic and the annotations. For example, an HTML presentation system might use the coordinate information to construct a client-side image map. Some processing systems may even be able to go a step further and generate the callout marks automatically from the coordinate information. But this level of sophistication is not mandatory.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V5.0, GraphicCO will be discarded. In its place, use MediaObjectCO.

## Parents

These elements contain graphicco: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, constraintdef, example, figure, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, informalfigure, itemizedlist, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, screenshot, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in `graphicco`: `areaspec`, `calloutlist`, `graphic`.

## See Also

`areaspec`, `calloutlist`, `co`, `coref`, `imageobjectco`, `mediaobjectco`, `programlistingco`, `screenco`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE graphicco PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<graphicco>
<areaspec units="calspair">
  <areaset id="oneway" coords="">
    <area id="oneway1" coords="300 400"/>
    <area id="oneway2" coords="325 340"/>
  </areaset>
  <area id="myhouse" coords="425 590"/>
</areaspec>
<!-- This is not a real URL! -->
<graphic fileref="http://maps.example.com/EARTH?USA?MA?AMHERST"/>
</graphicco>
```

# group

group -- A group of elements in a CmdSynopsis

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
group ::=
((arg|group|option|synopfragmentref|replaceable|sbr)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
rep	<i>Enumeration:</i> norepeat repeat	"norepeat"
choice	<i>Enumeration:</i> opt plain req	"opt"

## Description

A `Group` surrounds several related items. Usually, they are grouped because they are mutually exclusive. The user is expected to select one of the items.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The additional processing expectations of a `Group` are significant. For a complete discussion, see `CmdSynopsis`.

- Multiple arguments within a group are considered exclusive and are separated by vertical bars.
- Brackets are used to distinguish between optional, required, or plain arguments. Usually square brackets are placed around optional arguments, `[-f | -g]`, and curly brackets are placed around required arguments, `{-f | -g}`. Plain arguments are required, but are not decorated with brackets.
- Repeatable arguments are followed by an ellipsis.

## Future Changes

The `OptMult` and `ReqMult` values for the `Choice` attribute will be removed in DocBook V4.0. Use the `Rep` attribute instead to indicate that the choice is repeatable.

## Parents

These elements contain group: `arg`, `cmdsynopsis`, `group`, `synopfragment`.

## Children

The following elements occur in group: `arg`, `group`, `option`, `replaceable`, `sbr`, `synopfragmentref`.

## Attributes

`choice`

`Choice` indicates whether the `Arg` is required (`Req` or `Plain`) or optional (`Opt`). Arguments identified as `Plain` are required, but are shown without additional decoration. The `OptMult` and `ReqMult` choices will be removed in DocBook V4.0; use the `Rep` attribute instead.

`rep`

A `Rep` value of `Repeat` indicates that the `Group` is repeatable. This is frequently rendered with an ellipsis.

## See Also

`arg`, `cmdsynopsis`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `sbr`, `synopfragment`, `synopfragmentref`.

## Examples

For examples, see `cmdsynopsis`, `synopfragment`.

# guibutton

guibutton -- The text on a button in a GUI

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
guibutton ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage|accel)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

GUIButton identifies the text that appears on a button in a graphical user interface.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain guibutton: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, menuchoice, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, ref-descriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in guibutton: accel, beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `GUIButton`.

## See Also

`accel`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `menuchoice`, `mousebutton`, `shortcut`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The exact text of the <guilabel>Legend</guilabel> and other labels on the
graph is dependent upon the language of the current locale. Likewise,
the text of the <guibutton>OK</guibutton> button and other buttons may vary.
The <guiicon><inlinegraphic fileref="figures/legend.png"/></guiicon>
icon and the other icons on the left side of the display may be
configured by the local administrator, but they are not
generally expected to vary from locale to locale.
</para>
```

The exact text of the Legend and other labels on the graph is dependent upon the language of the current locale. Likewise, the text of the OK button and other buttons may vary. The  icon and the other icons on the left side of the display may be configured by the local administrator, but they are not generally expected to vary from locale to locale.

For additional examples, see also `guiicon`, `guilabel`.

# guiicon

guiicon -- Graphic and/or text appearing as a icon in a GUI

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
guiicon ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage|accel)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

GUIIcon identifies a graphic or text icon that appears in a graphical user interface.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain guiicon: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, menuchoice, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, ref-descriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in guiicon: accel, beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `GUIIcon`.

## See Also

`accel`, `guibutton`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `menuchoice`, `mousebutton`, `shortcut`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The exact text of the <guilabel>Legend</guilabel> and other labels on the
graph is dependent upon the language of the current locale. Likewise,
the text of the <guibutton>OK</guibutton> button and other buttons may vary.
The <guiicon><inlinegraphic fileref="figures/legend.png"/></guiicon>
icon and the other icons on the left side of the display may be
configured by the local administrator, but they are not
generally expected to vary from locale to locale.
</para>
```

The exact text of the Legend and other labels on the graph is dependent upon the language of the current locale. Likewise, the text of the OK button and other buttons may vary. The  icon and the other icons on the left side of the display may be configured by the local administrator, but they are not generally expected to vary from locale to locale.

For additional examples, see also `guibutton`, `guilabel`.

# guilabel

guilabel -- The text of a label in a GUI

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
guilabel ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage|accel)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

GUILabel identifies text that appears as a label in a graphical user interface.

What constitutes a label may vary from application to application. In general, any text that appears in a GUI may be considered a label, for example a message in a dialog box or a window title.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain guilabel: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, menuchoice, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, ref-descriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in guilabel: accel, beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `GUILabel`.

## See Also

`accel`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `menuchoice`, `mousebutton`, `shortcut`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The exact text of the <gui-label>Legend</gui-label> and other labels on the
graph is dependent upon the language of the current locale. Likewise,
the text of the <gui-button>OK</gui-button> button and other buttons may vary.
The <gui-icon><inlinegraphic fileref="figures/legend.png"/></gui-icon>
icon and the other icons on the left side of the display may be
configured by the local administrator, but they are not
generally expected to vary from locale to locale.
</para>
```

The exact text of the Legend and other labels on the graph is dependent upon the language of the current locale. Likewise, the text of the OK button and other buttons may vary. The  icon and the other icons on the left side of the display may be configured by the local administrator, but they are not generally expected to vary from locale to locale.

For additional examples, see also `guibutton`, `guiicon`.

# guimenu

guimenu -- The name of a menu in a GUI

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
guimenu ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage|accel)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

GUIMenu identifies a menu name in a graphical user interface. In particular, this is distinct from a menu item (GUIMenuItem), which is terminal, and a submenu (GUISubmenu), which occurs as a selection from a menu.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain guimenu: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, menuchoice, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, ref-descriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in guimenu: accel, beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `GUIMenu`.

## See Also

`accel`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `menuchoice`, `mousebutton`, `shortcut`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
You can exit from GNU Emacs with the keyboard shortcut
<keycombo><keysym>C-c</keysym><keysym>C-x</keysym></keycombo>
or by selecting <guimenuitem>Exit Emacs</guimenuitem> from
the <guimenu>Files</guimenu> menu.
</para>
```

You can exit from GNU Emacs with the keyboard shortcut `C-c-C-x` or by selecting `Exit Emacs` from the `Files` menu.

For additional examples, see also `accel`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `menuchoice`, `shortcut`.

# guimenuitem

guimenuitem -- The name of a terminal menu item in a GUI

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
guimenuitem ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage|accel)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

GUIMenuItem identifies a terminal selection from a menu in a graphical user interface. In particular, this is distinct from a menu (GUIMenu) and a submenu (GUISubmenu). The distinction between a GUIMenuItem and a GUISubmenu is simply whether or not the selection is terminal or leads to an additional submenu.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain guimenuitem: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, menuchoice, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, ref-descriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in guimenuitem: accel, beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `GUIMenuItem`.

## See Also

`accel`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guisubmenu`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `menuchoice`, `mousebutton`, `shortcut`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
You can exit from GNU Emacs with the keyboard shortcut
<keycombo><keysym>C-c</keysym><keysym>C-x</keysym></keycombo>
or by selecting <guimenuitem>Exit Emacs</guimenuitem> from
the <guimenu>Files</guimenu> menu.
</para>
```

You can exit from GNU Emacs with the keyboard shortcut `C-c-C-x` or by selecting `Exit Emacs` from the `Files` menu.

For additional examples, see also `accel`, `action`, `guimenu`, `guisubmenu`, `menuchoice`, `shortcut`.

# guisubmenu

guisubmenu -- The name of a submenu in a GUI

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
guisubmenu ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage|accel)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

The name of a submenu in a graphical user interface is identified by the `GUISubmenu` element. A submenu is a menu invoked from another menu that leads either to terminal items (`GUIMenuItem`s) or additional submenus.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain `guisubmenu`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `menuchoice`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `ref-descriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `guisubmenu`: `accel`, `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `GUISubMenu`.

## See Also

`accel`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `menuchoice`, `mousebutton`, `shortcut`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
In GNU Emacs, the <guimenuitem>Print Buffer</guimenuitem> command is
located off of the <guisubmenu>Print</guisubmenu> submenu of the
<guimenu>Tools</guimenu> menu.
</para>
```

In GNU Emacs, the `Print Buffer` command is located off of the `Print` submenu of the `Tools` menu.

# hardware

hardware -- A physical part of a computer system

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
hardware ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

Hardware identifies some physical component of a computer system. Even though DocBook provides a broad range of inlines for describing the various software components of a system, it provides relatively few for describing hardware.

If you need to identify a number of different hardware components, you may wish to consider extending DocBook, or at least using the Role attribute to further classify Hardware.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the content model of Hardware will be constrained to (#PCDATA | Replaceable | InlineGraphic).

## Parents

These elements contain hardware: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee,

glossseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in hardware: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenu-item, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Hardware.

## See Also

application, database, filename, medialabel, productname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <acronym>IRQ</acronym> of the <hardware>SCSI Controller</hardware>
can be set to 7, 11, or 15. The factory default setting is 7.
</para>
```

The IRQ of the SCSI Controller can be set to 7, 11, or 15. The factory default setting is 7.

# highlights

highlights -- A summary of the main points of the discussed component

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
highlights ::=
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 formalpara|para|simpara|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Highlights are generally presented at the beginning of a component and offer some sort of summary of the main points that will be discussed.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Highlights often contain some sort of list.

## Parents

These elements contain highlights: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, chapter, glossary, glossdiv, index, itemizedlist, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, orderedlist, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, variablelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in highlights: calloutlist, caution, formalpara, glosslist, important, indexterm, itemizedlist, note, orderedlist, para, segmentedlist, simpara, simplelist, tip, variablelist, warning.

## See Also

abstract, blockquote, epigraph, sidebar.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
 "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter><title>Example Chapter</title>
<highlights>
<para>
```

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

```
This chapter will teach you
<itemizedlist>
<listitem>
<para>
How to disassemble an automobile.
</para>
</listitem>
<listitem>
<para>
How to properly carry the component pieces.
</para>
</listitem>
<listitem>
<para>
How to reassemble an automobile in a standard telephone booth.
</para>
</listitem>
</itemizedlist>
</para>
</highlights>
<para>&hellip</para>
</chapter>
```

# holder

holder -- The name of the individual or organization that holds a copyright

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
holder ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Holder in Copyright identifies an individual or organization that asserts a copyright on the document.

## Processing expectations

The formatting of Holder depends on the formatting of its parent Copyright. In the case of a Copyright with multiple holders, additional punctuation may need to be generated when Holder is processed.

## Parents

These elements contain holder: copyright.

## Children

The following elements occur in holder: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## Examples

For examples, see bibliography, biblioset, bookinfo, copyright.

# honorific

honorific -- The title of a person

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
honorific ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `Honorific` occurs in the name of an individual. It is the honorific title of the individual, such as “Dr.,” “Mr.,” or “Ms.”

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an `Address`, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

On some systems, `Honorific` may generate the trailing period automatically.

## Parents

These elements contain `honorific`: `address`, `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `author`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `editor`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `othercredit`, `partinfo`, `personname`, `pre-faceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `ref-sectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `honorific`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`affiliation`, `firstname`, `lineage`, `othername`, `surname`.

## Examples

For examples, see `author`, `authorgroup`.

# html:form

html:form -- An HTML form

## Synopsis

If the HTML Forms Module is used, `html:form` elements can be used in most of the places where `para` can be used.

## Description

XHTML<sup>*i*</sup> defines a `html:form` element that can be used to add interactivity to web pages. The HTML Forms Module for DocBook allows `html:form` elements to be used in DocBook documents.

A complete description of XHTML is outside the scope of this reference.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE section PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook HTML Forms Module V1.0//EN"
    "dbforms.dtd">
<section><title>HTML Forms Test</title>

<para><html:input/>ClassSynopsis version:</para>

<html:form action="dosomething">
<para>foo<html:button>xxx</html:button>
</para>
</html:form>
</section>
```

<sup>*i*</sup><http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-basic/>

# imagedata

imagedata -- Pointer to external image data

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
imagedata ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
srccredit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>
contentwidth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumeration:</i> BMP CGM-BINARY CGM-CHAR CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a IGES JPEG JPG linespecific PCX PIC PNG PS SGML SVG TBL TEX TIFF WMF WPG	<i>None</i>
entityref	ENTITY	<i>None</i>

fileref	CDATA	<i>None</i>
scalefit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
depth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
scale	CDATA	<i>None</i>
contentdepth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center left right	<i>None</i>

## Description

This element points to an external entity containing graphical image data.

## Processing expectations

Render the image. May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context.

There are two ways to provide content for `ImageData`: `EntityRef` or `FileRef`. It is best to use only one of these methods, however, if multiple sources are provided, `EntityRef` will be used in favor of `FileRef`.

`ImageData` provides a selection of attributes that can be used to control how the image is rendered. These attributes define two rectangles, the viewport area and the content area, and how these rectangles are related to each other. The intrinsic size of the image is a third rectangle that sometimes influences the way an image is rendered.

It is important to understand the distinction between these three areas. When rendering an image, the viewport area defines the space reserved in the flow of content for the image. If a 6in x 4in viewport area is specified, that's how much space will be reserved for the image, independent of the actual size of the rendered image. The content area defines the actual size of the rendered image, independent of the intrinsic size of the image. The intrinsic size of the image is its actual, real size.

DocBook provides three mutually exclusive mechanisms for specifying the content area of an image: it can be specified directly, it can be specified by selecting a scale factor, or it can be specified to be the same size as the viewport area.

Finally, DocBook provides two attributes, `align` and `valign` to specify the alignment of the content area within the viewport area.

DocBook provides no mechanism for specifying how an image should be rendered if the content area exceeds the viewport area in either or both dimensions. Implementations are free to perform clipping, allow the image to overflow, and/or generate errors.

## Units of Measure

The size of the viewport area and the content area are defined in terms of lengths (width and depth).

Lengths must be expressed as a decimal value followed immediately by an optional unit of measure or a percentage. Six and one eighth inches, for example, must be expressed as “6.125in”. It is an error to put a space or other punctuation between the decimal value and the unit of measure.

The following units of measure may be used:

pt

Points (1/72 of an inch)

cm	Centimeters
mm	Millimeters
in	Inches
pc	Picas (1/6 of an inch)
px	Pixels
em	Ems

If no unit of measure is provided, `px` is assumed. Note that pixels have no universally accepted absolute size and ems are relative units of measure. Implementations may define pixel sizes differently and stylesheets may or may not be able to determine the current font size in order to correctly calculate the absolute size of an em. It is best to avoid these units of measure.

Percentages are expressed as a decimal value followed immediately by a % sign.

## Specifying the Viewport Area

The viewport area is specified by the `width` and `depth` attributes.

If neither width nor depth is specified, an implementation is free to choose defaults. These defaults may be influenced by context. For example, when rendering an inline graphic, the viewport area often defaults to the size of the content area. For block graphics, the width often defaults to the column width while the depth defaults to the depth of the content area.

If only one of width or depth is specified, an implementation is free to choose a default for the other dimension.

Viewport area dimensions expressed as a percentage are a percentage of the available area. For example, a width of 50% when an implementation is rendering in a column 6in wide is equivalent to specifying a width of 3in.

Percentages must be used with care. Some media are unbounded in one or more directions (for example, web pages are generally unbounded in depth). Specifying a percentage of an unbounded dimension is undefined. Implementations may choose arbitrary defaults or may generate errors.

## Specifying the Content Area

The content area is specified by the `contentwidth` and `contentdepth` attributes.

If neither content width nor content depth is specified, an implementation is expected to render the image at its intrinsic size (unless scaling or scaling to fit is requested). If only one of content width or content depth is specified, an implementation is expected to choose a default for the other dimension such that the image is scaled proportionally. For example, if an image has an intrinsic size of one square inch and the content width is specified as `2in`, the content depth must default to `2in`.

Content area dimensions expressed as a percentage are a percentage of the intrinsic size of the image.

Percentages must be used with care. Some implementations may be unable to determine the intrinsic size of an image and will therefore be forced to make compromises. Implementations may choose arbitrary values or may generate errors if the intrinsic size cannot be obtained.

## Scaling

There are two ways that scaling can be specified, with the `scale` attribute or with the `scalefit` attribute.

If `scale` is specified, it must be a positive integer. It is always interpreted to be a percentage value where “100” represents 100%.

The legal values of `scalefit` are 0 (false) or 1 (true). If scaling to fit is requested, the content area is scaled until *either* the content width is the same as the viewport width (and the content depth is less than or equal to the viewport depth) *or* the content depth is the same as the viewport depth (and the content width is less than or equal to the viewport width), whichever comes first. In other words, scaling to fit never causes anamorphic scaling, it simply scales the image as large as possible without overflowing the bounds of the viewport area.

Specification of content area, scaling, and scaling to fit are mutually exclusive. If a content area (`contentwidth`, `contentdepth`, or both) is specified, *both* scaling and scaling to fit are ignored. If the content area is not specified and both scaling and scaling to fit are specified, `scalefit` is ignored.

In order to achieve a level of backwards compatibility with previous versions of DocBook (which did not have attributes for specifying a content area) while maintaining coherent semantics, the default value of `scalefit` depends on other attributes:

Viewport area	Content area	<code>scalefit</code> default
unspecified	unspecified	irrelevant
specified	unspecified	1
unspecified	specified	0
specified	specified	0

If a viewport area is specified (and neither a content area nor scaling is specified) and `scalefit` is explicitly “0”, the viewport area specification must be ignored.

## Alignment

Two alignment attributes are provided, `align` and `valign`.

If specified, `align` indicates how the content area should be aligned horizontally within the viewport area. If not specified, implementations are free to choose any default value.

If specified, `valign` indicates how the content area should be aligned vertically within the viewport area. If not specified, implementations are free to choose any default value.

## Examples

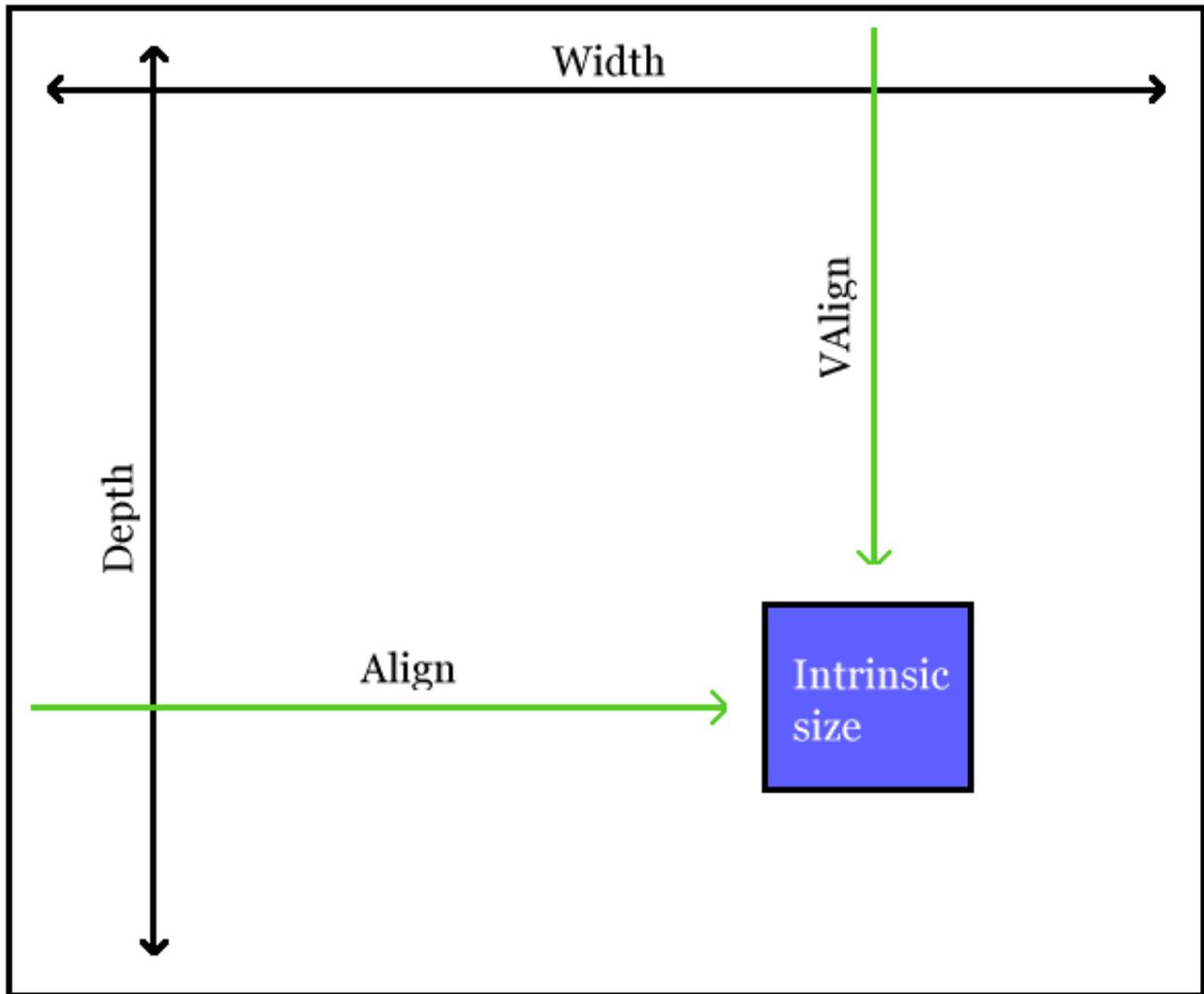
If nothing is specified about the size of an image, it is rendered in a content area that is the same as its intrinsic size in a viewport area that is implementation defined:

```
<imagedata fileref="image.png"/>
```



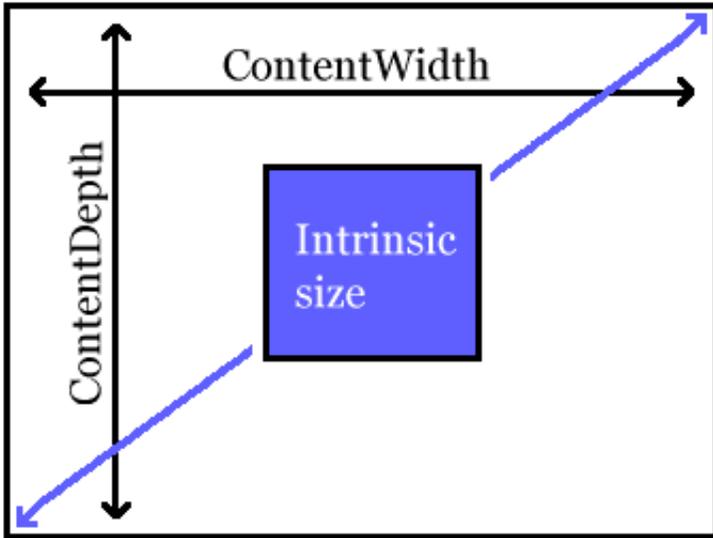
If a viewport area is specified, the image is rendered in a content area that is the same as its intrinsic size in the specified viewport area:

```
<imagedata fileref="image.png" width="6in" depth="5.5in"/>
```



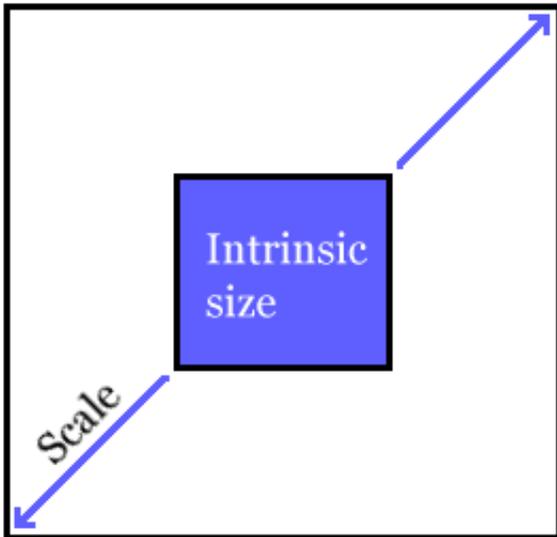
If a content area is specified, the image is scaled (possibly anamorphically) to that size and rendered in a viewport area that is implementation defined:

```
<imagedata fileref="image.png" contentwidth="4in" contentdepth="3in"/>
```



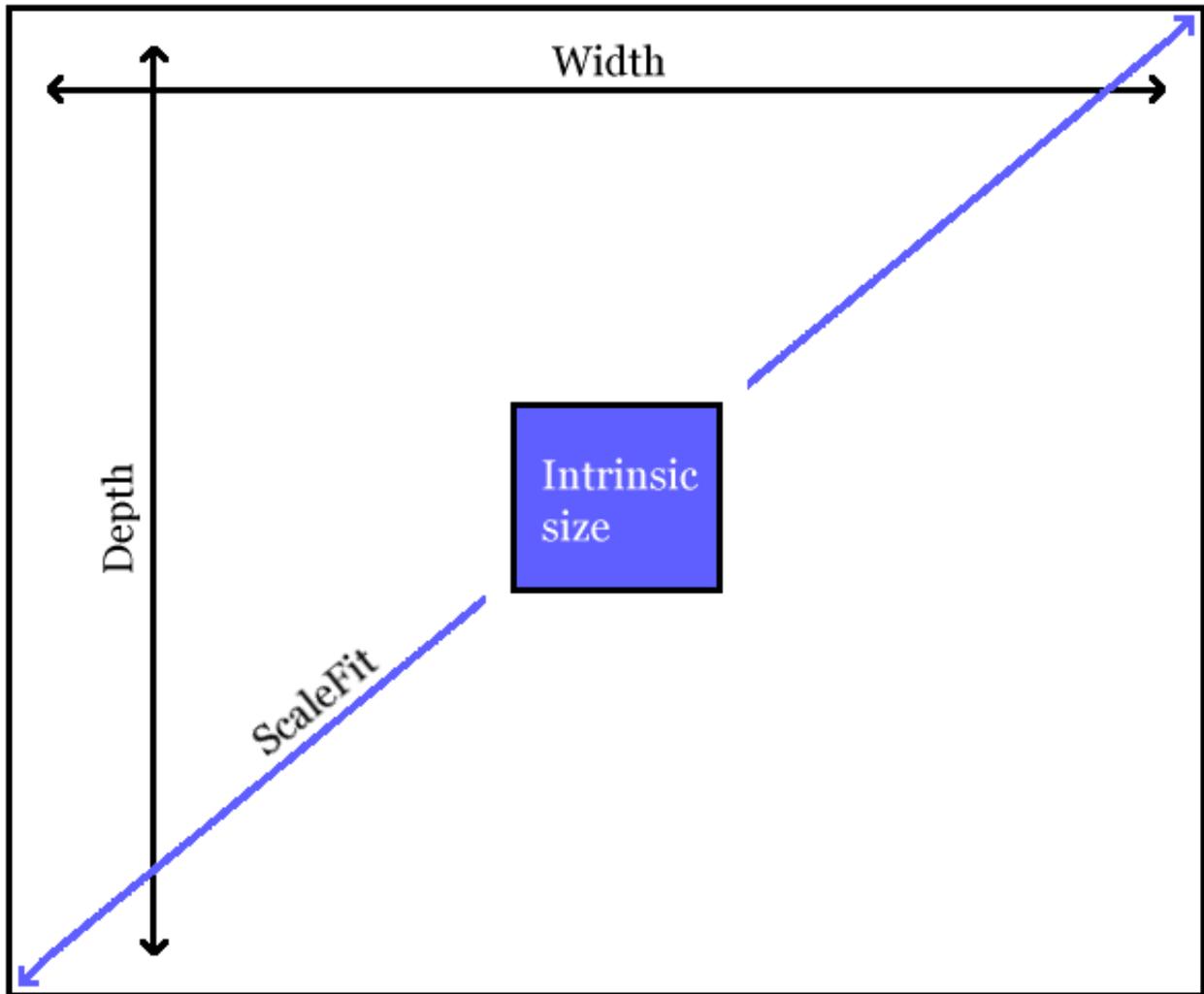
If a scaling factor is specified, the intrinsic size is scaled uniformly by that amount to obtain the content area which is rendered in a viewport area that is implementation defined:

```
<imagedata fileref="image.png" scale="300"/>
```



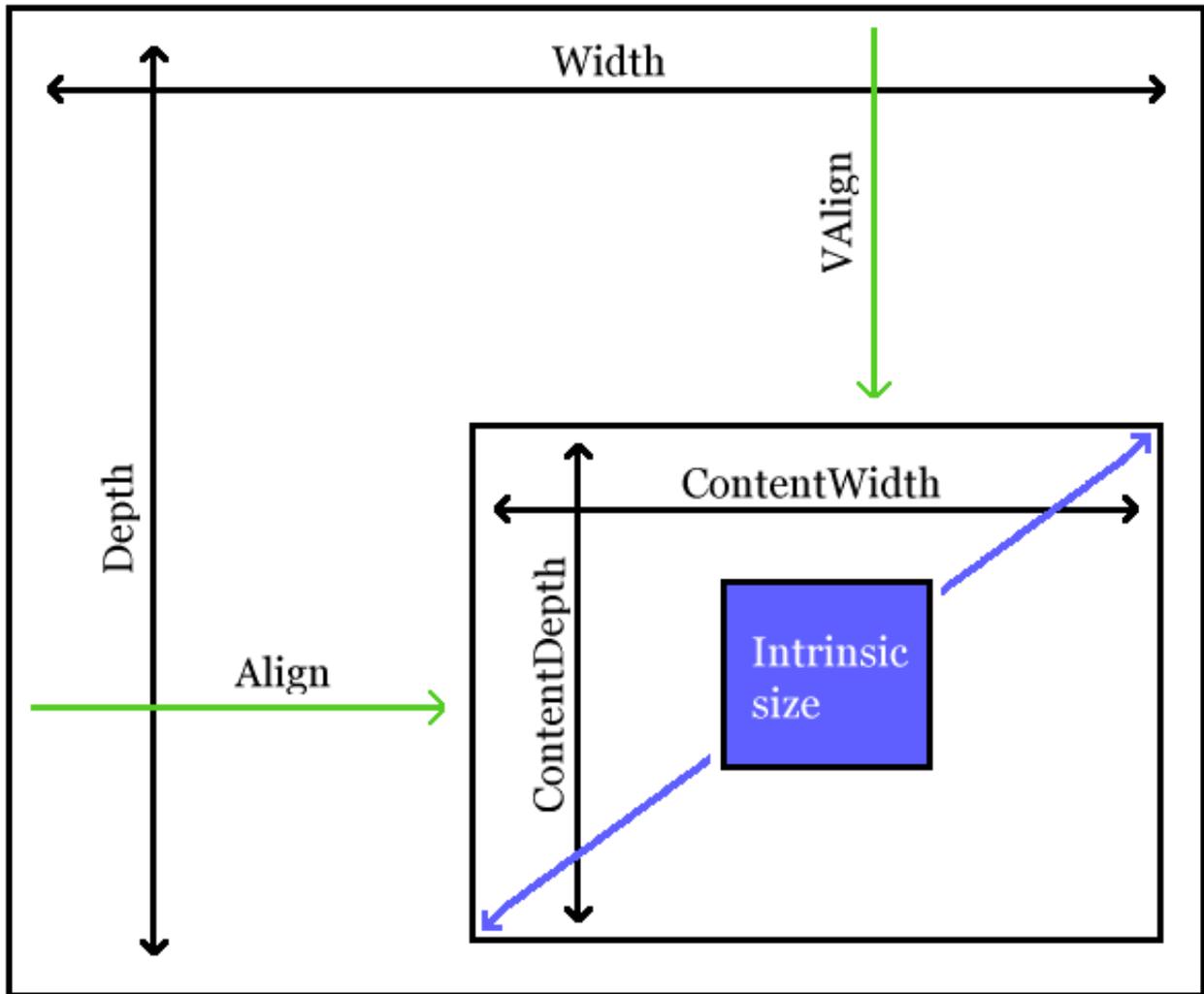
If a viewport area is specified and scaling to fit is requested, the intrinsic size is scaled (uniformly) as large as possible without extending beyond the bounds of the viewport area which is rendered as specified.

```
<imagedata fileref="image.png" width="6in" depth="5.5in"/>
<!-- note that scalefit="1" is the default in this case -->
```



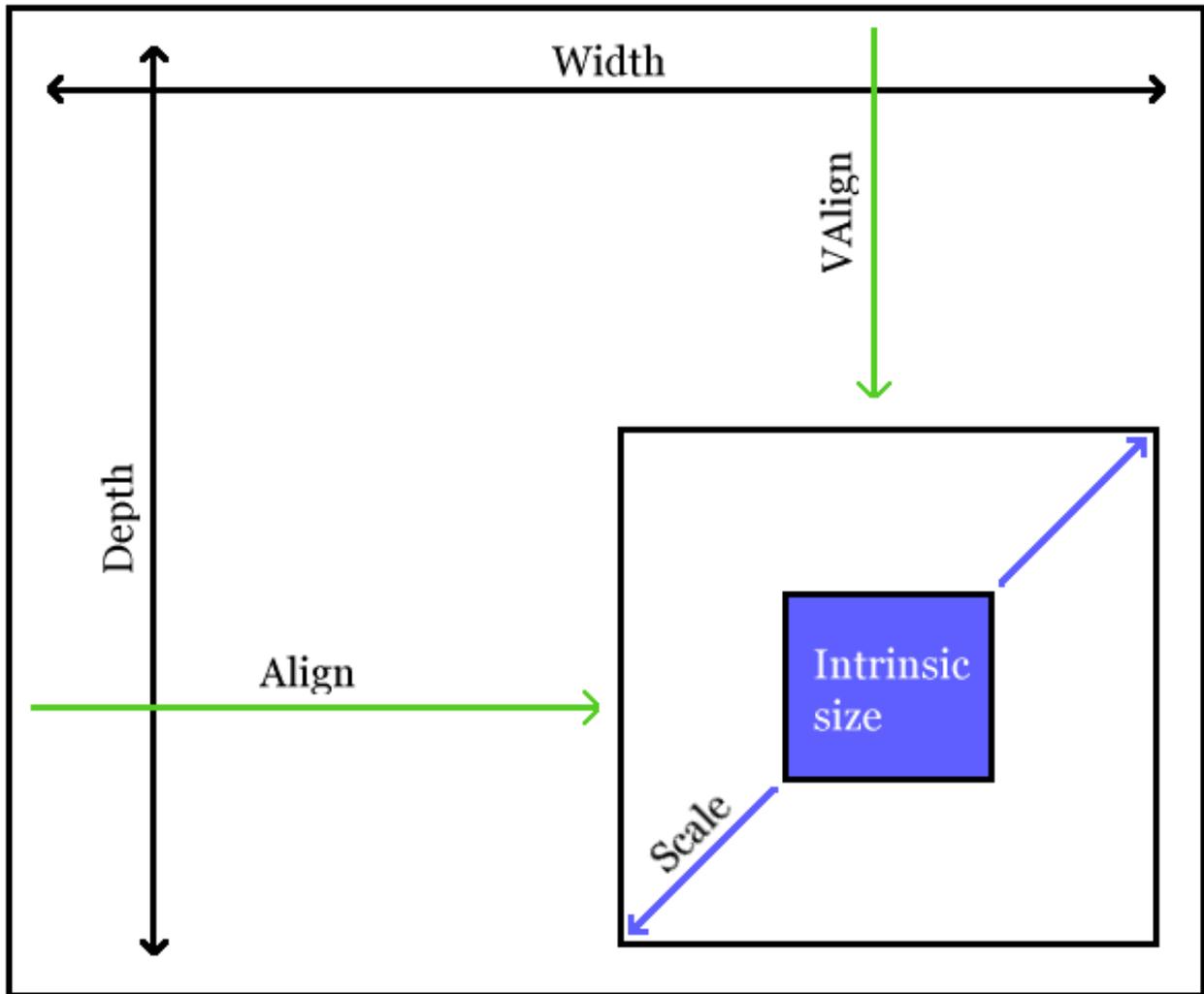
If the viewport area and content area are specified, the image is scaled (possibly anamorphically) to the content area size and rendered in the specified viewport area:

```
<imagedata fileref="image.png" width="6in" depth="5.5in"  
  contentwidth="4in" contentdepth="3in"/>
```



If the viewport area and a scaling factor are specified, the intrinsic size is scaled uniformly by the scaling factor amount to obtain the content area which is rendered in the specified viewport area:

```
<imagedata fileref="image.png" width="6in" depth="5.5in" scale="300"/>
```



## Parents

These elements contain imagedata: `imageobject`.

## Attributes

`align`

`Align` specifies the horizontal alignment of the content area in the viewport area.

`contentdepth`

`ContentDepth` specifies the desired depth of the content area.

`contentwidth`

`ContentWidth` specifies the desired width of the content area.

`depth`

`Depth` specifies the desired depth of the viewport area.

`entityref`

`EntityRef` identifies the general entity which points to the content of the image data.

`fileref`

`FileRef` specifies the name of the file which contains the content of the image data.

`format`

`Format` identifies the format of the image data. The `Format` must be a defined notation.

`scale`

`Scale` is an integer representing a percentage scaling factor (retaining the relative dimensions of the original image). If unspecified, the value 100 (100%) is assumed.

`scalefit`

If `ScaleFit` has the value 1 (true), then the image data is to be scaled (uniformly) to the specified width or depth. The default value of 0 (false) indicates that the image will not be scaled to fit (although it may still be scaled by the `Scale` attribute).

`srccredit`

`SrcCredit` contains details about the source of the image data.

`width`

`Width` indicates the width of the graphic.

## Examples

For examples, see `imageobject`, `informalfigure`, `inlinemediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `videoobject`.

# imageobject

imageobject -- A wrapper for image data and its associated meta-information

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
imageobject ::=  
(objectinfo?, imagedata)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `ImageObject` is a wrapper containing `ImageData` and its associated meta-information.

If the SVG Module is used, `ImageObject` can also contain the `svg:svg` element.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. It might not be rendered at all, depending on its placement within a `MediaObject` or `InlineMediaObject` and the constraints on the publishing system. For a more detailed description of the semantics involved, see `MediaObject`.

## Parents

These elements contain `imageobject`: `imageobjectco`, `inlinemediainobject`, `mediaobject`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `imageobject`: `imagedata`, `objectinfo`.

## See Also

`alt`, `audioobject`, `caption`, `graphic`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediainobject`, `mediaobject`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE mediaobject PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"  
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">  
<mediaobject>  
  <imageobject>  
    <imagedata fileref="figures/eiffeltower.eps" format="EPS"/>  
  </imageobject>  
  <imageobject>  
    <imagedata fileref="figures/eiffeltower.png" format="PNG"/>  
  </imageobject>
```

```
<textobject>
  <phrase>The Eiffel Tower</phrase>
</textobject>
<caption>
  <para>Designed by Gustave Eiffel in 1889, The Eiffel Tower is one of the
most widely recognized buildings in the world.
</para>
</caption>
</mediaobject>
```

Designed by Gustave Eiffel in 1889, The Eiffel Tower is one of the most widely recognized buildings in the world.

For additional examples, see also `informalfigure`, `inlinemediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `svg-svg`, `videoobject`.

# imageobjectco

imageobjectco -- A wrapper for an image object with callouts

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
imageobjectco ::=  
(areaspec, imageobject, calloutlist*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Callouts, such as numbered bullets, are an annotation mechanism. In an online system, these bullets are frequently “hot,” and clicking on them navigates to the corresponding annotation.

An ImageObjectCO is a wrapper around an AreaSpec and an ImageObject. An AreaSpec identifies the locations (coordinates) on the image where the Callouts occur. The ImageObjectCO may also contain the list of annotations in a CalloutList, although the CalloutList may also occur outside of the wrapper, elsewhere in the document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. It may not be rendered at all, depending on its placement within the MediaObject that contains it and the constraints on the publishing system. For a more detailed description of the semantics involved, see MediaObject.

The mandatory processing expectations of a ImageObjectCO are minimal: a system is expected to render the image, if possible, and the callout list, if present.

In online environments, the processing system may be able to instantiate the linking relationships between the callout marks on the image and the annotations. For example, an HTML presentation system might use the coordinate information to construct a client-side image map. Some processing systems may even be able to go a step further and generate the callout marks automatically from the coordinate information. But this level of sophistication is not mandatory.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V5.0, ImageObjectCO will be discarded. In its place, use MediaObjectCO.

## Parents

These elements contain imageobjectco: mediaobjectco.

## Children

The following elements occur in imageobjectco: areaspec, calloutlist, imageobject.

## See Also

areaspec, calloutlist, co, coref, graphicco, mediaobjectco, programlistingco, screenco.

## Examples

For examples, see mediaobjectco.

# important

important -- An admonition set off from the text

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
important ::=
(title?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table|
 procedure|sidebar|anchor|bridgehead|remark|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Important is an admonition set off from the main text.

In some types of documentation, the semantics of admonitions are clearly defined (Caution might imply the possibility of harm to equipment whereas Warning might imply harm to a person), but DocBook makes no such assertions.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. It often outputs the generated text “Important” or some other visible indication of the type of admonition, especially if a Title is not present. Sometimes outputs a graphical icon or other symbol as well.

## Parents

These elements contain important: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, chapter, colophon, dedication, entry, glossary, glossdiv, highlights, index, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, variablelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in important: address, anchor, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, orderedlist,

para, procedure, programlisting, programlistingco, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, title, variablelist.

## See Also

caution, note, tip, warning.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE important PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<important>
<para>
No user-servicable parts inside. Breaking this seal voids all warranties.
</para>
</important>
```

### Important

No user-servicable parts inside. Breaking this seal voids all warranties.

# index

index -- An index

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
index ::=
(indexinfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 (indexdiv*|indexentry*))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An Index contains the formatted index of a document. An index may begin with introductory material, followed by any number of IndexEntry or IndexDivs.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. An Index in a Book frequently causes a forced page break in print media.

In many processing systems, indexes are generated automatically or semiautomatically and never appear instantiated as DocBook markup.

## Future Changes

Formal objects and other elements inappropriate for an index will be removed the content that can appear before the first IndexDiv or IndexEntry.

## Parents

These elements contain index: appendix, article, book, chapter, part, preface, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section.

## Children

The following elements occur in index: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexdiv, indexentry, indexinfo, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE index PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<index><title>Index</title>
<indexdiv><title>D</title>
<indexentry>
  <primaryie>database (bibliographic), 253, 255</primaryie>
  <secondaryie>structure, 255</secondaryie>
  <secondaryie>tools, 259</secondaryie>
</indexentry>
<indexentry>
  <primaryie>dates (language specific), 179</primaryie>
</indexentry>
<indexentry>
  <primaryie>DC fonts, <emphasis>172</emphasis>, 177</primaryie>
  <secondaryie>Math fonts, 177</secondaryie>
</indexentry>
</indexdiv>
</index>
```

```
<!DOCTYPE index PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<index>
<indexentry>
  <primaryie>Example</primaryie>
  <secondaryie>Chapter</secondaryie>
  <seeie>Example Chapter</seeie>
</indexentry>

<indexentry>
  <primaryie>Example Chapter, 35-48</primaryie>
  <seealsoie>Examples</seealsoie>
</indexentry>

<indexentry>
  <primaryie>Examples, 18, 36, 72-133</primaryie>
</indexentry>

</index>
```

# indexdiv

indexdiv -- A division in an index

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
indexdiv ::=
((title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 ( (itemizedlist | orderedlist | variablelist | simplelist | literallayout |
   programlisting | programlistingco | screen | screenco | screenshot |
   synopsis | cmdsynopsis | funcsynopsis | classsynopsis | fieldsynopsis |
   constructorsynopsis | destructorsynopsis | methodsynopsis |
   formalpara | para | simpara | address | blockquote | graphic | graphicco |
   mediaobject | mediaobjectco | informalequation | informalexample |
   informalfigure | informaltable | anchor | remark | link | olink | ulink |
   beginpage)*,
 (indexentry+ | segmentedlist)))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `IndexDiv` identifies a section of an `Index`. An index might be divided into sections in order to group entries, usually alphabetically.

An index may contain any number of `IndexEntry` or `IndexDiv` elements, but it cannot contain a mixture of both at the same level.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

Formal objects and other elements inappropriate for an index will be removed the content that can appear before the first `IndexEntry`.

## Parents

These elements contain `indexdiv`: `index`, `setindex`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `indexdiv`: `address`, `anchor`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `fieldsynopsis`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `indexentry`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `link`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `olink`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `re-`

mark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, title, titleabbrev, ulink, variablelist.

## Examples

For examples, see [index](#).

# indexentry

indexentry -- An entry in an index

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
indexentry ::=
(primaryie,
 (seeie|seealsoie)*,
 (secondaryie,
 (seeie|seealsoie|tertiaryie)*))*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `IndexEntry` wraps all of the index terms associated with a particular primary index term. This includes an arbitrary list of secondary and tertiary elements as well as `See` and `SeeAlso` elements.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. A rendered index usually places secondary items under primary items and tertiary items under secondary.

## Parents

These elements contain `indexentry`: `index`, `indexdiv`, `setindex`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `indexentry`: `primaryie`, `secondaryie`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `tertiaryie`.

## See Also

`indexterm`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`.

## Examples

For examples, see `index`.

# indexinfo

indexinfo -- Meta-information for an Index

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
indexinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The IndexInfo element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a Index. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain indexinfo: index.

## Children

The following elements occur in indexinfo: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

# indexterm

indexterm -- A wrapper for terms to be indexed

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
indexterm ::=
(primary?,
 (secondary,
  ((tertiary,
   (see|seealso+)?)|
   see|seealso+)?)|
 see|seealso+)?)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
significance	<i>Enumeration:</i> normal preferred	"normal"
zone	IDREFS	<i>None</i>
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> endofrange singular startofrange	<i>None</i>
scope	<i>Enumeration:</i> all global local	<i>None</i>
startref	IDREF	<i>None</i>

## Description

IndexTerms identify text that is to be placed in the index. In the simplest case, the placement of the IndexTerm in the document identifies the location of the term in the text. In other words, the IndexTerm is placed in the flow of the document at the point where the IndexEntry in the Index should point. In other cases, attributes on IndexTerm are used to identify the location of the term in the text.

IndexTerms mark either a single point in the document or a range. A single point is marked with an IndexTerm placed in the text at the point of reference. There are two ways to identify a range of text:

- Place an IndexTerm at the beginning of the range with Class set to StartOfRange and give this term an ID. Place another IndexTerm at the end of the range with StartRef pointing to the ID of the starting IndexTerm. This second IndexTerm must be empty.

The advantage of this method is that the range can span unbalanced element boundaries.

- Place the `IndexTerm` anywhere you like and point to the element that contains the range of text you wish to index with the `Zone` attribute on the `IndexTerm`. Note that `Zone` is defined as `IDREFS` so a single `IndexTerm` can point to multiple ranges.

The advantage of this method is that `IndexTerms` can be collected together or even stored totally outside the flow of the document (in the meta for example).

## Processing expectations

`IndexTerms` are suppressed in the primary text flow, although they contribute to the population of an index and serve as anchors for cross references. Under no circumstances is the actual content of `IndexTerm` rendered in the primary flow.

It is possible to construct index terms that are difficult to parse at best and totally illogical at worst. Consider the following:

```
<indexterm class='startofrange' zone="id1 id2">...</indexterm>
```

There is no way that this can fit into the semantics of an `IndexTerm`. Although it claims to be the start of a range, it does not have an ID for the end-of-range `IndexTerm` to point back to. In addition, it includes zoned terms, and mixing the two different methods for indicating a range in the same `IndexTerm` is probably a bad idea.

## Parents

These elements contain `indexterm`: `abbrev`, `accel`, `ackno`, `acronym`, `action`, `answer`, `appendix`, `appendixinfo`, `application`, `article`, `articleinfo`, `artpagenums`, `attribution`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `bibliodiv`, `biblioentry`, `bibliography`, `bibliographyinfo`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `bibliorelation`, `biblioset`, `bibliosource`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `bookinfo`, `bridgehead`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `chapterinfo`, `citation`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `city`, `classname`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `collabname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `confdates`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`, `conftitle`, `constant`, `constraintdef`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `country`, `database`, `date`, `dedication`, `edition`, `email`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `example`, `exceptionname`, `fax`, `figure`, `filename`, `firstname`, `firstterm`, `foreignphrase`, `formalpara`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossary`, `glossaryinfo`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glossentry`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `highlights`, `holder`, `honorific`, `important`, `index`, `indexinfo`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `initializer`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itemizedlist`, `itermset`, `jobtitle`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keysym`, `label`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `manvolnum`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `member`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `modifier`, `mousebutton`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msglevel`, `msgorig`, `msgtext`, `note`, `objectinfo`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `orderedlist`, `orgdiv`, `orgname`, `otheraddr`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `para`, `parameter`, `partinfo`, `partintro`, `phone`, `phrase`, `pob`, `postcode`, `preface`, `prefaceinfo`, `procedure`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `programlisting`, `prompt`, `property`, `pubdate`, `publishername`, `pubnumber`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `quote`, `refentry`, `refentryinfo`, `refentrytitle`, `referenceinfo`, `refmeta`, `refmiscinfo`, `refpurpose`, `refsect1`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3`, `refsect3info`, `refsection`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `releaseinfo`, `remark`, `returnvalue`, `revdescription`, `revnumber`, `revremark`,

screen, screeninfo, sect1, sect1info, sect2, sect2info, sect3, sect3info, sect4, sect4info, sect5, sect5info, section, sectioninfo, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, setindex, setindexinfo, setinfo, sgmltag, shortaffil, sidebar, sidebarinfo, simpara, simplesect, state, step, street, structfield, structname, subtitle, surname, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, table, term, tip, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, token, type, ulink, userinput, variablelist, varname, volumenum, warning, wordasword, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in `indexterm`: `primary`, `secondary`, `see`, `seealso`, `tertiary`.

## Attributes

`class`

`Class` identifies the type of `IndexTerm`. If `StartRef` is supplied, the default for `Class` is `EndOfRange`, otherwise it is `Singular`.

`pagenum`

`PageNum` indicates the page on which this index term occurs in some version of the printed document.

`scope`

`Scope` identifies in which indexes the `IndexTerm` should appear. `Global` means the index for the whole collection of documents, `Local` means the index for this document only, and `All` means both indexes.

`significance`

`Significance` specifies whether or not this `IndexTerm` is considered the most important location for information about the terms being indexed. Generally, `Preferred IndexTerms` get special typographic treatment in the `Index`.

`startref`

The use of `StartRef` implies a spanning index entry. `StartRef` is used on the term that defines the end of the span and points to the term which defines the beginning.

`zone`

The use of `Zone` implies a spanning index entry. `Zone` holds the IDs of the elements to which it applies. The `IndexTerm` applies to the contents of the entire element(s) to which it points. If `Zone` is used, the physical placement of the `IndexTerm` in the flow of the document *is irrelevant*.

## See Also

`indexentry`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The Tiger<indexterm>
<primary>Big Cats</primary>
<secondary>Tigers</secondary></indexterm>
is a very large cat indeed.
</para>
```

The Tiger is a very large cat indeed.

```
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter><title>Example Chapter</title>

<!-- index term for "Example Chapter" is a span -->
<indexterm id="idxexchap" class='startofrange'>
  <primary>Example Chapter</primary></indexterm>

<!-- index term for "Example Chapter" also cross references the
    "Examples" entry in the index -->
<indexterm><primary>Example Chapter</primary>
  <seealso>Examples</seealso></indexterm>

<!-- index term for "Chapter, Example" refers the reader to the entry
    under which the index term is actually listed, "Example Chapter" -->
<indexterm><primary>Chapter</primary><secondary>Example</secondary>
  <see>Example Chapter</see></indexterm>

<!-- other content -->

<!-- index term, end of "Example Chapter" span -->
<indexterm startref="idxexchap" class="endofrange"/>

<para>some content</para>
</chapter>

<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter><title>Example Chapter</title>
<indexterm zone="a1"><primary>Network Configuration</primary></indexterm>
<!-- other content here -->
<sect1 id="a1"><title>Configuring Your Network</title>
<para>&hellip;</para>
</sect1>
</chapter>
```

For additional examples, see also chapter.

# informalequation

informalequation -- A displayed mathematical equation without a title

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
informalequation ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (alt?,
  (graphic+|mediaobject+)))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `InformalEquation` is usually a mathematical equation or a group of related mathematical equations.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

### Note

It is an error to supply a `title` in the `blockinfo` for an informal example.

## Parents

These elements contain `informalequation`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `constraintdef`, `equation`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `informalequation`: `alt`, `blockinfo`, `graphic`, `mediaobject`.

## See Also

`equation`, `example`, `figure`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `inlineequation`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `table`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The equation
<informalequation>
  <alt>e^(pi*i) + 1 = 0</alt>
  <graphic fileref="figures/epi10.png"/>
</informalequation>
is delightful because it joins together five of the most
important mathematical constants.
</para>
```

The equation

$$e^{\pi i} + 1 = 0$$

is delightful because it joins together five of the most important mathematical constants.

For additional examples, see also `mm1-math`.

# informalexample

informalexample -- A displayed example without a title

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
informalexample ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

InformalExample is a wrapper for an example without a title. Examples often contain ProgramListings or other large block elements.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

### Note

It is an error to supply a title in the blockinfo for an informal example.

## Parents

These elements contain informalexample: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, constraintdef, example, figure, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, informalfigure, itemizedlist, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in `informalexample`: `address`, `beginpage`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `calloutlist`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `fieldsynopsis`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `simplpara`, `simplelist`, `synopsis`, `variablelist`.

## Attributes

`width`

`width` specifies the width (in characters) of the longest line in this `InformalExample` (formatters may use this value to determine scaling or rotation).

## See Also

`equation`, `example`, `figure`, `informalequation`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `table`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE informalexample PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<informalexample>
<programlisting>
sub print_content_model {
    my($self) = shift;
    local($_) = shift;
    local(*FILE) = shift;

    my(@cm) = $self->format_content_model2($_);
    foreach $_ (@cm) {
        print FILE $self->make_links($_, 1, 1), "\n";
    }
}
</programlisting>
</informalexample>
```

```
sub print_content_model {
    my($self) = shift;
    local($_) = shift;
    local(*FILE) = shift;

    my(@cm) = $self->format_content_model2($_);
    foreach $_ (@cm) {
        print FILE $self->make_links($_, 1, 1), "\n";
    }
}
```

For additional examples, see also `screenco`.

# informalfigure

informalfigure -- A untitled figure

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
informalfigure ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|
 mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|informalfigure|
 informaltable|indexterm|beginpage|link|olink|ulink)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
float	CDATA	"0"
pgwide	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

An `InformalFigure` is a figure without a title. Figures often contain `Graphics`, or other large display elements.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

### Note

It is an error to supply a title in the `blockinfo` for an informal figure.

## Parents

These elements contain `informalfigure`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `constraintdef`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `informalfigure`: `address`, `beginpage`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `fieldsynopsis`, `funcsynopsis`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `link`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `olink`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `synopsis`, `ulink`.

## Attributes

`float`

If `Float` has the value 1 (true), then the processing system is free to move the figure to a convenient location. (Where convenient location may be described in the style sheet or may be application dependent.) A value of 0 (false) indicates that the figure should be placed precisely where it occurs in the flow.

`label`

`Label` specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit `Label` attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the `Label` is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

`pgwide`

If `Pgwide` has the value 0 (false), then the `InformalFigure` is rendered in the current text flow (with flow column width). A value of 1 (true) specifies that the figure should be rendered across the full text page.

## See Also

`equation`, `example`, `figure`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informaltable`, `table`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE informalfigure PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<informalfigure>
<mediaobject>
<imageobject>
<imagedata fileref="watarun.eps" srccredit="Norman Walsh, 1998"/>
</imageobject>
<textobject><phrase>Wat Arun</phrase></textobject>
<caption><para>Wat Arun, Temple of the Dawn, on the Chao Phraya River
in Bangkok,
Thailand. In April, 1998, Wat Arun was in the midst of renovation.</para>
</caption>
</mediaobject>
</informalfigure>
```

Wat Arun, Temple of the Dawn, on the Chao Phraya River in Bangkok, Thailand. In April, 1998, Wat Arun was in the midst of renovation.

# informaltable

informaltable -- A table without a title

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
informaltable ::=  
(blockinfo?, textobject*,  
 (graphic+ | mediaobject+ | tgroup+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
tocentry	CDATA	<i>None</i>
shortentry	CDATA	<i>None</i>
tabstyle	CDATA	<i>None</i>
orient	<i>Enumeration:</i> land port	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
frame	<i>Enumeration:</i> all bottom none sides top topbot	<i>None</i>
pgwide	CDATA	<i>None</i>
rowsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

An `InformalTable` element identifies an informal table (one without a `Title`). DocBook uses the CALS table model, which describes tables geometrically using rows, columns, and cells.

Tables may include column headers and footers, but there is no provision for row headers.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

### Note

It is an error to supply a `title` in the `blockinfo` for an informal table.

This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*.

## Future Changes

The OASIS Exchange Table Model<sup>ii</sup> will replace the full OASIS Table Model.

## Parents

These elements contain `informatable`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `constraintdef`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `informatable`: `blockinfo`, `graphic`, `mediaobject`, `textobject`, `tgroup`.

## Attributes

`colsep`

If `ColSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn to the right of all columns in this table. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule to the right of the last column in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute, not the `ColSep`.

`frame`

`Frame` specifies how the table is to be framed:

Value	Meaning
<code>all</code>	Frame all four sides of the table. In some environments with limited control over table border formatting, such as HTML, this may imply additional borders.
<code>bottom</code>	Frame only the bottom of the table.
<code>none</code>	Place no border on the table. In some environments with limited control over table border formatting, such as HTML, this may disable other borders as well.
<code>sides</code>	Frame the left and right sides of the table.
<code>top</code>	Frame the top of the table.
<code>topbot</code>	Frame the top and bottom of the table.

There is no way to obtain a border on only the starting edge (left, in left-to-right writing systems) of the table.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

<sup>ii</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/specs/tm9901.html>

## label

`Label` specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit `Label` attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the `Label` is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

## orient

`Orient` specifies the orientation of the `InformalTable`. An orientation of `Port` is the “upright”, the same orientation as the rest of the text flow. An orientation of `Land` is 90 degrees counterclockwise from the upright orientation.

## pgwide

If `Pgwide` has the value 0 (false), then the `InformalTable` is rendered in the current text flow (with flow column width). A value of 1 (true) specifies that the table should be rendered across the full text page.

## rowsep

If `RowSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn below all the rows in the `InformalTable` (unless other, interior elements, suppress some or all of the rules). A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule below the last row in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute and the `RowSep` of the last row is ignored.

## shortentry

This attribute is meaningless on `InformalTable`.

## tabstyle

`TabStyle` holds the name of a table style defined in a stylesheet (e.g., a FOSI) that will be used to process this document.

## tocentry

This attribute is meaningless on `InformalTable`.

## See Also

`colspec`, `entry`, `entrytbl`, `equation`, `example`, `figure`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `row`, `spanspec`, `table`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `tgroup`, `thead`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE informaltable PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<informaltable frame='none'>
<tgroup cols='2'>
<colspec colwidth='0.5in' />
<colspec colwidth='0.5in' />
<tbody>
<row><entry>1</entry><entry>1</entry></row>
<row><entry>2</entry><entry>4</entry></row>
<row><entry>3</entry><entry>9</entry></row>
```

```
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</informaltable>
```

1	1
2	4
3	9

For additional examples, see also `entrytbl`, `footnoteref`.

# initializer

initializer -- The initializer for a `FieldSynopsis`

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
initializer ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `Initializer` identifies the initial or default value for a field (`FieldSynopsis`) or method parameter (`MethodParam`).

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. May be suppressed in some contexts.

## Parents

These elements contain `initializer`: `fieldsynopsis`, `methodparam`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `initializer`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

# inlineequation

inlineequation -- A mathematical equation or expression occurring inline

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
inlineequation ::=
((alt?,
 (graphic+|inlinemediaobject+)))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

InlineEquations are expressions (usually mathematical) that occur in the text flow.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

InlineEquation should not contain Graphic. Instead, it should contain InlineGraphic. Within an InlineEquation, Graphic should be rendered inline.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V5.0, InlineGraphic and Graphic will be discarded.

## Parents

These elements contain inlineequation: application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, para, phrase, productname, programlisting, quote, refentrytitle, remark, screen, screeninfo, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in inlineequation: alt, graphic, inlinemediaobject.

## See Also

equation, informalequation, subscript, superscript.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Einstein's theory of relativity includes one of the most
widely recognized formulas in the world:
<inlineequation>
    <alt>e=mc^2</alt>
    <graphic fileref="figures/emc2.png"/>
</inlineequation>
</para>
```

Einstein's theory of relativity includes one of the most widely recognized formulas in the world:

$$e = mc^2$$

For additional examples, see also `inlinemediaobject`.

# inlinegraphic

inlinegraphic -- An object containing or pointing to graphical data that will be rendered inline

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
inlinegraphic ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
srccredit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>
contentwidth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumeration:</i> BMP CGM-BINARY CGM-CHAR CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a IGES JPEG JPG linespecific PCX PIC PNG PS SGML SVG TBL TEX TIFF WMF WPG	<i>None</i>
entityref	ENTITY	<i>None</i>

fileref	CDATA	<i>None</i>
scaleftit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
depth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
scale	CDATA	<i>None</i>
contentdepth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center left right	<i>None</i>

## Description

This element contains graphical data, or a pointer to an external entity containing graphical data. One of the deficiencies of the DocBook `Graphic` element is that there is no way to specify an alternate text description of the graphic. This has been rectified by the introduction of `InlineMediaObject`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

There are several ways to provide content for a `Graphic`. It is best to use only one of these methods. However, if multiple graphic sources are provided, the processing expectations are as follows: element content should be used in favor of either `EntityRef` or `FileRef` and `EntityRef` should be used in favor of `FileRef`.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, `InlineGraphic` will be declared `EMPTY`. This change will require that any embedded graphic content be stored outside the SGML source and pointed to with an `EntityRef` or `FileRef` attribute.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V5.0, `InlineGraphic` will be discarded. At that time, graphics will have to be incorporated using `MediaObject` or `InlineMediaObject`.

## Parents

These elements contain `inlinegraphic`: `abbrev`, `accel`, `ackno`, `acronym`, `action`, `application`, `artpagenums`, `attribution`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliosource`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `city`, `classname`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `collabname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `confdates`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`, `conftitle`, `constant`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `country`, `database`, `date`, `edition`, `email`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fax`, `filename`, `firstname`, `firstterm`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `holder`, `honorific`, `initializer`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `jobtitle`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keysym`, `label`, `lineage`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `manvolnum`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `member`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `modifier`, `mousebutton`, `msgaud`, `msglevel`,

msgorig, olink, option, optional, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, parameter, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, primary, primaryie, productname, productnumber, programlisting, prompt, property, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, quote, refentry-title, refmiscinfo, releaseinfo, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, sgmltag, shortaffil, simpara, state, street, structfield, structname, subscript, subtitle, superscript, surname, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, volumenum, wordasword, year.

## Attributes

align

Align specifies the horizontal alignment of the graphic within the element that frames it.

depth

Depth specifies the desired depth (vertical distance, at least in horizontal writing systems) of the image.

entityref

EntityRef identifies the general entity which contains (or points to) the content of the graphic.

fileref

FileRef specifies the name of the file which contains the content of the graphic.

format

Format identifies the format of the graphic content. The Format must be a defined notation.

scale

Scale specifies integer representing a percentage scaling factor (retaining the relative dimensions of the original graphic). If unspecified, the value 100 (100%) is assumed.

scalefit

If ScaleFit has the value 1 (true), then the graphic is to be scaled (uniformly) to the specified width or depth. The default value of 0 (false) indicates that the image will not be scaled to fit (although it may still be scaled by the Scale attribute).

srccredit

SrcCredit contains details about the source of the InlineGraphic.

width

Width indicates the width of the graphic.

## See Also

`alt`, `audioobject`, `caption`, `graphic`, `imageobject`, `inlinemediaobject`, `mediaobject`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## Examples

For examples, see `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`.

# inlinemediaobject

inlinemediaobject -- An inline media object (video, audio, image, and so on)

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
inlinemediaobject ::=
(objectinfo?,
 (videoobject|audioobject|imageobject|textobject)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

`InlineMediaObject` contains a set of alternative “graphical objects.” In DocBook V3.1, three types of external graphical objects are defined: `VideoObjects`, `AudioObjects`, and `ImageObjects`. Additional textual descriptions may be provided with `TextObjects`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

The primary purpose of the `InlineMediaObject` is to provide a wrapper around a set of alternative presentations of the same information.

If possible, the processing system should use the content of the first object within the `InlineMediaObject`. If the first object cannot be used, the remaining objects should be considered in the order that they occur. A processor should use the first object that it can, although it is free to choose any of the remaining objects if the primary one cannot be used.

Under no circumstances should more than one object in an `InlineMediaObject` be used or presented at the same time.

For example, an `InlineMediaObject` might contain a high resolution image, a low resolution image, and a text description. For print publishing, the high resolution image is used; for online systems, either the high or low resolution image is used, possibly including the text description as an online alternative. In a text-only environment, the text description is used.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V5.0, `InlineMediaObject` will replace `InlineGraphic`.

## Parents

These elements contain `inlinemediaobject`: `abbrev`, `accel`, `ackno`, `acronym`, `action`, `application`, `artpagenums`, `attribution`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliosource`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `city`, `classname`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `collabname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `confdates`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`,

conftitle, constant, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, corpauthor, corpname, country, database, date, edition, email, emphasis, entry, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, fax, filename, firstname, firstterm, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glosssee, glossseealso, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, holder, honorific, initializer, inlineequation, interface, interfacename, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenumber, jobtitle, keycap, keycode, keysym, label, lineage, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, markup, medialabel, member, methodname, modespec, modifier, mousebutton, msgaud, msglevel, msgorig, olink, option, optional, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, parameter, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, primary, primaryie, productname, productnumber, programlisting, prompt, property, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, quote, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo, releaseinfo, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, sgmltag, shortaffil, simpara, state, street, structfield, structname, subscript, subtitle, superscript, surname, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocbac, tocentry, tocf, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, volumenum, wordasword, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in `inlinemediaobject`: `audioobject`, `imageobject`, `objectinfo`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## See Also

`alt`, `audioobject`, `caption`, `graphic`, `imageobject`, `inlinegraphic`, `mediaobject`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## Examples

In the following example, the `InlineEquation` uses `InlineMediaObject` to provide to alternate renderings for the equation. One is a graphic, the other is a text representation.

For display purposes, both in print and in the online presentation, the graphic is selected. If you were generating content for some other medium, a text only browser or a cell phone, for example, only the text representation might be selected.

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Einstein's most famous equation,
<inlineequation>
<inlinemediaobject>
<imageobject>
<imagedata fileref="figures/emc2.png"/>
</imageobject>
<textobject>
<phrase>E=mc<superscript>2</superscript></phrase>
</textobject>
</inlinemediaobject>
</inlineequation>, expresses the relationship between matter
and energy.
</para>
```

Einstein's most famous equation,  $e = mc^2$ , expresses the relationship between matter and energy.

# interface

interface -- An element of a GUI

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
interface ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage|accel)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

An `Interface` identifies some part of a graphical user interface. This element became obsolete in DocBook V3.0 with the introduction of `GUIButton`, `GUIIcon`, `GUILabel`, `GUIMenu`, `GUIMenuItem`, and `GUISubMenu`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the `Class` attribute will be dropped from `Interface`. Use one of the `GUI*` tags instead or subclass locally with the `Role` attribute.

The content model of `Interface` will also be constrained to `(#PCDATA | Replaceable | InlineGraphic)`.

## Parents

These elements contain `interface`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `menuchoice`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `ref-descriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in interface: `accel`, `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediabobject`, `replaceable`.

## Attributes

`moreinfo`

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `Interface`.

## See Also

`classname`, `property`, `structfield`, `structname`, `symbol`, `token`, `type`.

# interfacename

interfacename -- The name of an interface

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
interfacename ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The InterfaceName element is used to identify the name of an interface. This is likely to occur only in documentation about object-oriented programming systems, languages, and architectures.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain interfacename: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, oointerface, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in interfacename: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu,

guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

# invpartnumber

invpartnumber -- An inventory part number

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
invpartnumber ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `InvPartNumber` identifies a number (an “inventory part number”) in some organization-specific numbering scheme.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

DocBook does not control, or specify, the numbering scheme used by an `InvPartNumber`. It is likely that this number uniquely identifies the document within the organization that assigns the numbers.

## Parents

These elements contain `invpartnumber`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `invpartnumber`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`biblioid`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `productnumber`, `pubsnumber`, `seriesvolnums`, `volumenum`.

# isbn

isbn -- The International Standard Book Number of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
isbn ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An ISBN is the International Standard Book Number of a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

Deprecated as of DocBook V4.2, see biblioid instead.

## Parents

These elements contain isbn: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in isbn: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

biblioid, invpartnumber, issn, issuenum, productnumber, pubnumber, seriesvolnums, volumenum.

## Examples

For examples, see bibliography.

# issn

issn -- The International Standard Serial Number of a periodical

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
issn ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An ISSN is the International Standard Serial Number of a periodical.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

Deprecated as of DocBook V4.2, see `biblioid` instead.

## Parents

These elements contain `issn`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `issn`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`biblioid`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issuenum`, `productnumber`, `pubsnumber`, `seriesvolnums`, `volumenum`.

## Examples

For examples, see `bibliography`, `biblioset`.

# issuenum

issuenum -- The number of an issue of a journal

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
issuenum ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `IssueNum` contains the issue number of a periodical.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `issuenum`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `issuenum`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`biblioid`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `productnumber`, `pubsnumber`, `seriesvolnums`, `volumenum`.

## Examples

For examples, see `article`, `bibliography`, `bibliomset`.

# itemizedlist

itemizedlist -- A list in which each entry is marked with a bullet or other dingbat

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
itemizedlist ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?)?,
 (caution|important|note|tip|warning|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|anchor|bridgehead|remark|
 highlights|abstract|authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 listitem+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
mark	CDATA	<i>None</i>
spacing	<i>Enumeration:</i> compact normal	<i>None</i>

## Description

In an `ItemizedList`, each member of the list is marked with a bullet, dash, or other symbol.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

DocBook specifies neither the initial mark nor the sequence of marks to be used in nested lists. If explicit control is desired, the `Mark` attribute should be used. The values of the `Mark` attribute are expected to be keywords, not representations (numerical character references, entities, and so on.) of the actual mark.

In order to enforce a standard set of marks at your organization, it may be useful to construct a customization layer that limits the values of the `Mark` attribute to an enumerated list. See Chapter 5.

## Future Changes

Introductory material may appear before the first list item.

## Parents

These elements contain `itemizedlist`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `example`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `highlights`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informal-example`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `textobject`, `tip`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `itemizedlist`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `fieldsynopsis`, `formalpara`, `functsynopsis`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `note`, `para`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `simpara`, `synopsis`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `warning`.

## Attributes

`mark`

`Mark` contains a keyword indicating the type of mark to be used on items in this `ItemizedList`. `DocBook` does not provide a fixed list of appropriate keywords.

`spacing`

`Spacing` indicates whether or not the vertical space in the list should be minimized.

## See Also

`calloutlist`, `listitem`, `orderedlist`, `segmentedlist`, `simplelist`, `variablelist`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE itemizedlist PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<itemizedlist mark='opencircle'>
<listitem>
<para>
TeX and LaTeX
</para>
</listitem>
<listitem override='bullet'>
<para>
Troff
</para>
</listitem>
<listitem>
<para>
```

```
Lout
</para>
</listitem>
</itemizedlist>
```

- TeX and LaTeX
- Troff
- Lout

For additional examples, see also `highlights`, `para`, `xref`.

# itermset

itermset -- A set of index terms in the meta-information of a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
itermset ::=  
(indexterm+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

When `IndexTerms` use the `Zone` attribute to point to index ranges, it may be handy to hoist them out of the flow and put them in the document meta-information.

The `ITermSet` element, which occurs in the DocBook containers for meta-information, is one place to put them. `ITermSet` is simply a wrapper around a group of `IndexTerms`.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed.

Although more than one `ITermSet` may appear in the meta-information for a document, neither a relationship nor a specific facility for constructing a relationship is defined.

## Parents

These elements contain `itermset`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `bibliographyinfo`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `itermset`: `indexterm`.

## Examples

For examples, see `chapter`.

# jobtitle

jobtitle -- The title of an individual in an organization

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
jobtitle ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `JobTitle` describes the position of an individual within an organization. This tag is generally reserved for the name of the title for which an individual is paid.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `jobtitle`: `affiliation`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `jobtitle`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`affiliation`, `corpname`, `orgdiv`, `orgname`, `shortaffil`.

## Examples

For examples, see `author`, `authorgroup`.

# keycap

keycap -- The text printed on a key on a keyboard

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
keycap ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

The `KeyCap` identifies the text printed on a physical key on a computer keyboard. This is distinct from any scan code that it may generate (`KeyCode`), or any symbolic name (`KeySym`) that might exist for the key.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the content model of `KeyCap` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`).

## Parents

These elements contain `keycap`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycombo`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`,

refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, shortcut, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in keycap: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Keycap.

## See Also

accel, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, keycode, keycombo, keysym, menuchoice, mousebutton, shortcut.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <keycap>F1</keycap> key on an IBM PC keyboard generates the
scan code <keycode>0x3B</keycode> when pressed. This value
is defined as <keysym>KEY_F1</keysym> in
<filename class="headerfile">keyboard.h</filename>.
</para>
```

The **F1** key on an IBM PC keyboard generates the scan code 0x3B when pressed. This value is defined as `KEY_F1` in `keyboard.h`.

For additional examples, see also `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`.

# keycode

keycode -- The internal, frequently numeric, identifier for a key on a keyboard

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
keycode ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The KeyCode identifies the numeric value associated with a key on a computer keyboard. This is distinct from any scan code that it may generate (KeyCode), or any symbolic name (KeySym) that might exist for the key.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain keycode: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in keycode: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## See Also

accel, guibutton, guicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, keycap, keycombo, keysym, menuchoice, mousebutton, shortcut.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <keycap>F1</keycap> key on an IBM PC keyboard generates the
scan code <keycode>0x3B</keycode> when pressed. This value
is defined as <keysym>KEY_F1</keysym> in
<filename class="headerfile">keyboard.h</filename>.
</para>
```

The **F1** key on an IBM PC keyboard generates the scan code 0x3B when pressed. This value is defined as `KEY_F1` in `keyboard.h`.

For additional examples, see also `keycap`, `keysym`.

# keycombo

keycombo -- A combination of input actions

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
keycombo ::=  
( (keycap | keycombo | keysym | mousebutton) + )
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"
otheraction	CDATA	<i>None</i>
action	<i>Enumeration:</i> click double-click other press seq simul	<i>None</i>

## Description

For actions that require multiple keystrokes, mouse actions, or other physical input selections, the KeyCombo element provides a wrapper for the entire set of events.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The MoreInfo attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain keycombo: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, keycombo, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, shortcut, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in keycombo: keycap, keycombo, keysym, mousebutton.

## Attributes

action

Action identifies the nature of the action taken. If KeyCombo contains more than one action element, Simul is the default value for Action, otherwise there is no default.

If Other is specified, OtherAction should be used to identify the nature of the action.

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Keycombo.

otheraction

OtherAction should be used when Action is set to Other. It identifies the nature of the action in some application-specific way.

## See Also

accel, guibutton, guicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, keycap, keycode, keysym, menuchoice, mousebutton, shortcut.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
To move a highlighted region, use
<keycombo action='simul'>
  <keycap>Shift</keycap>
  <mousebutton>Button1</mousebutton>
</keycombo>
and drag the text to the new location.
</para>
```

To move a highlighted region, use **Shift+Button1** and drag the text to the new location.

For additional examples, see also `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `menuchoice`, `shortcut`.

# keysym

keysym -- The symbolic name of a key on a keyboard

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
keysym ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The KeySym identifies the symbolic name of a key on a computer keyboard. This is distinct from any scan code that it may generate (KeyCode), or any symbolic name (KeySym) that might exist for the key.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain keysym: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, keycombo, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, shortcut, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in keysym: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## See Also

accel, guibutton, guicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, keycap, keycode, keycombo, menuchoice, mousebutton, shortcut.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <keycap>F1</keycap> key on an IBM PC keyboard generates the
scan code <keycode>0x3B</keycode> when pressed. This value
is defined as <keysym>KEY_F1</keysym> in
<filename class="headerfile">keyboard.h</filename>.
</para>
```

The **F1** key on an IBM PC keyboard generates the scan code 0x3B when pressed. This value is defined as `KEY_F1` in `keyboard.h`.

For additional examples, see also `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `menuchoice`, `shortcut`.

# keyword

keyword -- One of a set of keywords describing the content of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
keyword ::=  
(#PCDATA)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `Keyword` is a term describing the content of a document. The keyword applies to the document component that contains it.

## Processing expectations

Keywords are rarely displayed to a reader. Usually, they are reserved for searching and retrieval purposes. If they are displayed, they may be displayed either inline or as a displayed block, depending on context.

Unlike `SubjectTerms`, which should be drawn from a controlled vocabulary, keywords may be chosen freely.

## Parents

These elements contain keyword: `keywordset`.

## See Also

`keywordset`, `subject`, `subjectset`, `subjectterm`.

## Examples

For examples, see `chapter`.

# keywordset

keywordset -- A set of keywords describing the content of a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
keywordset ::=  
(keyword+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A set of keywords, provided by the author, editor, publisher, and so on, can be stored in the document meta-information in a `KeywordSet`.

Keywords can form an important part of an automated indexing or searching strategy for a collection of documents.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Keywords are rarely displayed to a reader. Usually, they are reserved for searching and retrieval purposes.

Unlike `SubjectTerms`, which should be drawn from a controlled vocabulary, keywords may be chosen freely.

Although more than one `KeywordSet` may appear in the meta-information for a document, neither a relationship nor a specific facility for constructing a relationship is defined by DocBook.

Additionally, no relationship is defined between the `KeywordSets` of a document component and the `KeywordSets` of its parents or children.

## Parents

These elements contain `keywordset`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `bibliographyinfo`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `keywordset`: `keyword`.

## See Also

`keyword`, `subject`, `subjectset`, `subjectterm`.

## Examples

For examples, see chapter.

# label

label -- A label on a Question or Answer

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
label ::=
(#PCDATA|acronym|emphasis|trademark|link|olink|ulink|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The Label of a Question or Answer identifies the label that is to be used when formatting the question or answer.

## Processing expectations

The Label element is used as the label for the Question or Answer. A processing application might, for example, format the label as a heading preceding the question or answer contents, or it might format it as a run-in heading in the first paragraph of the question or answer.

## Parents

These elements contain label: answer, question.

## Children

The following elements occur in label: acronym, anchor, beginpage, emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

# legalnotice

legalnotice -- A statement of legal obligations or requirements

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
legalnotice ::=
(blockinfo?,title?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|formalpara|para|simpara|blockquote|indexterm|
 beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

LegalNotice identifies a statement of legal obligation, requirement, or warranty. It occurs in the meta-information for a document in which it frequently explains copyright, trademark, and other legal formalities of a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

LegalNotices may be presented in a number of ways. In printed documents, they often occur on the verso of the title page, sometimes in a reduced font size. Online, they may occur on the title page or in a separate document behind a hypertext link.

## Parents

These elements contain legalnotice: appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in legalnotice: beginpage, blockinfo, blockquote, calloutlist, caution, formalpara, glosslist, important, indexterm, itemizedlist, literallayout, note, orderedlist, para, programlisting, programlistingco, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, simpara, simplelist, tip, title, variablelist, warning.

## See Also

copyright, trademark.

## Examples

For examples, see `book`, `bookinfo`, `sect1info`.

# lhs

lhs -- The left-hand side of an EBNF production

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
lhs ::=  
(#PCDATA)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element is only available if you are using the EBNF Module.

The left-hand side (LHS) of a production is a non-terminal defined in terms of the right-hand side (RHS) of the Production.

## Parents

These elements contain lhs: production.

## Examples

For examples, see `productionset`.

# lineage

lineage -- The portion of a person's name indicating a relationship to ancestors

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
lineage ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Lineage is a portion of a person's name, typically “Jr.” or “Sr.”

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an `Address`, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain lineage: `address`, `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `author`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `editor`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `othercredit`, `partinfo`, `personname`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in lineage: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`affiliation`, `firstname`, `honorific`, `othername`, `surname`.

## Examples

For examples, see `authorgroup`.

# lineannotation

lineannotation -- A comment on a line in a verbatim listing

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
lineannotation ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `LineAnnotation` is an author or editor's comment on a line in one of the verbatim environments. These are annotations added by the documentor, not part of the original listing.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In verbatim environments like `ProgramListing`, which are often presented in a fixed width font, they may get special typographic treatment, such as italics.

If several `LineAnnotations` occur in the same listing, they may be aligned horizontally.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `lineannotation`: `classsynopsisinfo`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `literallayout`, `programlisting`, `rhs`, `screen`, `synopsis`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `lineannotation`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## See Also

`computeroutput`, `literallayout`, `programlisting`, `screen`, `screenshot`, `synopsis`, `userinput`.

## Examples

The following example, from the description of `Entry`, shows how `LineAnnotation` can be used to annotate a `Screen` listing:

```
<!DOCTYPE screen PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<screen>
<entry>          <lineannotation>Error, cannot have a line break before a block element</lineannotation>
<para>
A paragraph of text.
</para></entry>
</screen>

<entry>          Error, cannot have a line break before a block element
<para>
A paragraph of text.
</para></entry>
```

For additional examples, see also `productionset`.

# link

link -- A hypertext link

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
link ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>Required</i>
endterm	IDREF	<i>None</i>
type	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Link is a general purpose hypertext element. Usually, Link surrounds the text that should be made “hot,” (unlike XRef which must generate the text) but the EndTerm attribute can be used to copy text from another element.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

If the Link element has content, then that content is processed for output as the “hot” text. If the Link element has content and an EndTerm attribute, then the content is used and the EndTerm is ignored. If the Link element has an EndTerm attribute and no content, then the content of the element pointed to by EndTerm should be repeated at the location of the Link and used as the “hot” text.

Linking elements must not be nested within other linking elements (including themselves). Because DocBook is harmonizing towards XML, this restriction cannot easily be enforced by the DTD. The processing of nested linking elements is undefined.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `link`: `abbrev`, `ackno`, `acronym`, `action`, `application`, `artpagenums`, `attribution`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliosource`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `city`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `collabname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `confdates`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`, `conftitle`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `country`, `database`, `date`, `edition`, `email`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `fax`, `figure`, `filename`, `firstname`, `firstterm`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `holder`, `honorific`, `indexdiv`, `informalfigure`, `interfacename`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `jobtitle`, `keycap`, `label`, `lineage`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `manvolnum`, `member`, `modespec`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `orgdiv`, `orgname`, `otheraddr`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `para`, `parameter`, `phone`, `phrase`, `pob`, `postcode`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `programlisting`, `property`, `pubdate`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `quote`, `refentry`, `refentrytitle`, `refmiscinfo`, `refnamediv`, `refpurpose`, `releaseinfo`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `revnumber`, `revremark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `seriesvolnums`, `shortaffil`, `simplpara`, `state`, `street`, `subscript`, `subtitle`, `superscript`, `surname`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `volumenum`, `wordasword`, `year`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `link`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `gubutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`endterm`

`Endterm` points to the element whose content is to be used as the text of the link. If `Endterm` is supplied on a `Link` which has content, the value of `Endterm` should be ignored.

linkend

Linkend points to the target of the link.

type

Type is available for application-specific customization of the linking behavior.

## See Also

anchor, olink, ulink, xref.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE sect1 PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<sect1><title>Examples of <sgmltag>Link</sgmltag></title>

<para>
In this sentence <link linkend='nextsect'>this</link> word is
hot and points to the following section.
</para>

<para>
There is also a link to the section called
<quote><link linkend='nextsect' endterm="nextsect.title"/></quote>
in this sentence.
</para>

<sect2 id='nextsect'><title id='nextsect.title'>A Subsection</title>

<para>
This section only exists to be the target of a couple of links.
</para>

</sect2>
</sect1>
```

# listitem

listitem -- A wrapper for the elements of a list item

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
listitem ::=
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
override	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `Listitem` element is a wrapper around an item in a list. In an `ItemizedList` or an `OrderedList`, the `Listitem` surrounds the entire list item. In a `VariableList`, `Listitem` surrounds the “definition” part of the list item.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. List items usually generate the appropriate mark (a number or bullet) and appear indented, next to the mark. In a `VariableList`, the presentation may be influenced by the length of the `Term` or `Terms` that precede the list item and by attributes on the list itself.

## Parents

These elements contain `listitem`: `itemizedlist`, `orderedlist`, `varlistentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `listitem`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `ordered-`

list, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

override

Override specifies the keyword for the type of mark to be used on *this* ListItem instead of the mark currently in use for the list.

## See Also

calloutlist, itemizedlist, orderedlist, segmentedlist, simplelist, variablelist.

## Examples

For examples, see highlights, itemizedlist, orderedlist, para, variablelist, xref.

# literal

literal -- Inline text that is some literal value

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
literal ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediasobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

A `Literal` is some specific piece of data, taken literally, from a computer system. It is similar in some ways to `UserInput` and `ComputerOutput`, but is somewhat more of a general classification. The sorts of things that constitute literals varies by domain.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. A literal is frequently distinguished typographically and `Literal` is often used wherever that typographic presentation is desired.

The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

The content model of `Literal` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`) in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain `literal`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`,

glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in literal: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenu-item, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Literal.

## See Also

command, computeroutput, constant, markup, option, optional, parameter, prompt, replaceable, sgmltag, userinput, varname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>There are several undocumented settings for <varname>debug</varname>,
among them <literal>3.27</literal> to enable a complete trace and
<literal>3.8</literal> to debug the spell checker. For a complete
list of the possible settings,
see <filename class="headerfile">edit/debug.h</filename>.</para>
```

There are several undocumented settings for debug, among them 3.27 to enable a complete trace and 3.8 to debug the spell checker. For a complete list of the possible settings, see edit/debug.h.

For additional examples, see also programlistingco.

# literallayout

literallayout -- A block of text in which line breaks and white space are to be reproduced faithfully

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
literallayout ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage|co|coref|textobject|lineannotation)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> linespecific	"linespecific"
linenumbering	<i>Enumeration:</i> numbered unnumbered	<i>None</i>
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> monospaced normal	"normal"

## Description

LiteralLayout is a verbatim environment. Unlike the other verbatim environments, it does not have strong semantic overtones and may not imply a font change.

## Processing expectations

This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant.

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

Unlike `ProgramListing` and `Screen`, which usually imply a font change, `LiteralLayout` does not. How spaces are to be represented faithfully in a proportional font is not addressed by DocBook.

In DocBook V3.1, the `Class` attribute was added to give users control over the font used in `LiteralLayout`s. If the `Class` attribute is specified and its value is `Monospaced`, then the `LiteralLayout` will be presented in a monospaced font, probably the same one used for other verbatim environments. The default value for `Class` is `Normal`, meaning that no font change will occur.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Future Changes

The `xml:space` attribute is automatically provided in the XML DTD.

## Parents

These elements contain `literal`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `epigraph`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `textobject`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `literal`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `co`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `coref`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `textobject`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`class`

Class distinguishes between literal layout environments that are presented in a monospaced font and literal layout environments that have no implicit font change.

#### format

The `Format` attribute applies the `linespecific` notation to all `LiteralLayouts`. All white space and line breaks must be preserved.

#### linenumbering

**V4.0** Line numbering indicates whether or not the lines of a `LiteralLayout` are to be automatically numbered. The details of numbering (every line or only selected lines, on the left or right, etc.) are left up to the processing application. Be aware that not all processors are capable of numbering lines.

#### width

Width specifies the width (in characters) of the longest line in this `LiteralLayout` (formatters may use this value to determine scaling or rotation).

## See Also

`computeroutput`, `lineannotation`, `programlisting`, `screen`, `screenshot`, `synopsis`, `userinput`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE blockquote PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<blockquote>
<attribution>William Shakespeare, <citetitle>Henry V</citetitle></attribution>
<literallayout>
  O, for a muse of fire, that would ascend
The brightest heaven of invention!
A kingdom for a stage, princes to act,
And monarchs to behold the swelling scene!
</literallayout>
</blockquote>
```

O, for a muse of fire, that would ascend  
The brightest heaven of invention!  
A kingdom for a stage, princes to act,  
And monarchs to behold the swelling scene!

—William Shakespeare, *Henry V*

For additional examples, see also `attribution`, `part`.

# lot

lot -- A list of the titles of formal objects (as tables or figures) in a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
lot ::=
(beginpage?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 lotentry*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A LoT is a *list of titles*. It can be used to generate lists of Figures, Tables, Examples, or Equations.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. A list of titles in a Book usually introduces a forced page break.

Most often, lists of titles are generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain lot: appendix, article, book, chapter, part, preface, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section.

## Children

The following elements occur in lot: beginpage, lotentry, subtitle, title, titleabbrev.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE lot PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<lot><title>List of Figures</title>
```

```
<lotentry pagenum='5'>The Letters &ldquo;g&rdquo; and &ldquo;h&rdquo;  
  inside their boxes</lotentry>  
<lotentry pagenum='15'>Example figure produced by both TeX and  
  troff</lotentry>  
<!-- ... -->  
</lot>
```

# lotentry

lotentry -- An entry in a list of titles

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
lotentry ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
srccredit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
linkend	IDREF	<i>None</i>
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `LoTentry` identifies an individual title in a `LoT`. For example, in a *list of figures*, each individual figure title would be repeated in a `LoTentry` in the `LoT` for the list of figures.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain lotentry: lot.

## Children

The following elements occur in lotentry: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

linkend

Linkend points to the element which is represented in this LoTEntry.

pagenum

PageNum indicates the page on which this entry occurs in some version of the printed document.

srccredit

SrcCredit contains details about the source of the element referenced by this entry.

## Examples

For examples, see lot.

# manvolnum

manvolnum -- A reference volume number

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
manvolnum ::=
(#PCDATA|acronym|emphasis|trademark|link|olink|ulink|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

In a DocBook reference page, the `ManVolNum` holds the number of the volume in which the `RefEntry` belongs.

The notion of a volume number is historical. UNIX manual pages (“man pages”), for which `RefEntry` was devised, were typically stored in three ring binders. Each bound manual was a volume in a set and contained information about a particular class of things. For example, volume 1 was for user commands, and volume 8 was for administrator commands.

Volume numbers need not be strictly numerical; volume “1” frequently held manual pages for local additions to the system, and the X Window System manual pages had an “x” in the volume number: for example, 1x.

## Processing expectations

The content of `ManVolNum` is usually printed in parentheses after the element title or citation.

## Parents

These elements contain `manvolnum`: `citerefentry`, `refmeta`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `manvolnum`: `acronym`, `anchor`, `beginpage`, `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
For a further description of print formats, consult the
<citerefentry><refentrytitle>printf</refentrytitle>
<manvolnum>3S</manvolnum></citerefentry> manual page.
</para>
```

For a further description of print formats, consult the `printf(3S)` manual page.

For additional examples, see also `citerefentry`, `refentry`.

# markup

markup -- A string of formatting markup in text that is to be represented literally

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
markup ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Markup contains a string of formatting markup that is to be represented literally in the text. The utility of this element is almost wholly constrained to books about document formatting tools.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain markup: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glosssee, glossseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in markup: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## See Also

computeroutput, constant, literal, option, optional, parameter, prompt, replaceable, sgmltag, userinput, varname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
A presentation system using TeX as a back end might allow you
to insert inline markup, such as <markup role="tex">$x^2$</markup>,
using TeX syntax directly.
</para>
```

A presentation system using TeX as a back end might allow you to insert inline markup, such as  $x^2$ , using TeX syntax directly.

# medialabel

medialabel -- A name that identifies the physical medium on which some information resides

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
medialabel ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> cartridge cdrom disk tape	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `MediaLabel` element identifies the name of a specific piece of physical media, such as a tape or disk label. Usually, a media label is something external, written by hand on the media itself, for example, but it may also refer to digital labels.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `medialabel`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `medialabel`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## Attributes

class

Class indicates the type of media labeled.

## See Also

application, database, filename, hardware, productname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
To install <application>The Great Foo</application>, insert the disk
labelled <medialabel>TGF Setup 1</medialabel> and run
<command>setup</command>.
</para>
```

To install The Great Foo, insert the disk labelled *TGF Setup 1* and run **setup**.

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The weekly incremental backup tape is labelled
<medialabel>Backup <replaceable>nn</replaceable></medialabel>, where
<replaceable>nn</replaceable> is the week number.
</para>
```

The weekly incremental backup tape is labelled *Backup nn*, where *nn* is the week number.

# mediaobject

mediaobject -- A displayed media object (video, audio, image, etc.)

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
mediaobject ::=
(objectinfo?,
 (videoobject|audioobject|imageobject|textobject)+,
 caption?)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element contains a set of alternative “media objects.” In DocBook V3.1, three types of external objects are defined: VideoObjects, AudioObjects, and ImageObjects. Additional textual descriptions may be provided with TextObjects.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

The primary purpose of the `MediaObject` is to provide a wrapper around a set of alternative presentations of the same information.

If possible, the processing system should use the content of the first object within the `MediaObject`. If the first object cannot be used, the remaining objects should be considered in the order that they occur. A processor should use the first object that it can, although it is free to choose any of the remaining objects if the primary one cannot be used.

Under no circumstances should more than one object in a `MediaObject` be used or presented at the same time.

For example, a `MediaObject` might contain a video, a high resolution image, a low resolution image, a long text description, and a short text description. In a “high end” online system, the video is used. For print publishing, the high resolution image is used. For other online systems, either the high or low resolution image is used, possibly including the short text description as the online alternative. In a text-only environment, either the long or short text descriptions are used.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V5.0, `MediaObject` will replace `Graphic`.

## Parents

These elements contain `mediaobject`: `answer`, `appendix`, `appendixinfo`, `article`, `articleinfo`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliographyinfo`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `bookinfo`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `chapterinfo`, `constraintdef`, `entry`, `equation`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossaryinfo`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `indexinfo`, `informalequation`,

informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, objectinfo, orderedlist, para, partinfo, partintro, preface, prefaceinfo, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1, refsect1info, refsect2, refsect2info, refsect3, refsect3info, refsection, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdiv, refsynopsisdivinfo, revdescription, screenshot, sect1, sect1info, sect2, sect2info, sect3, sect3info, sect4, sect4info, sect5, sect5info, section, sectioninfo, setindex, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebar, sidebarinfo, simplesect, step, synopsis, table, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in `mediaobject`: `audioobject`, `caption`, `imageobject`, `objectinfo`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## See Also

`alt`, `audioobject`, `caption`, `graphic`, `imageobject`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## Examples

For examples, see `audioobject`, `imageobject`, `informalfigure`, `svg-svg`, `videoobject`.

# mediaobjectco

mediaobjectco -- A media object that contains callouts

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
mediaobjectco ::=
(objectinfo?, imageobjectco,
 (imageobjectco|textobject)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A MediaObjectCO is a wrapper around a set of alternative, annotated media objects.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

See also MediaObject.

## Parents

These elements contain mediaobjectco: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, constraintdef, example, figure, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, informalfigure, itemizedlist, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, screenshot, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in mediaobjectco: imageobjectco, objectinfo, textobject.

## See Also

areaspec, calloutlist, co, coref, graphicco, imageobjectco, programlistingco, screenco.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE mediaobjectco PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<mediaobjectco>
<imageobjectco>
<areaspec units="calspair">
```

```
<areaset id="oneway" coords="">
  <area id="oneway1" coords="300 400"/>
  <area id="oneway2" coords="325 340"/>
</areaset>
<area id="myhouse" coords="425 590"/>
</areaspec>
<imageobject>
<imagedata fileref="http://somap.site.com/EARTH?USA?MA?01007"/>
</imageobject>
</imageobjectco>
</mediaobjectco>
```



# member

member -- An element of a simple list

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
member ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Member is an element of a SimpleList. Unlike the other lists, items in a SimpleList are constrained to character data and inline elements.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. How the inline Members are formatted with respect to each other is controlled by the containing SimpleList.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain member: simplelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in member: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Examples

For examples, see `simplelist`.

# menuchoice

menuchoice -- A selection or series of selections from a menu

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
menuchoice ::=
(shortcut?,
 (guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|
 interface)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

In applications that present graphical user interfaces, it is often necessary to select an item, or a series of items, from a menu in order to accomplish some action. The `MenuChoice` element provides a wrapper to contain the complete combination of selections.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

`MenuChoice` may generate arrows or other punctuation between multiple GUI elements. The `ShortCut` may be suppressed, or sometimes it is presented in parentheses after the rest of the items.

## Parents

These elements contain menuchoice: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in menuchoice: guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, interface, shortcut.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the MenuChoice.

## See Also

accel, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, mousebutton, shortcut.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
You can exit from GNU Emacs with
<menuchoice>
  <shortcut>
    <keycombo><keysym>C-x</keysym><keysym>C-c</keysym></keycombo>
  </shortcut>
  <guimenu>Files</guimenu>
  <guimenuitem>Exit Emacs</guimenuitem>
</menuchoice>.
</para>
```

You can exit from GNU Emacs with Files->Exit Emacs (**C-x-C-c**).

Compare this example with the similar example in GUIMenu. Here the KeyCombo and MenuChoice elements are required to process thier content in some intelligent way in order to produce useful output.

For additional examples, see also shortcut.

# methodname

methodname -- The name of a method

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
methodname ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `MethodName` element is used to identify the name of a method. This is likely to occur only in documentation about object-oriented programming systems, languages, and architectures.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `methodname`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constructorsynopsis`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `methodname`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

# methodparam

methodparam -- Parameters to a method

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
methodparam ::=  
(modifier*, type?,  
  ((parameter, initializer?) |  
   funcparams),  
  modifier*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
rep	<i>Enumeration:</i> norepeat repeat	"norepeat"
choice	<i>Enumeration:</i> opt plain req	"req"

## Description

In the syntax summary of a `ConstructorSynopsis`, `DestructorSynopsis`, or `MethodSynopsis`, `MethodParam` provides the description of a parameter to the method. Typically, this includes the data type of the parameter and its name, but may also include an initial value and other modifiers.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. For a complete description of the processing expectations, see `ClassSynopsis`.

## Parents

These elements contain `methodparam`: `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `methodsynopsis`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `methodparam`: `funcparams`, `initializer`, `modifier`, `parameter`, `type`.

## Attributes

choice

**V4.0** Choice indicates whether the MethodParam is required (Req or Plain) or optional (Opt). Arguments identified as Plain are required, but are shown without additional decoration.

rep

**V4.0** A Rep value of Repeat indicates that the MethodParam is repeatable.

# methodsynopsis

methodsynopsis -- A syntax summary for a method

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
methodsynopsis ::=  
(modifier*,  
 (type|void)?,  
 methodname,  
 (methodparam+|void),  
 exceptionname*,modifier*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
language	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `MethodSynopsis` contains the syntax summary of a method (generally speaking, methods in the object-oriented programming language sense).

This is one of the few places where DocBook attempts to model as well as describe. Unlike `FuncSynopsis` which was designed with C language function prototypes in mind, the content model of `MethodSynopsis` was designed to capture a wide range of semantics.

## Processing expectations

For the most part, the processing application is expected to generate all of the parenthesis, semicolons, commas, and so on. required in the rendered synopsis.

## Parents

These elements contain `methodsynopsis`: `answer`, `appendix`, `application`, `article`, `attribution`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliomisc`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `foreignphrase`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `olink`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `phrase`, `preface`, `procedure`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `remark`, `revdescription`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `seg`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplesect`, `step`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tip`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in methodsynopsis: `exceptionname`, `methodname`, `methodparam`, `modifier`, `type`, `void`.

# mml:math

mml:math -- A MathML equation

## Synopsis

If the MathML Module is used, `Equations` and `InlineEquations` can include `mml:math` equations.

## Description

The Mathematical Markup Language<sup>i</sup> Recommendation from the W3C defines the Mathematical Markup Language, or MathML. MathML is an XML application for describing mathematical notation and capturing both its structure and content.

A complete description of MathML is outside the scope of this reference.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE informalequation
    PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook MathML Module V1.0//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/mathml/1.0/dbmathml.dtd">
<informalequation>
<mml:math><mml:apply><mml:divide/></mml:apply></mml:math>
</informalequation>
```

<sup>i</sup><http://www.w3.org/TR/MathML2/>

# modespec

modespec -- Application-specific information necessary for the completion of an OLink

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
modespec ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
application	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> BMP CGM-BINARY CGM-CHAR CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a IGES JPEG JPG linespecific PCX PIC PNG PS SGML SVG TBL TEX TIFF WMF WPG	<i>None</i>

## Description

ModeSpec contains application-specific instructions required to process an OLink. See OLink.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element provides data for processing but is not expected to be rendered directly.

## Parents

These elements contain modespec: appendixinfo, application, articleinfo, attribution, bibliographyinfo, bibliomisc, blockinfo, bookinfo, bridgehead, chapterinfo, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossaryinfo, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, indexinfo, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, objectinfo, olink, para, partinfo, phrase, prefaceinfo, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentryinfo, refentrytitle, referenceinfo, refpurpose, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in modespec: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## Attributes

application

Application indicates the nature of the action required to complete the OLink. Application must be a notation declared in the DTD.

## Examples

For examples, see olink.

# modifier

modifier -- Modifiers in a synopsis

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
modifier ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `Modifier` identifies additional information about some identifier. For example, the public or private nature of a `OOClass` name, or information about a static or synchronized nature of a `MethodSynopsis`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `modifier`: `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `fieldsynopsis`, `methodparam`, `methodsynopsis`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `modifier`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

# mousebutton

mousebutton -- The conventional name of a mouse button

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
mousebutton ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

The `MouseButton` element identifies the conventional name of a mouse button. Because mouse buttons are not physically labelled, the name is just that, a convention. Adding explicit markup for the naming of mouse buttons allow easier translation from one convention to another and might allow an online system to adapt to right- or left-handed usage.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain `mousebutton`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycombo`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `shortcut`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `mousebutton`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `MouseButton`.

## See Also

`accel`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `menuchoice`, `shortcut`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Select a region of text by dragging the mouse pointer with the
<mousebutton>left</mousebutton> mouse button depressed. Copy the
selected text to a new location by placing the mouse pointer at the
desired position and pressing the <mousebutton>middle</mousebutton>
button.
</para>
```

Select a region of text by dragging the mouse pointer with the left mouse button depressed. Copy the selected text to a new location by placing the mouse pointer at the desired position and pressing the middle button.

For additional examples, see also `keycombo`.

# msg

msg -- A message in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msg ::=
(title?, msgmain,
(msgsub|msgrel)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

In a `MsgSet`, each `MsgEntry` contains at least one `Msg`. A `Msg` consists of a main message (`MsgMain`), and optionally one or more submessages (`MsgSub`) or related messages (`MsgRel`).

Additional information or explanation for the message is contained in the siblings of `Msg` within the `MsgEntry`.

See `MsgSet`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes suppressed.

On the whole, the semantics of `MsgSet` are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain `msg: msgentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `msg: msgmain, msgrel, msgsub, title`.

## Examples

For examples, see `msgset`.

# msgaud

msgaud -- The audience to which a message in a message set is relevant

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
msgaud ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

MsgAud is part of the additional information associated with a message in a MsgSet. It identifies the audience to which a particular Msg is relevant.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

DocBook doesn't specify anything about how a particular audience might be identified, or how different audiences are distinguished.

On the whole, the semantics of MsgSet are not clearly defined.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain msgaud: msginfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in msgaud: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Examples

For examples, see msgset.

# msgentry

msgentry -- A wrapper for an entry in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msgentry ::=  
(msg+,msginfo?,msgexplan*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

In a `MsgSet`, each `MsgEntry` contains some number of messages (`Msgs`) and additional informative and explanatory material about them.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

On the whole, the semantics of `MsgSet` are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain `msgentry`: `msgset`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `msgentry`: `msg`, `msgexplan`, `msginfo`.

## Examples

For examples, see `msgset`.

# msgexplan

msgexplan -- Explanatory material relating to a message in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msgexplan ::=
(title?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `MsgExplan` contains some sort of explanatory information about a `Msg` or a set of `Msgs` in a `MsgEntry`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes suppressed.

If a `MsgEntry` contains multiple `Msgs` and multiple `MsgExplans`, DocBook makes no assertions about how they are related.

On the whole, the semantics of `MsgSet` are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain `msgexplan`: `msgentry`, `simplemsgentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `msgexplan`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `remark`,

screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, tip, title, variablelist, warning.

## Examples

For examples, see msgset.

# msginfo

msginfo -- Information about a message in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msginfo ::=  
( (msglevel|msgorig|msgaud)* )
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

MsgInfo provides additional information about a Msg in a MsgEntry.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

On the whole, the semantics of MsgSet are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain msginfo: msgentry.

## Children

The following elements occur in msginfo: msgaud, msglevel, msgorig.

## Examples

For examples, see msgset.

# msglevel

msglevel -- The level of importance or severity of a message in a message set

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
msglevel ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

MsgLevel is part of the additional information associated with a message in a MsgSet. It identifies the relative importance or severity of a message.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

On the whole, the semantics of MsgSet are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain msglevel: msginfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in msglevel: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## Examples

For examples, see msgset.

# msgmain

msgmain -- The primary component of a message in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msgmain ::=  
(title?,msgtext)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Every `Msg` must have one primary message. This is stored in the `MsgMain`. The primary message is distinguished from any number of submessages (`MsgSub`) or related messages (`MsgRel`) that a `Msg` might have.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

On the whole, the semantics of `MsgSet` are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain msgmain: `msg`.

## Children

The following elements occur in msgmain: `msgtext`, `title`.

## Examples

For examples, see `msgset`.

# msgorig

msgorig -- The origin of a message in a message set

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
msgorig ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

MsgOrig is part of the additional information associated with a message in a MsgSet. It identifies the origin or source of a particular Msg, for example, a piece of hardware, the operating system, or an application.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

On the whole, the semantics of MsgSet are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain msgorig: msginfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in msgorig: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## Examples

For examples, see msgset.

# msgrel

msgrel -- A related component of a message in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msgrel ::=  
(title?,msgtext)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Every `Msg` has one primary message (`MsgMain`). It may also have any number of related messages, stored in `MsgRel` elements within the same `Msg`.

Related messages are usually messages that appear elsewhere in response to the same event (or set of events) that triggered the main message. For example, if a network client produces a failure or warning message, a related message might appear on the server console.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

On the whole, the semantics of `MsgSet` are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain `msgrel`: `msg`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `msgrel`: `msgtext`, `title`.

## Examples

For examples, see `msgset`.

# msgset

msgset -- A detailed set of messages, usually error messages

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msgset ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?)*,
 (msgentry+|simplemsgentry+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

MsgSet is a complex structure designed to hold a detailed set of messages, usually error messages. In addition to the actual text of each message, it can contain additional information about each message and the messages related to it.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

On the whole, the semantics of MsgSet are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain msgset: appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, chapter, glossary, glossdiv, index, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, partintro, preface, procedure, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, simplesect, step.

## Children

The following elements occur in msgset: blockinfo, msgentry, simplemsgentry, title, titleabbrev.

## See Also

errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE msgset PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<msgset>
  <msgentry>
    <msg>
      <msgmain>
```

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

```

    <msgtext><para>Record failed CRC</para></msgtext>
</msgmain>
<msgsub>
    <msgtext><para>Record <replaceable>n</replaceable>
        in <replaceable>database</replaceable></para></msgtext>
</msgsub>
<msgrel>
    <msgtext><para>File read error on
        <replaceable>database</replaceable></para></msgtext>
</msgrel>
<msgrel>
    <msgtext><para>Panic! Corrupt record!</para></msgtext>
</msgrel>
</msg>
<msginfo>
    <msglevel>severe</msglevel>
    <msgorig>server</msgorig>
    <msgaud>all</msgaud>
</msginfo>
<msgexplan>
    <para>
        Indicates that some sort of error occurred while attempting to load
        a record from the database. Retry. If failure persists,
        contact the database administrator.
    </para>
</msgexplan>
</msgentry>
<!-- more entries -->
</msgset>

```

Record failed CRC

Record *n* in *database*

File read error on *database*

Panic! Corrupt record!

**Level:** severe

**Origin:** server

**Audience:** all

Indicates that some sort of error occurred while attempting to load a record from the database. Retry. If failure persists, contact the database administrator.

# msgsub

msgsub -- A subcomponent of a message in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msgsub ::=  
(title?,msgtext)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `MsgSub` represents some subpart of a message. Different `MsgSubs` might arise in different contexts.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

On the whole, the semantics of `MsgSet` are not clearly defined.

## Parents

These elements contain `msgsub`: `msg`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `msgsub`: `msgtext`, `title`.

## Examples

For examples, see `msgset`.

# msgtext

msgtext -- The actual text of a message component in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
msgtext ::=
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `MsgText` is the actual content of the message in a `MsgMain`, `MsgSub`, or `MsgRel`.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context.

On the whole, the semantics of `MsgSet` are not clearly defined.

## Future Changes

`MsgText` is currently one of the general, technical inlines by accident. In DocBook V4.0, it will be limited to use within a `MsgSet`.

## Parents

These elements contain `msgtext`: `msgmain`, `msgrel`, `msgsub`, `simplemsgentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `msgtext`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `ordered-`

list, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Examples

For examples, see msgset.

# nonterminal

nonterminal -- A non-terminal in an EBNF production

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
nonterminal ::=  
(#PCDATA)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
def	CDATA	<i>Required</i>

## Description

This element is only available if you are using the EBNF Module.

A NonTerminal is a symbol in an EBNF Production that represents a portion of the grammar.

## Parents

These elements contain nonterminal: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, rhs, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Attributes

def

**EBNF** FIXME:

## note

note -- A message set off from the text

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
note ::=
(title?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table|
 procedure|sidebar|anchor|bridgehead|remark|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Note is an admonition set off from the main text.

In some types of documentation, the semantics of admonitions are clearly defined (Caution might imply the possibility of harm to equipment whereas Warning might imply harm to a person), but DocBook makes no such assertions.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Often outputs the generated text “Note” or some other visible indication of the type of admonition, especially if a Title is not present. Sometimes outputs a graphical icon or another symbol as well.

## Parents

These elements contain note: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, chapter, colophon, dedication, entry, glossary, glossdiv, highlights, index, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, variablelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in note: address, anchor, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, orderedlist, para,

procedure, programlisting, programlistingco, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, title, variablelist.

## See Also

caution, important, tip, warning.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE note PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<note><title>Upcoming Changes</title>
<para>
Future versions of this feature may not be backward-compatible.
Consider implementing the revised interface now.
</para>
</note>
```

### Upcoming Changes

Future versions of this feature may not be backward-compatible. Consider implementing the revised interface now.

# objectinfo

objectinfo -- Meta-information for an object

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
objectinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ObjectInfo` element is a wrapper for the meta-information about a video, audio, image, or text object.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

`AuthorBlurb` and `Affiliation` will be removed from the inline content of `DivisionInfo` in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain `objectinfo`: `audioobject`, `imageobject`, `inlinemediaobject`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `textobject`, `videoobject`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `objectinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `biblioset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itemset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

## Examples

For examples, see `audioobject`.

# olink

olink -- A link that addresses its target indirectly, through an entity

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
olink ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
localinfo	CDATA	<i>None</i>
type	CDATA	<i>None</i>
linkmode	IDREF	<i>None</i>
targetptr	CDATA	<i>None</i>
targetdoc	CDATA	<i>None</i>
targetdocent	ENTITY	<i>None</i>

## Description

Unlike `Link` and `ULink`, the semantics of `OLink` are application-specific. `OLink` provides a mechanism for establishing links across documents, where `ID/IDREF` linking is not possible and `ULink` is inappropriate.

In general terms, the strategy employed by `OLink` is to point to the target document via an external general entity, and point into that document in some application-specific way.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

OLink points to its target primarily with the `TargetDocEnt` attribute. `TargetDocEnt` must be the name of an entity (previously declared in the DTD or in the document subset).

Because `TargetDocEnt` is an entity attribute, the entity used as its value must be declared with a notation. Because the target is usually another SGML or XML document, the notation SGML is most often used:

```
<!ENTITY myotherdoc SYSTEM "myotherdoc.sgm" NDATA SGML>
```

The semantics of the link are controlled by three other attributes: `LinkMode`, `LocalInfo`, and `Type`. The `LinkMode` attribute points to a `ModeSpec`. The content of `ModeSpec` describes the semantic of the link in an entirely application-specific way.

The values of `LocalInfo` and `Type` may also influence the application. For example, if the `ModeSpec` describes some sort of query, `LocalInfo` might hold the query text (allowing multiple OLinks to use the same `ModeSpec` to achieve different queries with the same query engine).

Linking elements must not be nested within other linking elements (including themselves). Because DocBook is harmonizing towards XML, this restriction cannot easily be enforced by the DTD. The processing of nested linking elements is undefined.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain olink: abbrev, ackno, acronym, action, application, artpagenums, attribution, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliosource, bridgehead, citation, citebiblioid, citetitle, city, classsynopsisinfo, collabname, command, computeroutput, confdates, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, corpauthor, corpname, country, database, date, edition, email, emphasis, entry, fax, figure, filename, firstname, firstterm, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, holder, honorific, indexdiv, informalfigure, interfacename, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, jobtitle, keycap, label, lineage, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, member, modespec, msgaud, olink, option, optional, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, parameter, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, primary, primaryie, productname, productnumber, programlisting, property, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, quote, refentry, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo, refnamediv, refpurpose, releaseinfo, remark, replaceable, revnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, shortaffil, simpara, state, street, subscript, subtitle, superscript, surname, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput, volumenum, wordasword, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in olink: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

linkmode

LinkMode points to the ModeSpec which provides additional application-specific information for resolving this OLink.

localinfo

LocalInfo hold additional information that may be used with the ModeSpec (pointed to by LinkMode) by the application when resolving this OLink.

targetdocent

TargetDocEnt specifies the name of an entity that is to be used as part of the OLink. Exactly how the link is resolved is application dependent and may be influenced by the MoreInfo and LocalInfo attributes.

type

Type is available for application-specific customization of the linking behavior.

## See Also

anchor, link, ulink, xref.

## Examples

In this example, we see how an OLink might be used for searching. Here the ModeSpec describes the search query (in a fictitious and entirely concocted syntax): “look in the titles of sections and return links using the title as the text of the link”. When the user selects the link, the application is expected to perform the query and then might display the list of titles as a pop-up window in the user interface.

```
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd" [
```

```
<!ENTITY refbook SYSTEM "refbook.sgm" CDATA SGML>
]>
<chapter>
<chapterinfo>
  <modespec id="slquery">query in sect*, title return link text title</modespec>
</chapterinfo>
<title>Printing</title>

<para>
Blah, blah, blah.
</para>

<sect1><title>See Also</title>
<para>
For more information <olink targetdocent="refbook" linkmode="slquery"
localinfo="print or printing">about printing</olink>, consult
the <ulink url="refbook.sgm">reference manual</ulink>.
</para>
</sect1>

</chapter>
```

# ooclass

ooclass -- A class in an object-oriented programming language

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
ooclass ::=  
(modifier*,classname)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The OOCClass element identifies programming language classes, generally from object-oriented programming languages. The OOCClass is a wrapper for the ClassName plus some Modifiers.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain ooclass: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsis, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in ooclass: classname, modifier.

# ooexception

ooexception -- An exception in an object-oriented programming language

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
ooexception ::=  
(modifier*, exceptionname)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `OOException` element identifies programming language exceptions, generally from object-oriented programming languages. The `OOException` is a wrapper for the `ExceptionName` plus some `Modifiers`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `ooexception`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsis`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `ooexception`: `exceptionname`, `modifier`.

# oointerface

oointerface -- An interface in an object-oriented programming language

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
oointerface ::=  
(modifier*,interfacename)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `OOInterface` element identifies programming language interfaces, generally from object-oriented programming languages. The `OOInterface` is a wrapper for the `InterfaceName` plus some `Modifiers`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `oointerface`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsis`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `oointerface`: `interfacename`, `modifier`.

# option

option -- An option for a software command

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
option ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Option identifies an optional argument to a software command.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

DocBook does not specify whether or not a symbol (such as `-` or `/`) is generated before the content of `Option`, or what that symbol might be. Generating the text may or may not be desirable, but in either case, it is an interchange issue. See Appendix F.

## Future Changes

The content model of `Option` will be constrained to `(#PCDATA | Replaceable | InlineGraphic)` in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain `option`: `action`, `application`, `arg`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `group`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`,

term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in option: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenu-item, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## See Also

computeroutput, constant, literal, markup, optional, parameter, prompt, replaceable, sgmltag, userinput, varname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <option>-a</option> option on the <acronym>UNIX</acronym>
<command>ls</command> command or the <option>/r</option> option on the
<acronym>DOS</acronym> <command>attrib</command>
command, for example.
</para>
```

The `-a` option on the UNIX **ls** command or the `/r` option on the DOS **attrib** command, for example.

For additional examples, see also [optional](#), [refentry](#).

# optional

optional -- Optional information

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
optional ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `Optional` element indicates that a specified argument, option, or other text is optional. The precise meaning of “optional” varies according to the application or process being documented.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

Optional arguments in a `Synopsis` are usually given special typographic treatment, often they are surrounded by square brackets. The `Optional` tag is expected to *generate* the brackets.

Outside a `Synopsis`, the typographic treatment of `Optional` is application-specific.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `optional`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`,

secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in optional: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenu-item, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## See Also

computeroutput, constant, literal, markup, option, parameter, prompt, replaceable, sgmltag, userinput, varname.

## Examples

The UNIX `ls` command could be documented as follows:

```
<!DOCTYPE synopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<synopsis>
ls <optional><option>-abcCdfFgilLmnopqrRstuxl</option></optional>
    <optional>names</optional>
</synopsis>
```

```
ls [-abcCdfFgilLmnopqrRstuxl]
    [names]
```

which might generate the following output:

```
ls [ -abcCdfFgilLmnopqrRstuxl ]
    [names]
```

# orderedlist

orderedlist -- A list in which each entry is marked with a sequentially incremented label

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
orderedlist ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?)?,
 (caution|important|note|tip|warning|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|anchor|bridgehead|remark|
 highlights|abstract|authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 listitem+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
inheritnum	<i>Enumeration:</i> ignore inherit	"ignore"
spacing	<i>Enumeration:</i> compact normal	<i>None</i>
continuation	<i>Enumeration:</i> continues restarts	"restarts"
numeration	<i>Enumeration:</i> arabic loweralpha lowerroman upperalpha upperroman	<i>None</i>

## Description

In an `OrderedList`, each member of the list is marked with a numeral, letter, or other sequential symbol (such as roman numerals).

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

If no value is specified for `Numeration`, Arabic numerals (1, 2, 3, ...) are to be used.

In nested lists, DocBook does not specify the sequence of numerations.

Note that the attributes of `OrderedList` have a significant influence on the processing expectations.

## Future Changes

Introductory material may appear before the first list item.

## Parents

These elements contain `orderedlist`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `example`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `highlights`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informal-example`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `textobject`, `tip`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `orderedlist`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `fieldsynopsis`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `note`, `para`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `simpara`, `synopsis`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `warning`.

## Attributes

`continuation`

If `Continuation` is specified, it indicates how list numbering should begin relative to the immediately preceding list. `Restarts`, the default, indicates that numbering should begin again at 1. `Continues` indicates that numbering should begin where the preceding list left off.

`inheritnum`

In a nested list, `InheritNum` indicates whether or not the enumeration of interior lists should include the numbers of containing list items. If `InheritNum` is `Inherit` then the third item of a list inside the second item of a list inside the fourth item of a list might be enumerated as “4.2.3”. If it is `Ignore`, the default, then it would be simply “3”. (The `Numeration` attribute controls the actual format of the item numbers, of course.)

`numeration`

`Numeration` specifies the style of numbering to be used for items in the current `OrderedList`.

`spacing`

`Spacing` indicates whether or not the vertical space in the list should be minimized.

## See Also

calloutlist, itemizedlist, listitem, segmentedlist, simplelist, variablelist.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE orderedlist PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<orderedlist numeration="lowerroman">
<listitem>
<para>One</para>
</listitem>
<listitem>
<para>Two</para>
</listitem>
<listitem>
<para>Three</para>
</listitem>
<listitem>
<para>Four</para>
</listitem>
</orderedlist>
```

- i. One
- ii. Two
- iii. Three
- iv. Four

# orgdiv

orgdiv -- A division of an organization

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
orgdiv ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

OrgDiv identifies a division in an organization, such as “Chrysler” in “General Motors.”

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain orgdiv: affiliation.

## Children

The following elements occur in orgdiv: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

affiliation, corpname, jobtitle, orgname, shortaffil.

## Examples

For examples, see author.

# orgname

orgname -- The name of an organization other than a corporation

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
orgname ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
otherclass	CDATA	<i>None</i>
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> consortium corporation informal nonprofit other	<i>None</i>

## Description

An OrgName identifies the name of an organization or corporation. Outside of an Affiliation, CorpName is a more appropriate element for the name of a corporation.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain orgname: affiliation, appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in orgname: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

affiliation, corpname, jobtitle, orgdiv, publishername, shortaffil.

## Examples

For examples, see author, authorgroup, bookinfo, contractsponsor.

# otheraddr

otheraddr -- Uncategorized information in address

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
otheraddr ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Within an Address, OtherAddr is a wrapper for parts of an address other than Street, POB, Postcode, City, State, Country, Phone, Fax, and Email, all of which have elements specific to their content.

In early versions of DocBook, Address was not allowed to contain character data (it was a database-like collection of fields). In that context, a wrapper was necessary for any random pieces of information that might be required for an address. With the introduction of character data directly in the Address element, OtherAddr may have lost most of its *raison d'être*.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. This element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an Address.

## Parents

These elements contain otheraddr: address.

## Children

The following elements occur in otheraddr: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

address, city, country, email, fax, phone, pob, postcode, state, street.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>Please deliver to:
<address>
<othername>The Law Offices of Dewey, Cheatem, and Howe</othername>
<street>100 Main Street</street>
```

```
<otheraddr>Third Floor</otheraddr>  
<city>Anytown</city>, <state>NY</state> <postcode>12345</postcode>  
<country>USA</country>  
</address>  
</para>
```

Please deliver to:

The Law Offices of Dewey, Cheatem, and Howe  
100 Main Street  
Third Floor  
Anytown, NY 12345  
USA

# othercredit

othercredit -- A person or entity, other than an author or editor, credited in a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
othercredit ::=
((personname|
 (honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|othername|affiliation|
  authorblurb|contrib)+),
 (personblurb|email|address)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

DocBook allows you to directly identify Authors and Editors. OtherCredit provides a mechanism for identifying other individuals, for example, contributors or production editors, in a similar context.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of OtherCredit in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to hold OtherCredit, AuthorBlurb, and Affiliation.

## Parents

These elements contain othercredit: appendixinfo, application, articleinfo, attribution, author-group, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomisc, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, bridgehead, chapterinfo, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossaryinfo, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, indexinfo, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, objectinfo, olink, para, partinfo, phrase, prefaceinfo, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentryinfo, refentrytitle, referenceinfo, refpurpose, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfront, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in othercredit: address, affiliation, authorblurb, contrib, email, firstname, honorific, lineage, othername, personblurb, personname, surname.

## See Also

author, authorblurb, authorgroup, collab, collabname, contrib, corpauthor, editor, personblurb, personname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE articleinfo PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<articleinfo>
  <title>Something Snappy</title>
  <author>
    <firstname>Norman</firstname>
    <surname>Walsh</surname>
  </author>
  <othercredit>
    <firstname>John</firstname>
    <surname>Doe</surname>
    <contrib>Extensive review and rough drafts of Section 1.3, 1.4, and 1.5
    </contrib>
  </othercredit>
  <pubsnumber>5</pubsnumber>
</articleinfo>
```



# pagenums

pagenums -- The numbers of the pages in a book, for use in a bibliographic entry

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
pagenums ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

PageNums identifies a page or range of pages. This may be useful in the bibliography of a book, to indicate the number of pages, or in a citation to a journal article.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain pagenums: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in pagenums: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## Examples

For examples, see bibliography, biblioset.

# para

para -- A paragraph

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
para ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage|calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|
segmentedlist|simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|
warning|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|
screenco|screenshot|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `Para` is a paragraph. Paragraphs in DocBook may contain almost all inlines and most block elements. Sectioning and higher-level structural elements are excluded. DocBook offers two variants of paragraph: `SimPara`, which cannot contain block elements, and `FormalPara`, which has a title.

Some processing systems may find the presence of block elements in a paragraph difficult to handle. On the other hand, it is frequently most logical, from a structural point of view, to include block elements, especially informal block elements, in the paragraphs that describe their content. There is no easy answer to this problem.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain para: abstract, answer, appendix, article, authorblurb, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, caution, chapter, colophon, constraintdef, dedication, entry, epigraph, example, footnote, formalpara, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, highlights, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, orderedlist, partintro, personblurb, preface, printhistory, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in para: abbrev, acronym, action, address, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, blockquote, calloutlist, caution, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, equation, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, example, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, figure, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glosslist, glossterm, graphic, graphicco, guibutton, guicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, itemizedlist, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, literallayout, markup, medialabel, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, note, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, orderedlist, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, programlisting, programlistingco, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sgmltag, simplelist, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, table, tip, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, variablelist, varname, warning, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

formalpara, simpara.

## Examples

Ordinary paragraphs can contain most block elements:

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The component suffered from three failings:
<itemizedlist>
<listitem><para>It was slow</para></listitem>
<listitem><para>It ran hot</para></listitem>
<listitem><para>It didn't actually work</para></listitem>
</itemizedlist>
Of these three, the last was probably the most important.
</para>
```

The component suffered from three failings:

- It was slow
  - It ran hot
  - It didn't actually work
- Of these three, the last was probably the most important.

Formal paragraphs include a title:

```
<!DOCTYPE formalpara PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<formalpara><title>A Test</title>
<para>
This is a test. This is only a test. Had this been a real
example, it would have made more sense.
</para>
</formalpara>
```

### **A Test.**

This is a test. This is only a test. Had this been a real example, it would have made more sense.

Simple paragraphs may not contain block elements:

```
<!DOCTYPE simpara PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<simpara>
Just the text, ma'am.
</simpara>
```

Just the text, ma'am.

For additional examples, see also abbrev, abstract, accel, ackno, acronym, action, address, anchor, appendix, application, article, authorgroup, beginpage, blockquote, book, bookinfo, caution, chapter, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, collab, colophon, command, computeroutput, constant, contractsponsor, database, emphasis, envar, errorcode, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, formalpara, glossary, glosslist, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, highlights, html-form, imageobject, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalfigure, inlineequation, inlinemediaobject, itemizedlist, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, manvolnum, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, mousebutton, msgset, note, olink, option, orderedlist, otheraddr, parameter, part, personname, phrase, printhistory, procedure, productionset, productname, productnumber, programlistingco, prompt, property, qandaset, quote, refentry, reference, remark, returnvalue, screenco, sectlinfo, section, segmentedlist, seriesvolnums, set, shortcut, sidebar, simplelist, simplesect, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, variablelist, varname, videoobject, warning, wordasword, xref.

# paramdef

paramdef -- Information about a function parameter in a programming language

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
paramdef ::=  
(#PCDATA|type|replaceable|parameter|funcparams)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

In the syntax summary for a function in a programming language, `ParamDef` provides the description of a parameter to the function. Typically, this includes the data type of the parameter and its name. For parameters that are pointers to functions, it also includes a summary of the nested parameters.

Within the `ParamDef`, the parameter name is identified with `Parameter`, and the rest of the content is assumed to be the data type.

In the following definition, `str` is the name of the parameter and `char *` is its type:

```
<paramdef>char *<parameter>str</parameter></paramdef>
```

Sometimes a data type requires punctuation on both sides of the parameter. For example, the `a` parameter in this definition is an array of `char *`:

```
<paramdef>char *<parameter>a</parameter>[]</paramdef>
```

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. For a complete description of the processing expectations, see `FuncSynopsis`.

## Parents

These elements contain `paramdef`: `funcprototype`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `paramdef`: `funcparams`, `parameter`, `replaceable`, `type`.

## See Also

funcdef, funcparams, funcprototype, funcsynopsisinfo, function, parameter, returnvalue, varargs, void.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE funcsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<funcsynopsis>
<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>int <function>max</function></funcdef>
  <paramdef>int <parameter>int1</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>int <parameter>int2</parameter></paramdef>
</funcprototype>
</funcsynopsis>
int max(int1, int2);
int int1;
int int2;
```

For additional examples, see also [funcparams](#), [funcsynopsis](#), [refentry](#).

# parameter

parameter -- A value or a symbolic reference to a value

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
parameter ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> command function option	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `Parameter` identifies something passed from one part of a computer system to another. In this regard `Parameter` is fairly generic, but it may have a more constrained semantic in some contexts (for example in a `ParamDef`).

In a document that describes more than one kind of parameter, for example, parameters to functions and commands, the `Class` attribute can be used to distinguish between them, if necessary.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the content model of `Parameter` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`).

## Parents

These elements contain parameter: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, methodparam, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, paramdef, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in parameter: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

class

Class indicates the type of Parameter.

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Parameter.

## See Also

computeroutput, constant, funcdef, funcparams, funcprototype, funcsynopsisinfo, function, literal, markup, option, optional, paramdef, prompt, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, userinput, varargs, varname, void.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Using the <parameter class='command'>/w</parameter> parameter on the
DOS <command>dir</command> command prints a wide directory listing.
</para>
```

Using the /w parameter on the DOS **dir** command prints a wide directory listing.

For additional examples, see also `funcparams`, `funcsynopsis`, `paramdef`, `refentry`.

# part

part -- A division in a book

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
part ::=
(beginpage?,partinfo?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 partintro?,
 (appendix|chapter|toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography|article|
  preface|refentry|reference)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Parts segment a book into divisions. Each division can contain a number of component-level elements, such as Chapters.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Parts almost always introduce a forced page break. Sometimes starts on the next recto page. Frequently, they also produce a part separator page, on which may be printed the content of the PartIntro.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the ToC element in the content model will be replaced by TocChap.

## Parents

These elements contain part: book.

## Children

The following elements occur in part: appendix, article, beginpage, bibliography, chapter, glossary, index, lot, partinfo, partintro, preface, refentry, reference, subtitle, title, titleabbrev, toc.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes. The first Part in a Book might be labeled “Part I”, for example.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Part.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

appendix, article, book, chapter, colophon, dedication, partintro, preface, set.

## Examples

The following example comes from *Java in a Nutshell*:

```
<!DOCTYPE part PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<part label="II">
<title>Programming with the Java API</title>
<partintro>
<para>
The sections in Part II present real-world examples of
programming with Java. You can study and learn from the
examples, and you can adapt them for use in your own programs.
</para>

<para>
The example code in these chapters is available for downloading.
See <systemitem role="url">http://www.ora.com/catalog/books/javanut</systemitem>.
</para>

<literallayout>
<xref linkend="jnut-ch-04"/>
<xref linkend="jnut-ch-05"/>
<xref linkend="jnut-ch-06"/>
<xref linkend="jnut-ch-07"/>
<xref linkend="jnut-ch-08"/>
<xref linkend="jnut-ch-09"/>
</literallayout>
</partintro>
<chapter id="jnut-ch-04"><title/><para>...</para></chapter>
<chapter id="jnut-ch-05"><title/><para>...</para></chapter>
<chapter id="jnut-ch-06"><title/><para>...</para></chapter>
<chapter id="jnut-ch-07"><title/><para>...</para></chapter>
<chapter id="jnut-ch-08"><title/><para>...</para></chapter>
<chapter id="jnut-ch-09"><title/><para>...</para></chapter>
</part>
```

# partinfo

partinfo -- Meta-information for a Part

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
partinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `PartInfo` element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a `Part`. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain `partinfo`: `part`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `partinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliaset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itemset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

# partintro

partintro -- An introduction to the contents of a part

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
partintro ::=
((title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 ((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 (sect1*|
 (refentry)*|
 simplesect*|
 (section)*))|
 (sect1+|
 (refentry)+|
 simplesect+|
 (section)+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

PartIntro contains introductory text, often an overview of the content of the Part.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes suppressed.

PartIntro content is often printed on a part separator page.

## Parents

These elements contain partintro: part, reference.

## Children

The following elements occur in partintro: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, sect1, section, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, simplesect, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

## See Also

appendix, article, book, chapter, colophon, dedication, part, preface, set.

## Examples

For examples, see part.

# personblurb

personblurb -- A short description or note about a person

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
personblurb ::=  
(title?,  
 (formalpara|para|simpara)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A short description of a person.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain personblurb: author, editor, othercredit.

## Children

The following elements occur in personblurb: formalpara, para, simpara, title.

## See Also

author, authorblurb, authorgroup, collab, collabname, contrib, corpauthor, editor, other-credit, personname.

# personname

personname -- The personal name of an individual

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
personname ::=
((honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|othername)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `personname` identifies the personal name of an individual.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context.

## Parents

These elements contain `personname`: `address`, `appendixinfo`, `application`, `articleinfo`, `attribution`, `author`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `bridgehead`, `chapterinfo`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `editor`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossaryinfo`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `indexinfo`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `objectinfo`, `olink`, `othercredit`, `para`, `partinfo`, `phrase`, `prefaceinfo`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentryinfo`, `refentrytitle`, `referenceinfo`, `refpurpose`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `personname`: `firstname`, `honorific`, `lineage`, `othername`, `surname`.

## See Also

`author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `collab`, `collabname`, `contrib`, `corpauthor`, `editor`, `othercredit`, `personblurb`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>Starting in DocBook 4.2, personal names, like
<personname><firstname>Albert</firstname><surname>Einstein</surname></personname>
can be marked-up inline.</para>
```

Starting in DocBook 4.2, personal names, like Albert Einstein can be marked-up inline.

# phone

phone -- A telephone number

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
phone ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Phone identifies a telephone number in an Address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed. In an Address, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain phone: address.

## Children

The following elements occur in phone: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

address, city, country, email, fax, otheraddr, pob, postcode, state, street.

## Examples

For examples, see address.

# phrase

phrase -- A span of text

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
phrase ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `Phrase` element in DocBook has no specific semantic. It is provided as a wrapper around a selection of words smaller than a paragraph so that it is possible to provide an ID or other attributes for them.

For example, if you are making note of changes to a document using one of the effectivity attributes, you might use `Phrase` to mark up specific sentences with revisions.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `phrase`: `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `lineannota-`

tion, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, para, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentrytitle, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, textobject, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in phrase: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corppauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

abbrev, acronym, emphasis, foreignphrase, quote, wordasword.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Effectivity attributes can be used to keep track of modifications
to a document <phrase revisionflag="deleted">at the word or
sentence level</phrase><phrase revisionflag="added"> as long as the number
and complexity of changes is not too high</phrase>.
</para>
```

Effectivity attributes can be used to keep track of modifications to a document at the word or sentence level as long as the number and complexity of changes is not too high.

For additional examples, see also audioobject, imageobject, informalfigure, inlinemediaobject.

# pob

pob -- A post office box in an address

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
pob ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

POB is a post office box number in an Address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an Address, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain pob: address.

## Children

The following elements occur in pob: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

address, city, country, email, fax, otheraddr, phone, postcode, state, street.

## Examples

For examples, see address.

# postcode

postcode -- A postal code in an address

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
postcode ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

PostCode is a postal code (in the United States, a ZIP code) in an Address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an Address, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain postcode: address.

## Children

The following elements occur in postcode: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

address, city, country, email, fax, otheraddr, phone, pob, state, street.

## Examples

For examples, see address, otheraddr.

# preface

preface -- Introductory matter preceding the first chapter of a book

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
preface ::=
(beginpage?, prefaceinfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 tocchap?,
 ((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 (sect1*|
 (refentry)*|
 simplesect*|
 (section)*))|
 (sect1+|
 (refentry)+|
 simplesect+|
 (section)+),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Preface is a preface or forward in a Book. The Preface element may appear more than once and should be used for all introductory chapter-like material. For example, a Book might have both a *Foreward* and an *Introduction*. Both should be tagged as Prefaces in DocBook.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Usually introduces a forced page break and often starts on the next recto page. It is common for the page numbers in prefaces to be displayed as roman numerals rather than arabic numerals. Prefaces are usually listed in the Table of Contents.

## Parents

These elements contain preface: book, part.

## Children

The following elements occur in preface: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, bibliography, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glossary, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, index, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, lot, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, prefaceinfo, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, sect1, section, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, simplesect, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, toc, tocchap, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Preface.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

appendix, article, book, chapter, colophon, dedication, part, partintro, set.

## Examples

For examples, see book.

# prefaceinfo

prefaceinfo -- Meta-information for a Preface

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
prefaceinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The PrefaceInfo element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a Preface. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain prefaceinfo: preface.

## Children

The following elements occur in prefaceinfo: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itermset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

`appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `bibliographyinfo`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `screeninfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setinfo`.

# primary

primary -- The primary word or phrase under which an index term should be sorted

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
primary ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
sortas	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

In an `IndexTerm`, `Primary` identifies the most significant word or words in the entry. All `IndexTerms` must have a `Primary`.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element provides data for processing but it is not rendered in the primary flow of text.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain primary: `indexterm`.

## Children

The following elements occur in primary: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, corppauthor, database, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, function, glossterm, guibutton, guicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keySYM, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

sortas

`SortAs` specifies the string by which the element's content is to be sorted. If unspecified, the proper content is used.

## See Also

indexentry, indexterm, primaryie, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, tertiary, tertiaryie.

## Examples

For examples, see `chapter`, `indexterm`.

# primaryie

primaryie -- A primary term in an index entry, not in the text

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
primaryie ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkends	IDREFS	<i>None</i>

## Description

PrimaryIE identifies the most significant word or words in an IndexEntry. IndexEntries occur in an Index, not in the flow of the text. They are part of a formatted index, not markers for indexing.

If a document includes both IndexTerms and IndexEntries, the IndexEntries are usually constructed from the IndexTerms by some external process.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. The PrimaryIE starts a new entry in the Index.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain primaryie: indexentry.

## Children

The following elements occur in primaryie: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, corppauthor, database, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, inlinegraphic, inlinemediobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

linkends

Linkends, if used, points to the IndexTerms indexed by this entry.

## See Also

indexentry, indexterm, primary, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, tertiary, tertiaryie.

## Examples

For examples, see index.

# printhistory

printhistory -- The printing history of a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
printhistory ::=
((formalpara|para|simpara)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `PrintHistory` of a document identifies when various editions and revisions were printed.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `printhistory`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `printhistory`: `formalpara`, `para`, `simpara`.

## See Also

`date`, `edition`, `pubdate`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE printhistory PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<printhistory>
<para>
September, 1996      First Printing
</para>
</printhistory>
```

For a printed example of `PrintHistory`, consult the reverse of the full title page of this book (if you're holding the print version from O'Reilly).

# procedure

procedure -- A list of operations to be performed in a well-defined sequence

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
procedure ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 step+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Procedure encapsulates a task composed of Steps (and possibly, SubSteps). Procedures are usually performed sequentially, unless individual Steps direct the reader explicitly.

Often it is important to assure that certain conditions exist before a procedure is performed, and that the outcome of the procedure matches the expected results. DocBook does not provide explicit semantic markup for these pre- and post-conditions. Instead, they must be described as steps (check the pre-conditions in the first step and the results in the last step), or described outside the body of the procedure.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain procedure: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, constraintdef, glossary, glossdiv, important, index, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, tip, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in procedure: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, blockinfo, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, step, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE procedure PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<procedure><title>An Example Procedure</title>
<step>
  <para>
    A Step
  </para>
</step>
<step>
  <para>
    Another Step
  </para>
  <substeps>
    <step>
      <para>
        Substeps can be nested indefinitely deep.
      </para>
    </step>
  </substeps>
</step>
<step>
  <para>
    A Final Step
  </para>
</step>
</procedure>
```

### Procedure 1. An Example Procedure

1. A Step
2. Another Step
  - Substeps can be nested indefinitely deep.
3. A Final Step

# production

production -- A production in a set of EBNF productions

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
production ::=  
(lhs,rhs,constraint*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element is only available if you are using the EBNF Module.

A `Production` is single production in an Extended Backus-Naur Form (EBNF) grammar.

Individual productions have two parts, a left hand side (`lhs`) and a right hand side (`rhs`). Each `NonTerminal` on the left hand side is defined in terms of other non-terminals and literals on the right hand side.

## Parents

These elements contain production: `productionset`.

## Children

The following elements occur in production: `constraint`, `lhs`, `rhs`.

## Examples

For examples, see `productionset`.

# productionrecap

productionrecap -- A cross-reference to an EBNF production

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
productionrecap ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>Required</i>

## Description

This element is only available if you are using the EBNF Module.

A `ProductionRecap` is a cross reference to a `Production`.

## Processing expectations

A `ProductionRecap` is rendered exactly like the production to which it refers. The purpose of the `ProductionRecap` element is to allow a `ProductionSet` to contain copies of `Productions` defined elsewhere. This frequently makes it easier for readers to understand.

## Parents

These elements contain productionrecap: `productionset`.

## Attributes

linkend

**EBNF** FIXME:

# productionset

productionset -- A set of EBNF productions

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
productionset ::=
  ((title,titleabbrev?)?,
   (production|productionrecap)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element is only available if you are using the EBNF Module.

A `ProductionSet` is a collection of Extended Backus-Naur Form (EBNF) `Productions`.

EBNF is a notation for describing the grammar of context-free languages. Even if you aren't conversant in the programming language concepts of context-free languages and grammars, it's not really as hard to understand as it sounds.

A set of EBNF productions describes the legal arrangements of tokens in a language. Consider arithmetic expressions as a simple example.

The expression “3 + 4” is valid and so is “3 + 4 - 5”, but “3 - + - 4” is not, nor is “3 + 4 6”. We can use EBNF to describe all the possible legal arrangements:

### Arithmetic Expressions

- [1] `Expression ::= ArithExpression | MultExpression` /\* Does this grammar actually get precedence right? \*/
- [2] `ArithExpression ::= Expression '+' MultExpression | Expression '-' MultExpression`
- [3] `MultExpression ::= MultExpression '*' MultExpression | MultExpression '/' MultExpression | Number` [ Err: Division by Zero ]
- [4] `Number ::= [0-9]+`

### Division by Zero

Division by zero is an error. Constraints, such as this one, are used to express conditions that cannot be expressed in the grammar.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. The detailed processing expectations with respect to individual productions, left-hand sides, and right-hand sides are quite complex.

`Productions` should be numbered.

## Parents

These elements contain productionset: appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, chapter, glossary, glossdiv, index, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, partintro, preface, procedure, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, simplesect, step.

## Children

The following elements occur in productionset: production, productionrecap, title, titleabbrev.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE simplesect PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<simplesect><title>EBNF Grammar</title>

<productionset><title>Arithmetic Expressions</title>
<production id="ebnf.expression">
  <lhs>Expression</lhs>
  <rhs><nonterminal def="ebnf.arith">ArithExpression</nonterminal> |
    <nonterminal def="ebnf.mult">MultExpression</nonterminal>
  <lineannotation>Does this grammar actually get precedence right?
  </lineannotation>
</rhs>
</production>
<production id="ebnf.arith">
  <lhs>ArithExpression</lhs>
  <rhs><nonterminal def="ebnf.expression">Expression</nonterminal>
    '+'
    <nonterminal def="ebnf.mult">MultExpression</nonterminal> |
    <nonterminal def="ebnf.expression">Expression</nonterminal>
    '-'
    <nonterminal def="ebnf.mult">MultExpression</nonterminal>
  </rhs>
</production>
<production id="ebnf.mult">
  <lhs>MultExpression</lhs>
  <rhs><nonterminal def="ebnf.mult">MultExpression</nonterminal>
    '*'
    <nonterminal def="ebnf.mult">MultExpression</nonterminal> |
    <nonterminal def="ebnf.mult">MultExpression</nonterminal>
    '/'
    <nonterminal def="ebnf.mult">MultExpression</nonterminal> |
    <nonterminal def="ebnf.number">Number</nonterminal>
  </rhs>
  <constraint linkend="div0"/>
</production>
<production id="ebnf.number">
  <lhs>Number</lhs>
  <rhs>[0-9]+</rhs>
</production>
</productionset>

<constraintdef id="div0">
<title>Division by Zero</title>
```

```
<para>Division by zero is an error.</para>  
</constraintdef>  
</simplesect>
```

# productname

productname -- The formal name of a product

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
productname ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> copyright registered service trade	"trade"

## Description

A `ProductName` is the formal name of any product. Identifying a product this way may be useful if you need to provide explicit disclaimers about product names or information.

For example, the copyright statement on this book includes the following general notice:

Some of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and O'Reilly & Associates, Inc., was aware of the trademark claim, the designations have been printed in caps or initial caps.

or words to that effect. If every product name in this book had been diligently coded as a `ProductName`, we could have automatically generated a complete list of all the product names and mentioned them explicitly in the notice.

In running prose, the distinction between an `Application` and a `ProductName` may be very subjective.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

Two of the values of the `Class` attribute on `ProductName`, `Trade` and `Registered`, make assertions about trademarks. DocBook also has a `TradeMark` element; presumably the same markup is intended regardless of which one is used.

The `Service` and `Copyright` values should also generate the anticipated marks, if appropriate.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `productname`: `appendixinfo`, `application`, `articleinfo`, `attribution`, `bibliography`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `bridgehead`, `chapterinfo`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossaryinfo`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `indexinfo`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `layout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `objectinfo`, `olink`, `para`, `partinfo`, `phrase`, `prefaceinfo`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentryinfo`, `refentrytitle`, `referenceinfo`, `refpurpose`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `productname`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`class`

Class indicates the type of ProductName.

## See Also

application, copyright, database, filename, hardware, medialabel, trademark.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
<productname class='trade'>Frobozz</productname>: it's not
just for breakfast anymore.
</para>
```

Frobozz™: it's not just for breakfast anymore.

As noted above, the TradeMark element could also be used:

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
<trademark>Frobozz</trademark>: it's not
just for breakfast anymore.
</para>
```

Frobozz™: it's not just for breakfast anymore.

# productnumber

productnumber -- A number assigned to a product

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
productnumber ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

An `ProductNumber` identifies a “product number” in some unspecified numbering scheme. It's possible that product numbers for different products might not even come from the same scheme.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

DocBook does not control, or specify, the numbering scheme used for products.

## Parents

These elements contain `productnumber`: `appendixinfo`, `application`, `articleinfo`, `attribution`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `bridgehead`, `chapterinfo`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossaryinfo`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `indexinfo`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `objectinfo`, `olink`, `para`, `partinfo`, `phrase`, `prefaceinfo`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentryinfo`, `refentrytitle`, `referenceinfo`, `refpurpose`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `productnumber`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`biblioid`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `pubsnumber`, `seriesvolnums`, `volumenum`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
You can order <citetitle>DocBook: The Definitive Guide</citetitle> directly
from O'Reilly & Associates. Order product number
<productnumber>5807</productnumber> by phone or
<ulink url="http://www.oreilly.com/">over the web</ulink>.
</para>
```

You can order *DocBook: The Definitive Guide* directly from O'Reilly & Associates. Order product number 5807 by phone or over the web<sup>i</sup>.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oreilly.com/>

# programlisting

programlisting -- A literal listing of all or part of a program

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
programlisting ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage|co|coref|lineannotation|textobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> linespecific	"linespecific"
linenumbers	<i>Enumeration:</i> numbered unnumbered	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `ProgramListing` is a verbatim environment for program source or source fragment listings. `ProgramListings` are often placed in `Examples` or `Figures` so that they can be cross-referenced from the text.

## Processing Expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant. `ProgramListings` are usually displayed in a fixed width font.

Other markup within a `ProgramListing` is recognized. Contrast this with systems like LaTeX, in which verbatim environments disable markup recognition. If you want to disable markup recognition, you must use a CDATA section:

```

<programlisting>
<![CDATA[
This is a programlisting so white      space and line
breaks are significant.  But it is also a CDATA
section so <emphasis>tags</emphasis> and &entities;
are not recognized.  The only markup that is recognized
is the end-of-section marker, which is two
"]]'s in a row followed by a >.

]]>

</programlisting>

```

Two markup tags have special significance in ProgramListings: CO and LineAnnotation. A CO identifies the location of a Callout. A LineAnnotation is a comment, added by the *documentor*—not the programmer.

## Processing expectations

This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Future Changes

The `xml:space` attribute is automatically provided in the XML DTD.

## Parents

These elements contain programlisting: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, caution, chapter, colophon, constraintdef, dedication, entry, example, figure, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, informalfigure, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, programlistingco, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in programlisting: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, co, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, coref, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, error-text, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-

mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, lineannotation, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, textobject, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

format

The `Format` attribute applies the `linespecific` notation to all `ProgramListings`. All white space and line breaks must be preserved.

linenumbering

**V4.0** Line numbering indicates whether or not the lines of a `ProgramListing` are to be automatically numbered. The details of numbering (every line or only selected lines, on the left or right, etc.) are left up to the processing application. Be aware that not all processors are capable of numbering lines.

width

`Width` specifies the width (in characters) of the longest line in this `ProgramListing` (formatters may use this value to determine scaling or rotation).

## See Also

computeroutput, lineannotation, literallayout, screen, screenshot, synopsis, userinput.

## Examples

For examples, see `example`, `informalexample`, `programlistingco`, `refentry`.

# programlistingco

programlistingco -- A program listing with associated areas used in callouts

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
programlistingco ::=
  (areaspec, programlisting, calloutlist*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Callouts, such as numbered bullets, are an annotation mechanism. In an online system, these bullets are frequently “hot,” and clicking on them sends you to the corresponding annotation.

A `ProgramListingCO` is a wrapper around an `AreaSpec` and a `ProgramListing`. An `AreaSpec` identifies the locations (coordinates) in the `ProgramListing` where the callouts occur. The `ProgramListingCO` may also contain the list of annotations in a `CalloutList`, although the `CalloutList` may also occur outside of the wrapper, elsewhere in the document.

It is also possible to embed `CO` elements directly in the verbatim text, in order to avoid having to calculate the correct coordinates. If you decided to go this route, use a `ProgramListing` and a `CalloutList` without the `ProgramListingCO` wrapper. A `ProgramListingCO` must specify at least one coordinate.

For a complete description of callouts, see `Callout`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant.

The mandatory processing expectations of a `ProgramListingCO` are minimal: a system is expected to render the program listing and the callout list, if present.

If explicit `CO` elements are embedded in a `ProgramListing`, they must generate appropriate callout marks.

In online environments, the processing system may be able to instantiate the linking relationships between the callout marks in the program listing and the annotations. Some systems may even be able to go a step further and generate the callout marks automatically from the coordinate information, but this level of sophistication is not mandatory.

## Parents

These elements contain `programlistingco`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`,

sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in `programlistingco`: `areaspec`, `calloutlist`, `programlisting`.

## See Also

`areaspec`, `calloutlist`, `co`, `coref`, `graphicco`, `imageobjectco`, `mediaobjectco`, `screenco`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE programlistingco PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<programlistingco>
<areaspec>
<areaset id="ex.plco.const" coords="">
  <area id="ex.plco.c1" coords='4' />
  <area id="ex.plco.c2" coords='8' />
</areaset>
<area id="ex.plco.ret" coords='12' />
<area id="ex.plco.dest" coords='12' />
</areaspec>
<programlisting>
sub do_nothing_useful {
  my($a, $b, $c);

  $a = new A;

  $a->does_nothing_either();

  $b = new B;

  $c = "frog";

  return ($a, $c);
}
</programlisting>
<calloutlist>
<callout arearefs="ex.plco.const">
<para>
These are calls to the constructor <function>new</function> in the object
classes.
</para>
</callout>
<callout arearefs="ex.plco.ret">
<para>
This function returns a two-element list.
</para>
</callout>
<callout arearefs="ex.plco.dest">
<para>
The <emphasis>destructor</emphasis> (<function>DESTROY</function>) for
the object <literal>$b</literal> will be called automatically for this
object since there can be no other references to it outside this function.

```

```
</para>
</callout>
</calloutlist>
</programlistingco>
```

```
sub do_nothing_useful {
    my($a, $b, $c);

    $a = new A;

    $a->does_nothing_either();

    $b = new B;

    $c = "frog";

    return ($a, $c);
}
```

1

1

2 3

1

These are calls to the constructor `new` in the object classes.

2

This function returns a two-element list.

3

The *destructor* (`DESTROY`) for the object `$b` will be called automatically for this object since there can be no other references to it outside this function.

# prompt

prompt -- A character or string indicating the start of an input field in a computer display

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
prompt ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage|co)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

A `Prompt` is a character or character string marking the beginning of an input field. Prompts are generally associated with command-line interfaces and not graphical user interfaces (GUIs). In GUIs, `GUILabel` is usually more appropriate.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

`Prompt` was added in DocBook V3.0. It duplicates the semantics of `<systemitem class="prompt">`. The `prompt` attribute will be removed from `SystemItem` in the future.

## Parents

These elements contain `prompt`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `prompt`: `beginpage`, `co`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `Prompt`.

## See Also

`computeroutput`, `constant`, `envar`, `filename`, `literal`, `markup`, `option`, `optional`, `parameter`, `replaceable`, `sgmltag`, `systemitem`, `userinput`, `varname`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Enter your user name when the system presents the
<prompt>login:</prompt> prompt.
</para>
```

Enter your user name when the system presents the `login: prompt`.

# property

property -- A unit of data associated with some part of a computer system

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
property ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

The notion of a `Property` is very domain-dependent in computer documentation. Some object-oriented systems speak of properties; the components from which GUIs are constructed have properties; and one can speak of properties in very general terms; “the properties of a relational database.”

You might use `Property` for any of these in your documentation.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

The content model of `Property` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`) in DocBook V4.0.

## Parents

These elements contain `property`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`,

literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in property: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenu-item, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Property.

## See Also

classname, interface, structfield, structname, symbol, token, type.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
When Emacs is running under X Windows, the <property>borderWidth</property>
resource controls the width of the external border.
</para>
```

When Emacs is running under X Windows, the borderWidth resource controls the width of the external border.

# pubdate

pubdate -- The date of publication of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
pubdate ::=
  (#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
  subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The PubDate is the date of publication of a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain pubdate: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in pubdate: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

date, edition, printhistory, releaseinfo, revhistory.

## Examples

For examples, see article, bibliography, bibliomset, bookinfo.

# publisher

publisher -- The publisher of a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
publisher ::=  
(publishername, address*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

`Publisher` associates a `PublisherName` and an `Address`. Many publishers have offices in more than one city. `Publisher` can be used to list or distinguish between the multiple offices.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `publisher`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomixed`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `publisher`: `address`, `publishername`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE publisher PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"  
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">  
<publisher>  
  <publishername>O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.</publishername>  
  <address><street>101 ...</street>  
  ...  
</address>  
</publisher>
```

For additional examples, see also `article`, `bibliography`, `biblioset`.

# publishername

publishername -- The name of the publisher of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
publishername ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `PublisherName` is the name of a publisher. Historically, this has been used in bibliographic meta-information to identify the publisher of a book or other document. It is also reasonable to identify the publisher of an electronic publication in this way.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `publishername`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `publisher`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `publishername`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`corpname`, `orgname`.

## Examples

For examples, see `article`, `bibliography`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `publisher`.

# pubsnumber

pubsnumber -- A number assigned to a publication other than an ISBN or ISSN or inventory part number

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
pubsnumber ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A PubsNumber identifies a document in some unspecified numbering scheme. This number may exist instead of, or in addition to, an ISBN or ISSN number.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

DocBook does not control, or specify, the numbering scheme used for documents.

Deprecated as of DocBook V4.2, see `biblioid` instead.

## Parents

These elements contain `pubsnumber`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `biblioentry`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `pubsnumber`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`biblioid`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `productnumber`, `seriesvolnums`, `volumenum`.

## Examples

For examples, see `contractsponsor`, `othercredit`.

# qandadiv

qandadiv -- A titled division in a QandASet

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
qandadiv ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?)),
(calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|procedure|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|
 indexterm)*,
(qandadiv+|qandaentry+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

QandADiv is a section of a QandASet. A question and answer set might be divided into sections in order to group different sets of questions together, perhaps by topic.

A QandASet may contain any number of QandADiv or QandaEntry elements, but it cannot contain a mixture of both at the same level.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

A table of contents for the question and answer set is sometimes generated, especially in online environments.

## Parents

These elements contain qandadiv: qandadiv, qandaset.

## Children

The following elements occur in qandadiv: address, anchor, blockinfo, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, programlisting, programlistingco,

qandadiv, qandaentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Examples

For examples, see qandaset.

# qandaentry

qandaentry -- A question/answer set within a QandASet

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
qandaentry ::=  
(blockinfo?, revhistory?, question, answer*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A QandAEntry is an entry in a QandASet. Each QandAEntry defines a Question and (possibly) its Answer or Answers.

Since V4.2, the preferred way to associate a revision history with a QandAEntry is in the BlockInfo. The use of RevHistory directly in QandAEntry is deprecated.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Questions are usually presented before the Answers, and often the Answers are indented to make the questions stand out.

## Parents

These elements contain qandaentry: answer, qandadiv, qandaset.

## Children

The following elements occur in qandaentry: answer, blockinfo, question, revhistory.

## Examples

For examples, see qandaset.

# qandaset

qandaset -- A question-and-answer set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
qandaset ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|procedure|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|
 indexterm)*,
 (qandadiv+|qandaentry+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
defaultlabel	<i>Enumeration:</i> none number qanda	<i>None</i>

## Description

A QandASet is a list consisting of Questions and Answers. QandASets can be divided into sections.

Every entry in a QandASet must contain a Question, but Answers are optional (some questions have no answers), and may be repeated (some questions have more than one answer).

Common uses for QandASets include reader questionnaires and lists of “Frequently Asked Questions” (FAQs). For the purpose of an FAQ, DocBook V3.1 added the FAQ class to Article.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. The DefaultLabel attribute has a significant influence on the presentation of Questions and Answers.

## Parents

These elements contain qandaset: appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, chapter, glossary, glossdiv, index, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, partintro, preface,

procedure, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, simplesect, step.

## Children

The following elements occur in `qandaset`: `address`, `anchor`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `cal-loutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandadiv`, `qandaentry`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Attributes

`defaultlabel`

`DefaultLabel` identifies the default label that should be used for `Questions` and `Answers`:

`qanda`

`Questions` are labeled “Q:” and `Answers` are labeled “A:”. Other similar labels may be substituted, for example, the words might be spelled out, “Question:” and “Answer:”, and the actual characters or words used are dependent on the language.

`number`

The entries are enumerated.

`none`

No distinguishing label precedes `Questions` or `Answers`.

If no value is specified, the implied presentation may be any one of these, as defined by the stylesheet.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE qandaset PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<qandaset defaultlabel='qanda'>
<qandaentry>
<question>
<para>
To be, or not to be?
</para>
</question>
<answer>
<para>
That is the question.
</para>
</answer>
</qandaentry>
</qandaset>
```

Q:. To be, or not to be?

A:. That is the question.

```
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<article class="faq">
<title>Frequently Asked Questions About Fonts</title>

<para>...</para>

<qandaset>
<qandadiv><title>General Information</title>

<para>...</para>

<qandadiv><title>Font Houses</title>

<qandaentry><question><para>Adobe Systems, Inc.</para></question>
<answer><para>...</para></answer>
</qandaentry>

<qandaentry><question><para>Agfa, Inc.</para></question>
<answer><para>...</para></answer>
</qandaentry>

</qandadiv>
</qandadiv>
</qandaset>
</article>
```

# question

question -- A question in a QandASet

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
question ::=
(label?,
(calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
figure|table|procedure|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|
indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Question in a QandAEntry poses a question or states a problem that is addressed by the following Answer(s). Answers are optional (some questions have no answers) and may be repeated (some questions have more than one answer).

## Processing expectations

Questions are frequently introduced with a label, such as “A:”. If a Question has a Label child element, the content of that Label is used as the label for the Question. The DefaultLabel attribute on the nearest ancestor QandASet of a Question can be used to indicate that a processing application should automatically generate a label for the Question.

## Parents

These elements contain question: qandaentry.

## Children

The following elements occur in question: address, anchor, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, label, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, programlisting, programlistingco, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Examples

For examples, see `qandaset`.

# quote

quote -- An inline quotation

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
quote ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Quote surrounds an inline quotation. Using an element for quotations is frequently more convenient than entering the character entities for the quotation marks by hand, and makes it possible for a presentation system to alter the format of the quotation marks.

Block quotations are properly identified as BlockQuotes.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The Quote element is expected to generate the proper quotation marks. These may be influenced by the Lang attribute on an ancestor element. For example, a quote in French might use «guillments» instead of English “quote marks.”

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain quote: application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, para, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentrytitle, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in quote: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

abbrev, acronym, emphasis, foreignphrase, phrase, wordasword.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
This software is provided <quote>as is</quote>, without expressed
or implied warranty.
</para>
```

This software is provided “as is”, without expressed or implied warranty.

For additional examples, see also [bookinfo](#), [link](#).

# refclass

refclass -- The scope or other indication of applicability of a reference entry

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
refclass ::=  
(#PCDATA|application)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `RefClass` element describes the applicability or scope of a `RefEntry`. A `RefClass` might indicate that the entry was only applicable to a particular application, for example, or only to a particular vendor's operating system.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the `RefEntry`.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running heads, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

## Parents

These elements contain `refclass: refnamediv`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refclass: application`.

# refdescriptor

refdescriptor -- A description of the topic of a reference page

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
refdescriptor ::=
(#PCDATA|action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Reference pages (`RefEntries`) are usually identified by a short, succinct topic name, such as the name of a function or command. The `RefName` (or one of the `RefNames`, in the case of a reference page that has several) is generally used as the topic name. When none of the `RefNames` is appropriate, `RefDescriptor` is used to specify the topic name.

`RefDescriptor` is unnecessary when an appropriate `RefName` can be selected automatically. At least one `RefName` is required, so `RefDescriptor` cannot be used in place of a name, only in addition to it.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context.

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the `RefEntry`.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running heads, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

If a `RefDescriptor` is present, it should be used for the short topic name. This name usually appears in the running header along with the `ManVolNum` in print media. It may also appear in tables of contents and the index.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `refdescriptor`: `refnamediv`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refdescriptor`: `action`, `application`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `database`, `email`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `function`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `parameter`, `prompt`, `property`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `type`, `userinput`, `varname`.

## See Also

`refentrytitle`, `refname`.

## Examples

For examples, see `reference`.

# refentry

refentry -- A reference page (originally a UNIX man-style reference page)

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refentry ::=
(beginpage?,
 (indexterm)*,
 refentryinfo?, refmeta?,
 (remark|link|olink|ulink)*,
 refnamediv, refsynopsisdiv?,
 (refsect1+|refsection+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `RefEntry` is a reference page. In UNIX parlance this has historically been called a “man page” (short for manual page).

`RefEntry` is an appropriate wrapper for any small unit of reference documentation describing a single topic. Canonical examples are programming language functions and user commands (one `RefEntry` per function or command).<sup>20</sup>

On some projects, the structure of reference pages may be rigorously defined right down to the number, order, and title of individual sections (some or all of which may be required).

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. It is not uncommon for `RefEntry`s to introduce a forced page break in print media.

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the `RefEntry`.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running heads, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

## Parents

These elements contain `refentry`: `appendix`, `article`, `chapter`, `part`, `partintro`, `preface`, `reference`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`.

<sup>20</sup> You're reading a `RefEntry` right now.

## Children

The following elements occur in refentry: beginpage, indexterm, link, olink, refentryinfo, refmeta, refnamediv, refsect1, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, remark, ulink.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the RefEntry.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## Examples

A typical reference page for a command:

```
<!DOCTYPE refentry PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<refentry id="ls">

<refmeta>
<refentrytitle>ls</refentrytitle>
<manvolnum>1</manvolnum>
</refmeta>

<refnamediv>
<refname>ls</refname>
<refpurpose>list contents of a directory</refpurpose>
</refnamediv>

<refsynopsisdiv>
<cmdsynopsis>
<command>/usr/bin/ls</command>
<arg choice="opt">
  <option>aAbcCdFgIlMnopqrRstuxl</option>
</arg>
<arg choice="opt" rep="repeat">file</arg>
</cmdsynopsis>
</refsynopsisdiv>

<refsect1><title>Description</title>
<para>
For each file that is a directory, <command>ls</command> lists the contents of
the directory; for each file that is an ordinary file, <command>ls</command>
repeats its name and any other information requested.
</para>
<para>&hellip;</para>
</refsect1>
</refentry>
```

A typical reference page for a function:

```
<!DOCTYPE refentry PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
```

```

<refentry id="printf">

<refmeta>
<refentrytitle>printf</refentrytitle>
<manvolnum>3S</manvolnum>
</refmeta>

<refnamediv>
<refname>printf</refname>
<refname>fprintf</refname>
<refname>sprintf</refname>
<refpurpose>print formatted output</refpurpose>
</refnamediv>

<refsynopsisdiv>

<functsynopsis>
<functsynopsisinfo>
#include &lt;stdio.h&gt;
</functsynopsisinfo>
<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>int <function>printf</function></funcdef>
  <paramdef>const char *<parameter>format</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>...</paramdef>
</funcprototype>

<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>int <function>fprintf</function></funcdef>
  <paramdef>FILE *<parameter>strm</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>const char *<parameter>format</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>...</paramdef>
</funcprototype>

<funcprototype>
  <funcdef>int <function>sprintf</function></funcdef>
  <paramdef>char *<parameter>s</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>const char *<parameter>format</parameter></paramdef>
  <paramdef>...</paramdef>
</funcprototype>
</functsynopsis>

</refsynopsisdiv>

<refsect1><title>Description</title>
<para>
<function>printf</function> places output on the standard
output stream stdout.
</para>
<para>&hellip;</para>
</refsect1>
</refentry>

```

A reference page for a data structure:

```

<!DOCTYPE refentry PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
  "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<refentry id="iovec">

<refmeta>
<refentrytitle>iovec</refentrytitle>

```

```

<manvolnum>9S</manvolnum>
</refmeta>

<refnamediv>
<refname>iovec</refname>
<refpurpose>data storage structure for I/O using uio</refpurpose>
</refnamediv>

<refsynopsisdiv>
<synopsis>
#include <sys/uio.h>;
</synopsis>
</refsynopsisdiv>

<refsect1><title>Interface Level</title>
<para>
Architecture independent level 1 (DDI/DKI).
</para>
</refsect1>

<refsect1><title>Description</title>

<para>
An <structname>iovec</structname> structure describes a data
storage area for transfer in a
<citerefentry><refentrytitle>uio</refentrytitle>
  <manvolnum>9S</manvolnum>
</citerefentry>
structure. Conceptually,
it may be thought of as a base address and length specification.
</para>

</refsect1>
<refsect1><title>Structure Members</title>

<programlisting>
    caddr_t  iov_base; /* base address of the data storage area */
                /* represented by the iovec structure */
    int      iov_len; /* size of the data storage area in bytes */
</programlisting>

<para>&hellip;</para>
</refsect1>
</refentry>

```

For additional examples, see also reference.

# refentryinfo

refentryinfo -- Meta-information for a Refentry

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refentryinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `RefentryInfo` element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a `Refentry`. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain `refentryinfo`: `refentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refentryinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliaset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itemset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

# refentrytitle

refentrytitle -- The title of a reference page

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
refentrytitle ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `RefEntryTitle` is the title of a reference page. It is frequently the same as the first `RefName` or the `Ref-Descriptor`, although it may also be a longer, more general title.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the `RefEntry`.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running heads, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `refentrytitle`: `citerefentry`, `refmeta`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refentrytitle`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `error-type`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## See Also

`refdescriptor`, `refname`.

## Examples

For examples, see `citerefentry`, `manvolnum`, `refentry`.

# reference

reference -- A collection of reference entries

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
reference ::=
(beginpage?,referenceinfo?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 partintro?,
 (refentry)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A *Reference* is a collection of *RefEntries*. In a *Book*, a *Reference* can occur at either the *Part* or *Chapter* level.

Reference pages are usually bound together by topic; in traditional UNIX documentation they are most frequently bound into volumes. See *ManVolNum*.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. *References* often introduce a forced page break and may start on the next recto page. Frequently, they also produce a separator page, on which may be printed the content of the *PartIntro*.

## Parents

These elements contain reference: *book*, *part*.

## Children

The following elements occur in reference: *beginpage*, *partintro*, *refentry*, *referenceinfo*, *subtitle*, *title*, *titleabbrev*.

## Attributes

label

*Label* specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Reference.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE reference PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
```

```
<reference><title>Reference Pages</title>
```

```
<refentry>
<refnamediv>
<refdescriptor>GNU as</refdescriptor>
<refname>as</refname>
<refpurpose>the portable GNU assembler</refpurpose>
</refnamediv>
<refsynopsisdiv><title>SYNOPSIS</title>
<synopsis>...</synopsis>
</refsynopsisdiv>
<refsect1><title>DESCRIPTION</title>
<para>...</para>
</refsect1>
</refentry>
```

```
<refentry>
<refnamediv>
<refname>awk</refname>
<refpurpose>pattern scanning and text processing language</refpurpose>
</refnamediv>
<refsynopsisdiv><title>SYNOPSIS</title>
<synopsis>...</synopsis>
</refsynopsisdiv>
<refsect1><title>DESCRIPTION</title>
<para>...</para>
</refsect1>
</refentry>
```

```
<!-- ... -->
```

```
</reference>
```

# referenceinfo

referenceinfo -- Meta-information for a Reference

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
referenceinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The ReferenceInfo element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a Reference. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain referenceinfo: reference.

## Children

The following elements occur in referenceinfo: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

# refmeta

refmeta -- Meta-information for a reference entry

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refmeta ::=
((indexterm)*,
 refentrytitle,manvolnum?,refmiscinfo*,
 (indexterm)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

RefMeta holds the title of the reference page, the number of the volume in which this reference page occurs, and possibly other miscellaneous information (typically used in printing the reference page).

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Most of the elements contained in RefMeta are used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the RefMeta wrapper--it merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain refmeta: refentry.

## Children

The following elements occur in refmeta: indexterm, manvolnum, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo.

## Examples

For examples, see refentry.

# refmiscinfo

refmiscinfo -- Meta-information for a reference entry other than the title and volume number

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
refmiscinfo ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

RefMiscInfo is an escape hatch for additional meta-information about a reference page. It may hold copyright information, release or revision information, descriptive text for use in a print header or footer, or any other information not explicitly provided for in RefMeta.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context.

## Parents

These elements contain refmiscinfo: refmeta.

## Children

The following elements occur in refmiscinfo: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## Attributes

class

Class on RefMiscInfo can be used to indicate the nature of the miscellaneous information being added to RefMeta. Naming this attribute “class” is a violation of DocBook semantics (where Class attributes have delimited value sets), it should really be called Type.

# refname

refname -- The name of (one of) the subject(s) of a reference page

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
refname ::=
(#PCDATA|action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

`RefEntry`s are small units of reference documentation describing a single topic. The `RefName` identifies the topic. Often this is the name of the command or function that the reference page describes.

Some reference pages describe a whole family of very closely related commands or functions. In this case, a `RefEntry` will have multiple `RefNames`, one for each command or function. When a `RefEntry` has several `RefNames`, it is likely to have a `RefDescriptor` that identifies the whole family of functions.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context.

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the `RefEntry`.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running headers, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `refname`: `refnamediv`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refname`: `action`, `application`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `database`, `email`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `function`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oo-interface`, `option`, `optional`, `parameter`, `prompt`, `property`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `type`, `userinput`, `varname`.

## See Also

`refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`.

## Examples

For examples, see `refentry`, `reference`.

# refnamediv

refnamediv -- The name, purpose, and classification of a reference page

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refnamediv ::=
(refdescriptor?, refname+, refpurpose, refclass*,
 (remark|link|olink|ulink)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

RefNameDiv is the first mandatory section in a RefEntry. It is a peer to RefSynopsisDiv and RefSect1.

The elements in RefNameDiv identify the topic of the reference page (RefDescriptor or RefName), provide a concise summary (RefPurpose), and classify the page (RefClass).

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. RefNameDiv usually generates a section heading, in the same typographic style as a RefSect1 Title, called "Name."

The content of this section is traditionally the RefDescriptor or RefName, and the RefPurpose, separated by an em dash.

The RefClass may be presented, or it may be suppressed and used only to select a group of reference pages to process. You might use the value of RefClass to print all the reference pages appropriate to Solaris™ UNIX, for example.

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the RefEntry.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running headers, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

## Parents

These elements contain refnamediv: refentry.

## Children

The following elements occur in refnamediv: link, olink, refclass, refdescriptor, refname, refpurpose, remark, ulink.

## See Also

`refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`.

## Examples

For examples, see `refentry`, `reference`.

# refpurpose

refpurpose -- A short (one sentence) synopsis of the topic of a reference page

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
refpurpose ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `RefPurpose` is a concise summary of the topic of the reference page. A `RefPurpose` is usually limited to a single, short sentence.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. See `RefNameDiv`.

In a large `Reference`, `RefNames` and `RefPurposes` are sometimes used to construct a permuted index. A permuted index is a keyword-in-context concordance of lines, like the short definitions in this element reference; the keyword cycles alphabetically through the words of the (definition) lines.

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the `RefEntry`.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running headers, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `refpurpose`: `refnamediv`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refpurpose`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Examples

For examples, see `refentry`, `reference`.

# refsect1

refsect1 -- A major subsection of a reference entry

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsect1 ::=
(refsect1info?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 ((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
  simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
  literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
  screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
  fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
  methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
  graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
  informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
  figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
  constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
  authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 refsect2*) |
 refsect2+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Reference pages have their own hierarchical structure. A `RefSect1` is a major division in a `RefEntry`, analogous to a `Sect1` elsewhere in the document.

The value of a separate hierarchical structure is that it allows the content model of sections in reference pages to be customized differently than the content model of sections outside. For example, because of this split, it was easy to add a recursive sectioning element (`Section`) as a peer to `Sect1` in DocBook V3.1 without introducing it to `RefEntries`, in which it would not be desirable.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In some environments, the name, number, and order of major divisions in a reference page is strictly defined by house style. For example, one style requires that the first major section after the synopsis be the “Description,” which it must have as its title.

In those cases, it may be useful to replace `RefSect1` in the content model with a set of named sections (following the pattern of `RefNameDiv` and `RefSynopsisDiv`).

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the `RefEntry`.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running headers, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

## Parents

These elements contain `refsect1: refentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refsect1`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `simplpara`, `simplelist`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Attributes

`status`

`Status` identifies the editorial or publication status of the `RefSect1`.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

`refnamediv`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`.

## Examples

For examples, see `refentry`, `reference`.

# refsect1info

refsect1info -- Meta-information for a RefSect1

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsect1info ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, RefSect1Info contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain refsect1info: refsect1.

## Children

The following elements occur in refsect1info: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itermset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## Examples

For examples, see .

# refsect2

refsect2 -- A subsection of a RefSect1

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsect2 ::=
(refsect2info?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 ((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 refsect3*) |
 refsect3+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A RefSect2 is a second level section in a RefEntry, analogous to a Sect2 elsewhere in the document. See RefSect1.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain refsect2: refsect1, refsynopsisdiv.

## Children

The following elements occur in refsect2: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, ordered-

list, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refsect2info, refsect3, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the RefSect2.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

# refsect2info

refsect2info -- Meta-information for a RefSect2

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsect2info ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, RefSect2Info contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of RefSect2Info in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain refsect2info: refsect2.

## Children

The following elements occur in refsect2info: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, biblioset, biosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## Examples

See RefSect1Info in RefEntry for an analogous example.

# refsect3

refsect3 -- A subsection of a RefSect2

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsect3 ::=
(refsect3info?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A RefSect3 is a third level section in a RefEntry, analogous to a Sect3 elsewhere in the document. See RefSect1.

In DocBook, RefSect3 is the lowest-level section allowed in a RefEntry. There is no element analogous to a Sect4.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain refsect3: refsect2.

## Children

The following elements occur in refsect3: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemized-

list, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, ordered-list, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refsect3info, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the RefSect3.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## Examples

See RefSect1 and RefSect2 in RefEntry for analogous examples.

# refsect3info

refsect3info -- Meta-information for a RefSect3

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsect3info ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, RefSect3Info contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of RefSect3Info in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain refsect3info: refsect3.

## Children

The following elements occur in refsect3info: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, biblioset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## Examples

See RefSect1Info in RefEntry for an analogous example.

# refsection

refsection -- A recursive section in a refentry

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsection ::=
(refsectioninfo?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 ((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 refsection*)|
 refsection+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Reference pages have their own hierarchical structure. A RefSection is a recursive division in a RefEntry, analogous to a Section elsewhere in the document.

The value of a separate hierarchical structure is that it allows the content model of sections in reference pages to be customized differently than the content model of sections outside.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain refsection: refentry, refsection.

## Children

The following elements occur in refsection: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis,

figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refsection, refsectioninfo, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the RefSection.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

refnamediv, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsynopsisdiv.

# refsectioninfo

refsectioninfo -- Meta-information for a refsection

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsectioninfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, `refsectioninfo` contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain `refsectioninfo`: `refsection`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refsectioninfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliaset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itermset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

# refsynopsisdiv

refsynopsisdiv -- A syntactic synopsis of the subject of the reference page

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsynopsisdiv ::=
(refsynopsisdivinfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 ((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 refsect2*)|
 (refsect2+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

RefSynopsisDiv contains a syntactic synopsis of the function or command described by the RefEntry. When RefEntries are used to describe other sorts of things, RefSynopsisDiv should be used for whatever succinct, synopsis information seems appropriate.<sup>21</sup>

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. RefSynopsisDiv usually generates a section heading, in the same typographic style as a RefSect1 Title, called “Synopsis.”

Formatting reference pages may require a fairly sophisticated processing system. Much of the meta-information about a reference page (its name, type, purpose, title, and classification) is stored in wrappers near the beginning of the RefEntry.

Common presentational features, such as titles and running headers, may require data from several of these wrappers plus some generated text. Other formatting often requires that these elements be reordered.

## Parents

These elements contain refsynopsisdiv: refentry.

<sup>21</sup> In this book, each element of the DTD is described on a reference page, and the RefSynopsisDiv is used for the synopsis at the beginning of each entry.

## Children

The following elements occur in `refsynopsisdiv`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `refsect2`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `sipara`, `simplelist`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## See Also

`arg`, `cmdsynopsis`, `group`, `refnamediv`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `sbr`, `synopfragment`, `synopfragmentref`.

# refsynopsisdivinfo

refsynopsisdivinfo -- Meta-information for a RefSynopsisDiv

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
refsynopsisdivinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, RefSynopsisDivInfo contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of RefSynopsisDivInfo in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain refsynopsisdivinfo: refsynopsisdiv.

## Children

The following elements occur in refsynopsisdivinfo: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itermset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, oth-

ercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

# releaseinfo

releaseinfo -- Information about a particular release of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
releaseinfo ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

ReleaseInfo contains a brief description of the release or published version of a document or part of a document.

For example, the release information may state that the document is in beta, or that the software it describes is a beta version. It may also contain more specific information, such as the version number from a revision control system.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain releaseinfo: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in releaseinfo: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

date, edition, printhistory, pubdate, revhistory.

# remark

remark -- A remark (or comment) intended for presentation in a draft manuscript

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
remark ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The Remark element is designed to hold remarks, for example, editorial comments, that are useful while the document is in the draft stage, but are not intended for final publication.

Remarks are available almost anywhere and have a particularly broad content model. Your processing system may or may not support either the use of comments everywhere they are allowed or the full generality of the Remark content model.

Prior to version 4.0 of DocBook, this element was named Comment.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Remarks are often printed only in draft versions of a document and suppressed otherwise. This may be controlled by the Status attribute of an ancestor element (for example, Chapter), or by external processes, such as selecting an alternate stylesheet when publishing.

Remarks must not be nested within other Remarks. Because DocBook is harmonizing towards XML, this restriction cannot be enforced by the DTD. The processing of nested comments is undefined.

## Parents

These elements contain remark: abbrev, ackno, acronym, action, answer, appendix, application, article, artpagenums, attribution, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, bibliodiv, bibliography, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliosource, blockquote, bridgehead, callout, caution, chapter, citation, citebiblioid, citetitle, city, classsynopsisinfo, collabname, command, computeroutput, confdates, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, constraintdef, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, corpauthor, corpname, country, database, date, edition, email, emphasis, entry, fax, filename, firstname, firstterm, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, holder, honorific, important, index, indexdiv, interface, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemizedlist, jobtitle, keycap, label, lineage, lineannotation, link, listitem, literal, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, member, modespec, msgaud, msgexplan, msgtext, note, olink, option, optional, orderedlist, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, parameter, partintro, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, preface, primary, primaryie, procedure, productname, productnumber, programlisting, property, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, qandadiv, qandaset, question, quote, refentry, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo, refnamediv, refpurpose, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, releaseinfo, remark, replaceable, revdescription, revnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, setindex, shortaffil, sidebar, simpara, simplesect, state, step, street, subscript, subtitle, superscript, surname, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, tip, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput, variablelist, volumenum, warning, wordasword, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in remark: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE example PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<example><title>The Grand Unified Theory</title>
<para>
<remark>Some details are still a bit shaky</remark>
&hellip;
```

Q.E.D.  
</para>  
</example>

### **Example 32. The Grand Unified Theory**

*Some details are still a bit shaky*  
... Q.E.D.

# replaceable

replaceable -- Content that may or must be replaced by the user

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
replaceable ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|optional|anchor|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|co)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> command function option parameter	<i>None</i>

## Description

Replaceable is used to mark text that describes *what* a user is supposed to enter, but not the *actual text* that they are supposed to enter.

It is used to identify a class of object in the document, in which the user is expected to replace the text that identifies the class with some specific instance of that class. A canonical example is

```
<replaceable>filename</replaceable>
```

in which the user is expected to provide the name of some specific file to replace the text “filename.”

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Usually, the text is given special typographic treatment, such as italics, as a clue to the user that this is replaceable text. Often the font used is described in a “conventions” section at the beginning of the document.

## Parents

These elements contain replaceable: accel, ackno, action, application, arg, artpagenums, attribution, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliosource, bridgehead, citation, citebiblioid, citetitle, city, classname, classsynopsisinfo, colabname, command, computeroutput, confdates, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, constant, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, corpauthor, corpname, country, database, date, edition, email, emphasis, entry, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, fax, filename, firstname, foreignphrase, funcdef, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, group, guibutton, guicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, holder, honorific, initializer, interface, interface-

name, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, jobtitle, keycap, keycode, keysym, lineage, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, markup, medialabel, member, methodname, modespec, modifier, mousebutton, msgaud, msglevel, msgorig, olink, option, optional, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, paramdef, parameter, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, primary, primaryie, productname, productnumber, programlisting, prompt, property, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo, refname, refpurpose, releaseinfo, remark, returnvalue, rvnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, sgmltag, shortaffil, simpara, state, street, structfield, structname, subscript, subtitle, superscript, surname, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, volumenum, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in replaceable: anchor, co, inlinegraphic, inlinemediobject, link, olink, optional, remark, subscript, superscript, ulink.

## Attributes

class

Class identifies the type of the replaceable information.

## See Also

command, computeroutput, constant, literal, markup, option, optional, parameter, prompt, sgmltag, userinput, varname.

## Examples

For examples, see cmdsynopsis, medialabel, msgset, synopfragment.

# returnvalue

returnvalue -- The value returned by a function

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
returnvalue ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

ReturnValue identifies the value returned by a function or command.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain returnvalue: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in returnvalue: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## See Also

funcdef, funcparams, funcprototype, funcsynopsisinfo, function, paramdef, parameter, varargs, void.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <function>open</function> function returns <returnvalue>2</returnvalue>
(<errorname>ENOFILE</errorname>) if the file does not exist.
</para>
```

The open function returns 2 (ENOFILE) if the file does not exist.

# revdescription

revdescription -- A extended description of a revision to a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
revdescription ::=
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|procedure|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|
 indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `RevDescription` associated with a revision is a summary of the changes made in that revision. `RevDescription` is intended for long, complete summaries. For a simple text-only summary, see `RevRemark`.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain `revdescription`: `revision`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `revdescription`: `address`, `anchor`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

# revhistory

revhistory -- A history of the revisions to a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
revhistory ::=
(revision+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

RevHistory is a structure for documenting a history of changes, specifically, a history of changes to the document or section in which it occurs.

DocBook does not mandate an order for revisions: ascending order by date, descending order by date, and orders based on some other criteria are all equally acceptable.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. A tabular or list presentation is most common.

The order of revisions within a revhistory (ascending or descending date order, for example) is not mandated by DocBook

## Future Changes

Due to a parameterization oversight in the DTD, RevHistory is allowed in some outlandish places. Still, it is not an inline, so it should not be used inside LineAnnotations, Links, or Quotes. (Not to mention the truly outlandish places like Title and SeeAlso!)

In a future version of DocBook, RevHistory will be removed from these inline contexts.

The original intent for RevHistory was simply to document the history of changes to the document that contains it. In keeping with this meaning, you are advised to limit its use to places where bibliographic meta-information is allowed (the “info” elements).

One can argue that RevHistory has broader applicability for documenting changes to other systems as well, and in light of this, it may become available in more contexts, but that has not yet been decided.

## Parents

These elements contain revhistory: appendixinfo, application, articleinfo, attribution, bibliography, bibliographyinfo, bibliomisc, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, bridgehead, chapterinfo, citation, citetitle, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossaryinfo, glossentry, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, indexinfo, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, objectinfo, olink, para, partinfo, phrase,

prefaceinfo, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, qandaentry, quote, refentryinfo, refentrytitle, referenceinfo, refpurpose, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Children

The following elements occur in revhistory: revision.

## See Also

date, edition, printhistory, pubdate, releaseinfo.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE revhistory PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<revhistory>

<revision>
  <revnumber>0.91</revnumber>
  <date>11 Dec 1996</date>
  <authorinitials>ndw</authorinitials>
  <revremark>Bug fixes</revremark>
</revision>

<revision>
  <revnumber>0.90</revnumber>
  <date>30 Nov 1996</date>
  <authorinitials>ndw</authorinitials>
  <revremark>First beta release</revremark>
</revision>

</revhistory>
```

For additional examples, see also article.

# revision

revision -- An entry describing a single revision in the history of the revisions to a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
revision ::=  
(revnumber,date,authorinitials*,  
(revremark|revdescription)?)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

`Revision` contains information about a single revision to a document. Revisions are identified by a number and a date. They may also include the initials of the author, and additional remarks.

## Processing expectations

Revisions are often presented in a list or table. In a tabular presentation, each revision most likely forms a row in the table.

## Parents

These elements contain revision: `revhistory`.

## Children

The following elements occur in revision: `authorinitials`, `date`, `revdescription`, `revnumber`, `revremark`.

## Examples

For examples, see `article`, `revhistory`.

# revnumber

revnumber -- A document revision number

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
revnumber ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `RevNumber` identifies the revision number of a document. The revision number should uniquely identify a particular revision of a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. DocBook does not require that `RevNumbers` be sequential or make any demands on their format. They can be numeric, alphanumeric, or whatever suits your needs.

## Parents

These elements contain `revnumber: revision`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `revnumber`: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Examples

For examples, see `article`, `revhistory`.

# revremark

revremark -- A description of a revision to a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
revremark ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The RevRemark associated with a revision is a short summary of the changes made in that revision. If a longer, more complete summary is desired, see RevDescription.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain revremark: revision.

## Children

The following elements occur in revremark: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## Examples

For examples, see article, revhistory.

# rhs

rhs -- The right-hand side of an EBNF production

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
rhs ::=  
(#PCDATA|nonterminal|lineannotation|sbr)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

This element is only available if you are using the EBNF Module.

The right-hand side (RHS) of a production provides a definition for the `NonTerminal` on the left-hand side (LHS) of the `Production`.

## Parents

These elements contain rhs: `production`.

## Children

The following elements occur in rhs: `lineannotation`, `nonterminal`, `sbr`.

## Examples

For examples, see `productionset`.

## row

row -- A row in a table

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
row ::=
((entry|entrytbl)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>
rowsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A Row is a row in a table. It contains all of the cells (EntryS or EntryTbls) that appear in that row.

## Processing expectations

This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*.

Within a Row, cells are arranged horizontally from the start of the row to the end. Cells can, but are not required to, specify the column in which they occur, so it is possible for a row to contain fewer cells than there are columns in the table. This introduces missing cells, which are assumed to be empty. These missing cells can occur anywhere in the row.

Once a cell has been allocated to a column, subsequent cells may not fill preceding columns. In other words, while three cells can specify that they occur in columns 1, 3, and 5, they cannot specify that they occur in columns 1, 5, and 3. Once a column is passed, you can never go back.

If cells do not specify the column in which they occur, they are placed in the next available column. Calculation of the next available column is complicated by horizontal and vertical spanning. Cells from preceding rows can have a vertical span that causes them to extend into the current row, thus occupying space in the current row. These logically occupied cells are skipped when looking for the next available column. Similarly, if a cell has a horizontal span, it logically occupies the columns that follow it. Cells can simultaneously span rows and columns.

Each of the following conditions is an error:

- A cell spans beyond the boundaries of the table.
- A row contains more cells than there are columns in the table.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

- The arrangement of cells in a row forces one or more cells past the last column of the table.

## Parents

These elements contain row: `tbody`, `tfoot`, `thead`.

## Children

The following elements occur in row: `entry`, `entrytbl`.

## Attributes

`rowsep`

If `RowSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn below all the cells in this Row (unless other, interior elements, suppress some or all of the rules). A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule below the last row in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute of the enclosing `Table` or `InformalTable` and the `RowSep` of the last row is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from enclosing elements.

`valign`

`Valign` specifies the vertical alignment of text (and other elements) within the cells of this Row. If no alignment is specified, it is inherited from enclosing elements.

## See Also

`colspec`, `entry`, `entrytbl`, `informaltable`, `spanspec`, `table`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `tgroup`, `thead`.

## Examples

For examples, see `entrytbl`, `footnoteref`, `informaltable`, `table`.

# sbr

sbr -- An explicit line break in a command synopsis

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sbr ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

For the most part, DocBook attempts to describe document structure rather than presentation. However, in some complex environments, it is possible to demonstrate that there is no reasonable set of processing expectations that can guarantee correct formatting.

`CmdSynopsis` is one of those environments. Within a long synopsis, it may be necessary to specify the location of a line break explicitly.

The `SBR` element indicates the position of such a line break in a `CmdSynopsis`. It is purely presentational.

## Processing expectations

`SBR` causes a line break.

## Parents

These elements contain `sbr`: `arg`, `cmdsynopsis`, `group`, `rhs`.

## See Also

`arg`, `cmdsynopsis`, `group`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `synopfragment`, `synopfragmentref`.

## Examples

For examples, see `cmdsynopsis`, `synopfragment`.

# screen

screen -- Text that a user sees or might see on a computer screen

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
screen ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citrefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage|co|coref|textobject|lineannotation)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> linespecific	"linespecific"
linenumbering	<i>Enumeration:</i> numbered unnumbered	<i>None</i>

## Description

A Screen is a verbatim environment for displaying text that the user might see on a computer terminal. It is often used to display the results of a command.

Having less specific semantic overtones, Screen is often used wherever a verbatim presentation is desired, but the semantic of ProgramListing is inappropriate.

## Processing expectations

This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant. Screens are usually displayed in a fixed width font.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Future Changes

The `xml:space` attribute is automatically provided in the XML DTD.

## Parents

These elements contain screen: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informal-example`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `screenco`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `textobject`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in screen: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `co`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `coref`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `textobject`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`format`

The `Format` attribute applies the `linespecific` notation to all Screens. All white space and line breaks must be preserved.

`linenumbering`

**V4.0** Line numbering indicates whether or not the lines of a Screen are to be automatically numbered. The details of numbering (every line or only selected lines, on the left or right, etc.) are left up to the processing application. Be aware that not all processors are capable of numbering lines.

width

Width specifies the width (in characters) of the longest line in this Screen (formatters may use this value to determine scaling or rotation).

## See Also

computeroutput, lineannotation, literallayout, programlisting, screenshot, synopsis, userinput.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE screen PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<screen>
  Volume in drive C is SYSTEM          Serial number is 2350:717C
  Directory of C:\

10/17/97  9:04          &lt;DIR&gt;   bin
10/16/97  14:11        &lt;DIR&gt;   DOS
10/16/97  14:40        &lt;DIR&gt;   Program Files
10/16/97  14:46        &lt;DIR&gt;   TEMP
10/17/97  9:04          &lt;DIR&gt;   tmp
10/16/97  14:37        &lt;DIR&gt;   WINNT
10/16/97  14:25          119 AUTOEXEC.BAT
 2/13/94  6:21          54,619 COMMAND.COM
10/16/97  14:25          115 CONFIG.SYS
11/16/97  17:17        61,865,984 pagefile.sys
 2/13/94  6:21          9,349 WINA20.386
</screen>
```

```
Volume in drive C is SYSTEM          Serial number is 2350:717C
Directory of C:\

10/17/97  9:04          <DIR>   bin
10/16/97  14:11        <DIR>   DOS
10/16/97  14:40        <DIR>   Program Files
10/16/97  14:46        <DIR>   TEMP
10/17/97  9:04          <DIR>   tmp
10/16/97  14:37        <DIR>   WINNT
10/16/97  14:25          119 AUTOEXEC.BAT
 2/13/94  6:21          54,619 COMMAND.COM
10/16/97  14:25          115 CONFIG.SYS
11/16/97  17:17        61,865,984 pagefile.sys
 2/13/94  6:21          9,349 WINA20.386
```

For additional examples, see also `lineannotation`, `screenco`.

# screenco

screenco -- A screen with associated areas used in callouts

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
screenco ::=
(areaSpec, screen, calloutList*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Callouts, such as numbered bullets, are an annotation mechanism. In an online system, these bullets are frequently “hot,” and clicking on them navigates to the corresponding annotation.

A `ScreenCO` is a wrapper around an `AreaSpec` and a `Screen`. An `AreaSpec` identifies the locations (coordinates) in the `Screen` where the callouts occur. The `ScreenCO` may also contain the list of annotations in a `CalloutList`, although the `CalloutList` may also occur outside of the wrapper, elsewhere in the document.

It is also possible to embed `CO` elements directly in the verbatim text, in order to avoid the overhead of calculating the correct coordinates. If you decide to follow this route, use a `Screen` and a `CalloutList` without the `ScreenCO` wrapper. A `ScreenCO` must specify at least one coordinate.

For a complete description of callouts, see `Callout`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant.

The mandatory processing expectations of a `ScreenCO` are minimal: a system is expected to render the program listing and the callout list, if present.

If explicit `CO` elements are embedded in a `Screen`, they must generate appropriate callout marks.

In online environments, the processing system may be able to instantiate the linking relationships between the callout marks in the program listing and the annotations. Some systems may even be able to go a step further and generate the callout marks automatically from the coordinate information, but this level of sophistication is not mandatory.

## Parents

These elements contain `screenco`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informal-example`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`,

sect4,sect5,section,setindex,sidebar,simplesect,step,textobject,tip,variablelist,warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in screenco: areaspec, calloutlist, screen.

## See Also

areaspec,calloutlist,co,coref,graphicco,imageobjectco,mediaobjectco,programlistingco.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE informalexample PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<informalexample>
<screen>
  Volume in drive C is SYSTEM          Serial number is 2350:717C
  Directory of C:\

10/17/97  9:04          &lt;DIR>    bin
10/16/97  14:11        &lt;DIR>    DOS          <co id="dos"/>
10/16/97  14:40        &lt;DIR>    Program Files
10/16/97  14:46        &lt;DIR>    TEMP
10/17/97  9:04          &lt;DIR>    tmp
10/16/97  14:37        &lt;DIR>    WINNT
10/16/97  14:25          119 AUTOEXEC.BAT <co id="autoexec.bat"/>
  2/13/94  6:21          54,619 COMMAND.COM <co id="command.com"/>
10/16/97  14:25          115 CONFIG.SYS <co id="config.sys"/>
11/16/97  17:17        61,865,984 pagefile.sys
  2/13/94  6:21          9,349 WINA20.386 <co id="wina20.386"/>
</screen>
<calloutlist>
<callout arearefs="dos">
<para>
This directory holds <trademark>MS-DOS</trademark>, the
operating system that was installed before <trademark>Windows
NT</trademark>.
</para>
</callout>

<callout arearefs="autoexec.bat command.com config.sys">
<para>
System startup code for DOS.
</para>
</callout>

<callout arearefs="wina20.386">
<para>
Some sort of <trademark>Windows 3.1</trademark> hack for some 386 processors,
as I recall.
</para>
</callout>
</calloutlist>
</informalexample>
```

Volume in drive C is SYSTEM                      Serial number is 2350:717C  
Directory of C:\

10/17/97	9:04	<DIR>	bin	①
10/16/97	14:11	<DIR>	DOS	
10/16/97	14:40	<DIR>	Program Files	
10/16/97	14:46	<DIR>	TEMP	
10/17/97	9:04	<DIR>	tmp	
10/16/97	14:37	<DIR>	WINNT	
10/16/97	14:25		119 AUTOEXEC.BAT	②
2/13/94	6:21		54,619 COMMAND.COM	③
10/16/97	14:25		115 CONFIG.SYS	④
11/16/97	17:17		61,865,984 pagefile.sys	
2/13/94	6:21		9,349 WINA20.386	⑤

① This directory holds MS-DOS™, the operating system that was installed before Windows NT™.

② ③ ④  
These are the startup code for DOS.

⑤ Some sort of Windows 3.1™ hack for some 386 processors, as I recall.

# screeninfo

screeninfo -- Information about how a screen shot was produced

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
screeninfo ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

ScreenInfo contains meta-information about how a ScreenShot was produced. Note that the content model of ScreenShot is radically different from the other “info” elements, to which it bears little or no resemblance.

ScreenInfo is a good place to store information about how and at what resolution a screen shot was produced, when it was produced, and by whom.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain screeninfo: screenshot.

## Children

The following elements occur in `screeninfo`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## See Also

`appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `bibliographyinfo`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setinfo`.

## Examples

For examples, see `screenshot`.

# screenshot

screenshot -- A representation of what the user sees or might see on a computer screen

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
screenshot ::=
(screeninfo?,
 (graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `ScreenShot` is a graphical environment for displaying an image of what the user might see on a computer screen. It is often used to display application screen shots, dialog boxes, and other components of a graphical user interface.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain `screenshot`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informal-example`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `textobject`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `screenshot`: `graphic`, `graphicco`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `screeninfo`.

## See Also

`computeroutput`, `lineannotation`, `literallayout`, `programlisting`, `screen`, `synopsis`, `user-input`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE screenshot PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
```

```
<screenshot>  
<screeninfo>640x480x256</screeninfo>  
<graphic fileref="copilot.gif"></graphic>  
</screenshot>
```

# secondary

secondary -- A secondary word or phrase in an index term

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
secondary ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
sortas	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Secondary contains a secondary word or phrase in an IndexTerm. The text of a Secondary term is less significant than the Primary term, but more significant than the Tertiary term for sorting and display purposes.

In IndexTerms, you can only have one primary, secondary, and tertiary term. If you want to index multiple secondary terms for the same primary, you must repeat the primary in another IndexTerm. You cannot place several Secondaries in the same primary.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element provides data for processing but is not rendered in the primary flow of text.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain secondary: `indexterm`.

## Children

The following elements occur in secondary: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, corppauthor, database, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, function, glossterm, guibutton, guicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

sortas

`SortAs` specifies the string by which the element's content is to be sorted. If unspecified, the proper content is used.

## See Also

indexentry, indexterm, primary, primaryie, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, tertiary, tertiaryie.

## Examples

For examples, see `chapter`, `indexterm`.

# secondaryie

secondaryie -- A secondary term in an index entry, rather than in the text

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
secondaryie ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkends	IDREFS	<i>None</i>

## Description

SecondaryIE identifies a secondary word or words in an IndexEntry.

In IndexEntrys, you can specify as many secondary terms that are necessary. Secondary and tertiary terms can be mixed, following the primary.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. SecondaryIEs occur below the PrimaryIE, usually aligned with each other and indented from the primary.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain secondaryie: indexentry.

## Children

The following elements occur in secondaryie: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, corppauthor, database, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

linkends

Linkends, if used, points to the IndexTerms indexed by this entry.

## See Also

indexentry, indexterm, primary, primaryie, secondary, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, tertiary, tertiaryie.

## Examples

For examples, see index.

# sect1

sect1 -- A top-level section of document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect1 ::=
(sect1info?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 (((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
  simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
  literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
  screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
  fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
  methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
  graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
  informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
  figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
  constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
  authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 ((refentry)*|
  sect2*|simplesect*))|
(refentry)+|
sect2+|simplesect+),
(toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
renderas	<i>Enumeration:</i> sect2 sect3 sect4 sect5	<i>None</i>
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Sect1 is one of the top-level sectioning elements in a component. There are three types of sectioning elements in DocBook:

- Explicitly numbered sections, Sect1...Sect5, which must be properly nested and can only be five levels deep.
- Recursive Sections, which are alternative to the numbered sections and have unbounded depth.
- SimpleSects, which are terminal. SimpleSects can occur as the “leaf” sections in either recursive sections or any of the numbered sections, or directly in components.

None of the sectioning elements is allowed to “float” in a component. You can place paragraphs and other block elements before a section, but you cannot place anything after it.

This means that you cannot have content in the `Sect1` after the end of a `Sect2`. This is consistent with the DocBook book model, because in a printed book it is usually impossible for a reader to detect the end of the enclosed second level section and, therefore, all content after a second level section appears in that section.

## Processing Expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes sections are numbered.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the `Toc` element in the content model will be replaced by `TocChap`.

## Parents

These elements contain `sect1`: `appendix`, `article`, `chapter`, `partintro`, `preface`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `sect1`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glossary`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `index`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `lot`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `refentry`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `sect1info`, `sect2`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `simplpara`, `simplelist`, `simplesect`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `toc`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Attributes

`label`

`Label` specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit `Label` attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the `Label` is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

`renderas`

The `RenderAs` attribute identifies how the section should be rendered. In this way, a section at one level of the structural hierarchy can be made to appear to be at another level.

`status`

`Status` identifies the editorial or publication status of the `Sect1`.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

bridgehead, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, simplesect.

## Examples

For examples, see chapter, indexterm, link, olink, sect1info, sidebar, simplesect, title.

# sect1info

sect1info -- Meta-information for a Sect1

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect1info ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, Sect1Info contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of Sect1Info in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain sect1info: sect1.

## Children

The following elements occur in sect1info: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE sect1 PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<sect1>
  <sect1info>
    <legalnotice><para>In the public domain.</para></legalnotice>
    <title>Something Pithy</title>
    <subtitle>How I Made Up a Silly Example</subtitle>
  </sect1info>
<title>Something Pithy</title>
<para>
Content.
</para>
</sect1>
```

## sect2

sect2 -- A subsection within a Sect1

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect2 ::=
(sect2info?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 (((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 ((refentry)*|
 sect3*|simplesect*))|
 (refentry)+|
 sect3+|simplesect+),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
renderas	<i>Enumeration:</i> sect1 sect3 sect4 sect5	<i>None</i>
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A Sect2 is a second-level section in a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes sections are numbered.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the ToC element in the content model will be replaced by TocChap.

## Parents

These elements contain `sect2`: `sect1`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `sect2`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glossary`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `index`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `lot`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `refentry`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `sect2info`, `sect3`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `simplesect`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `toc`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Attributes

`label`

`Label` specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit `Label` attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the `Label` is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

`renderas`

The `RenderAs` attribute identifies how the section should be rendered. In this way, a section at one level of the structural hierarchy can be made to appear to be at another level.

`status`

`Status` identifies the editorial or publication status of the `Sect2`.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

`bridgehead`, `sect1`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `simplesect`.

## Examples

For examples, see [link](#).

# sect2info

sect2info -- Meta-information for a Sect2

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect2info ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, `Sect2Info` contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

`AuthorBlurb` and `Affiliation` will be removed from the inline content of `Sect2Info` in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain `sect2info: sect2`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `sect2info`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `biblioset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itemset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

## Examples

See Sect1Info for an analogous example.

## sect3

sect3 -- A subsection within a Sect2

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect3 ::=
(sect3info?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 (((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
  simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
  literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
  screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
  fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
  methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
  graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
  informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
  figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
  constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
  authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 ((refentry)*|
  sect4*|simplesect*))|
(refentry)+|
sect4+|simplesect+),
(toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
renderas	<i>Enumeration:</i> sect1 sect2 sect4 sect5	<i>None</i>
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A Sect3 is a third-level section in a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes sections are numbered.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the ToC element in the content model will be replaced by TocChap.

## Parents

These elements contain sect3: sect2.

## Children

The following elements occur in sect3: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, bibliography, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glossary, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, index, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, lot, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, sect3info, sect4, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, simplesect, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, toc, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

renderas

The RenderAs attribute identifies how the section should be rendered. In this way, a section at one level of the structural hierarchy can be made to appear to be at another level.

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Sect3.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

bridgehead, sect1, sect2, sect4, sect5, section, simplesect.

# sect3info

sect3info -- Meta-information for a Sect 3

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect3info ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, Sect3Info contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of Sect3Info in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain sect3info: sect3.

## Children

The following elements occur in sect3info: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, biblioset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

## Examples

See Sect1Info for an analogous example.

# sect4

sect4 -- A subsection within a Sect 3

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect4 ::=
(sect4info?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 (((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 ((refentry)*|
 sect5*|simplesect*))|
 (refentry)+|
 sect5+|simplesect+),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
renderas	<i>Enumeration:</i> sect1 sect2 sect3 sect5	<i>None</i>
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A Sect 4 is a fourth-level section in a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes sections are numbered.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the ToC element in the content model will be replaced by TocChap.

## Parents

These elements contain sect4: sect3.

## Children

The following elements occur in sect4: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, bibliography, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glossary, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, index, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, lot, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, sect4info, sect5, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, simplesect, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, toc, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

renderas

The RenderAs attribute identifies how the section should be rendered. In this way, a section at one level of the structural hierarchy can be made to appear to be at another level.

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Sect4.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

bridgehead, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect5, section, simplesect.

# sect4info

sect4info -- Meta-information for a Sect 4

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect4info ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, Sect4Info contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of Sect4Info in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain sect4info: sect4.

## Children

The following elements occur in sect4info: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bioset, biosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

## Examples

See Sect1Info for an analogous example.

## sect5

sect5 -- A subsection within a Sect 4

### Synopsis

#### Content Model

```
sect5 ::=
(sect5info?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 (((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 ((refentry)*|
 simplesect*))|
 (refentry)+|
 simplesect+),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

#### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
renderas	<i>Enumeration:</i> sect1 sect2 sect3 sect4	<i>None</i>
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### Description

A Sect5 is a fifth-level section in a document. This is the lowest-level numbered sectioning element. There is no Sect6.

### Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes sections are numbered.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the ToC element in the content model will be replaced by TocChap.

## Parents

These elements contain sect5: sect4.

## Children

The following elements occur in sect5: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, bibliography, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glossary, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, index, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, lot, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, refentry, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, sect5info, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, simplesect, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, toc, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

renderas

The RenderAs attribute identifies how the section should be rendered. In this way, a section at one level of the structural hierarchy can be made to appear to be at another level.

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the Sect5.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

bridgehead, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, section, simplesect.

# sect5info

sect5info -- Meta-information for a Sect5

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sect5info ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, Sect5Info contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of Sect5Info in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain sect5info: sect5.

## Children

The following elements occur in sect5info: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, biblioset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itemset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sectioninfo, setinfo.

## Examples

See Sect1Info for an analogous example.

# section

section -- A recursive section

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
section ::=
(sectioninfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*,
 (((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
 ((refentry)*|
 (section)*|
 simplesect*))|
 (refentry)+|
 (section)+|
 simplesect+),
 (toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography)*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Section is one of the top-level sectioning elements in a component. There are three types of sectioning elements in DocBook:

- Explicitly numbered sections, Sect1...Sect5, which must be properly nested and can only be five levels deep.
- Recursive Sections, which are an alternative to the numbered sections and have unbounded depth.
- SimpleSects, which are terminal. SimpleSects can occur as the “leaf” sections in either recursive sections or any of the numbered sections, or directly in components.

Sections may be more convenient than numbered sections in some authoring environments because they can be moved around in the document hierarchy without renaming.

None of the sectioning elements is allowed to “float” in a component. You can place paragraphs and other block elements before a section, but you cannot place anything after it.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes sections are numbered.

Use of deeply nested `Sections` may cause problems in some processing systems.

## Parents

These elements contain section: `appendix`, `article`, `chapter`, `partintro`, `preface`, `section`.

## Children

The following elements occur in section: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glossary`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `index`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `lot`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `refentry`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `section`, `sectioninfo`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `simplpara`, `simplelist`, `simplesect`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `toc`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Attributes

label

`Label` specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit `Label` attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the `Label` is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

status

`Status` identifies the editorial or publication status of the `Section`.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

`bridgehead`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `simplesect`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter><title>Test Chapter</title>
<para>This chapter uses recursive sections.</para>
<section>
<sectioninfo>
<abstract><para>A trivial example of recursive sections.</para>
</abstract>
</sectioninfo>
<title>Like a Sect1</title>
<subtitle>Or How I Learned to Let Go of Enumeration
and Love to Recurse</subtitle>
<para>This section is like a Sect1.</para>
<section><title>Like a Sect2</title>
<para>This section is like a Sect2.</para>
<section><title>Like a Sect3</title>
<para>This section is like a Sect3.</para>
<section><title>Like a Sect4</title>
<para>This section is like a Sect4.</para>
<section><title>Like a Sect5</title>
<para>This section is like a Sect5.</para>
<section><title>Would be like a Sect6</title>
<para>This section would be like a Sect6, if there was one.</para>
<section><title>Would be like a Sect7</title>
<para>This section would be like a Sect7, if there was one.</para>
</section>
</chapter>
```

For additional examples, see also `html-form`.

# sectioninfo

sectioninfo -- Meta-information for a recursive section

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sectioninfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Like the other “info” elements, `SectionInfo` contains meta-information about the section of the document in which it occurs.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

`AuthorBlurb` and `Affiliation` will be removed from the inline content of `SectionInfo` in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Parents

These elements contain `sectioninfo: section`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `sectioninfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `biblioset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itermset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`,

othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

## See Also

appendixinfo, articleinfo, bibliographyinfo, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, prefaceinfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, screeninfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, setinfo.

## Examples

For examples, see section.

## see

see -- Part of an index term directing the reader instead to another entry in the index

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
see ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The use of `See` in an `IndexTerm` indicates that the reader should be directed elsewhere in the index if they attempt to look up this term.

The content of `See` identifies another term in the index which the reader should consult *instead* of the current term.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element provides data for processing but it is not rendered in the primary flow of text.

It is possible for multiple `IndexTerms`, taken together, to form an illogical index. For example, given the following `IndexTerms`:

```
<indexterm><primary>Extensible Markup Language</primary>
  <see>XML</see></indexterm>
<indexterm><primary>Extensible Markup Language</primary>
  <secondary>definition of</secondary>
</indexterm>
```

there's no way to construct a logical index because an entry in the index should never have both a `see` and other content.

DocBook cannot detect these errors. You will have to rely on an external process to find them.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain see: `indexterm`.

## Children

The following elements occur in see: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `gUIButton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## See Also

`indexentry`, `indexterm`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`.

## Examples

For examples, see `indexterm`.

## seealso

seealso -- Part of an index term directing the reader also to another entry in the index

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
seealso ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The use of `SeeAlso` in an `IndexTerm` indicates that the reader should be directed elsewhere in the index for additional information.

The content of `SeeAlso` identifies another term in the index that the reader should consult *in addition to* the current term.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element provides data for processing but is not rendered in the primary flow of text.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `seealso`: `indexterm`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `seealso`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## See Also

`indexentry`, `indexterm`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`.

## Examples

For examples, see `indexterm`.

# seealsoie

seealsoie -- A “See also” entry in an index, rather than in the text

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
seealsoie ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkends	IDREFS	<i>None</i>

## Description

SeeAlsoIE identifies a “See also” cross-reference in an `IndexEntry`. `IndexEntry`s occur in an `Index`, not in the flow of the text. They are part of a formatted index, not markers for indexing.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. `IndexEntry`s that include a `SeeAlsoIE` should be formatted normally, with the “See also” indented below the term.

`SeeAlsoIE` is usually expected to generate the text “See Also”.

The `Linkends` attribute should point other `IndexEntry`s in the same `Index`. Online systems may use them to form hypertext links.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain seealso: `indexentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in seealso: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`linkends`

`Linkends` points to a the related `IndexEntry`s.

## See Also

`indexentry`, `indexterm`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seeie`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`.

## Examples

For examples, see `index`.

# seeie

seeie -- A “See” entry in an index, rather than in the text

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
seeie ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>None</i>

## Description

SeeIE identifies a “See” cross reference in an `IndexEntry`. `IndexEntry`s occur in an `Index`, not in the flow of the text. They are part of a formatted index, not markers for indexing.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. `IndexEntry`s that include a `SeeIE` should be formatted normally, with the “See also” indented below the term. There should be no other entries for this term.

`SeeIE` is usually expected to generate the text, “See.”

The `Linkend` attribute should point to the referenced `IndexEntry`s, which should be in the same `Index`. Online systems may use the link information to form a hypertext link.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain seeie: `indexentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in seeie: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`linkend`

`Linkend` points to the associated `IndexEntry`.

## See Also

`indexentry`, `indexterm`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`.

## Examples

For examples, see `index`.

# seg

seg -- An element of a list item in a segmented list

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
seg ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `SegmentedList` consists of a set of headings (`SegTitles`) and a list of parallel sets of elements. Every `SegListItem` contains a set of elements that have a one-to-one correspondence with the headings. Each of these elements is contained in a `Seg`.

## Processing expectations

Segmented lists can be formatted in a number of ways. Two popular formats are tabular and as a list of repeated headings and elements. In a tabular presentation, each `Seg` is a cell in the body of the table. In the list presentation, each `Seg` occurs next to the appropriate heading.

DocBook cannot detect errors caused by too many or too few `Segs` in a `SegListItem`. You will have to rely on external processes to find those errors.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `seg`: `seglistitem`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `seg`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `gUIButton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Examples

For examples, see `segmentedlist`.

# seglistitem

seglistitem -- A list item in a segmented list

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
seglistitem ::=  
(seg+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `SegmentedList` consists of a set of headings (`SegTitles`) and a list of parallel sets of elements. Each set of elements is stored in a `SegListItem`.

## Processing expectations

Segmented lists can be formatted in a number of ways. Two popular formats are tabular and as a list of repeated headings and elements. In a tabular presentation, each `SegListItem` is a row in the table. In the list presentation, each `SegListItem` contains a block of heading/element pairs.

DocBook cannot detect errors caused by too many or too few Segs in a `SegListItem`. You will have to rely on external processes to find those errors.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain seglistitem: `segmentedlist`.

## Children

The following elements occur in seglistitem: `seg`.

## Examples

For examples, see `segmentedlist`.

# segmentedlist

segmentedlist -- A segmented list, a list of sets of elements

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
segmentedlist ::=
((title,titleabbrev?)?,
 segtitle+,seglistitem+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `SegmentedList` consists of a set of headings (`SegTitles`) and a list of parallel sets of elements. Every `SegListItem` contains a set of elements that have a one-to-one correspondence with the headings. Each of these elements is contained in a `Seg`.

## Processing expectations

Segmented lists can be formatted in a number of ways. Two popular formats are tabular and as a list of repeated headings and elements. In a tabular presentation, the `SegmentedList` is the table. In the list presentation, the `SegmentedList` surrounds the entire list of blocks of heading/element pairs.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, at least two `SegTitles` will be required.

## Parents

These elements contain `segmentedlist`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `example`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `highlights`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `textobject`, `tip`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `segmentedlist`: `seglistitem`, `segtitle`, `title`, `titleabbrev`.

## See Also

`calloutlist`, `itemizedlist`, `listitem`, `orderedlist`, `simplelist`, `variablelist`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The capitals of the states of the United States of America are:

<segmentedlist><title>State Capitals</title>
<?dbhtml list-presentation="list"?>
<segtitle>State</segtitle>
<segtitle>Capital</segtitle>
<seglistitem><seg>Alabama</seg><seg>Montgomery</seg></seglistitem>
<seglistitem><seg>Alaska</seg><seg>Anchorage</seg></seglistitem>
<seglistitem><seg>Arkansas</seg><seg>Little Rock</seg></seglistitem>
</segmentedlist>

&hellip;
</para>
```

The capitals of the states of the United States of America are:

**State Capitals**  
**State:** Alabama  
**Capital:** Montgomery  
**State:** Alaska  
**Capital:** Anchorage  
**State:** Arkansas  
**Capital:** Little Rock  
...

Alternatively:

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
<segmentedlist><title>State Capitals</title>
<?dbhtml list-presentation="table"?>
<segtitle>State</segtitle>
<segtitle>Capital</segtitle>
<seglistitem><seg>Alabama</seg><seg>Montgomery</seg></seglistitem>
<seglistitem><seg>Alaska</seg><seg>Anchorage</seg></seglistitem>
<seglistitem><seg>Arkansas</seg><seg>Little Rock</seg></seglistitem>
</segmentedlist>

&hellip;
</para>
```

**State Capitals**  
**State:** Alabama  
**Capital:** Montgomery  
**State:** Alaska  
**Capital:** Anchorage  
**State:** Arkansas  
**Capital:** Little Rock  
...

# segtitle

segtitle -- The title of an element of a list item in a segmented list

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
segtitle ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Each heading in a `SegmentedList` is contained in its own `SegTitle`.

The relationship between `SegTitles` and `Segs` is implicit in the document; the first `SegTitle` goes with the first `Seg` in each `SegListItem`, the second `SegTitle` goes with the second `Seg`, and so on.

## Processing expectations

Segmented lists can be formatted in a number of ways. Two popular formats are tabular and as list of repeated headings and elements. In a tabular presentation, each `SegTitle` is a column heading. In the list presentation, each `SegTitle` is repeated before the corresponding `Seg`.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `segtitle`: `segmentedlist`.

## Children

The following elements occur in segtitle: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, corpauthor, database, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Examples

For examples, see `segmentedlist`.

# seriesvolnums

seriesvolnums -- Numbers of the volumes in a series of books

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
seriesvolnums ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

SeriesVolNums contains the numbers of the volumes of the books in a series. It is a wrapper for bibliographic information.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain seriesvolnums: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in seriesvolnums: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

biblioid, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, productnumber, pubnumber, volumenum.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
TBS.
</para>
```

TBS.

# set

set -- A collection of books

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
set ::=
((title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 setinfo?, toc?,
 (book)+,
 setindex?)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
fpi	CDATA	<i>None</i>
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A *Set* is a collection of *Books*. Placing multiple *Books* in a *Set*, as opposed to publishing each of them separately, has the advantage that ID/IDREF links can then be used across all books.

*Set* is the very top of the DocBook structural hierarchy. There's nothing that contains a *Set*.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. A *Set* may generate additional front and back matter (tables of contents and *Set*Indices, for example) around the *Books* it contains.

## Children

The following elements occur in *set*: *book*, *setindex*, *setinfo*, *subtitle*, *title*, *titleabbrev*, *toc*.

## Attributes

fpi

FPI holds the Formal Public Identifier for the *Set*.

status

Status identifies the editorial or publication status of the *Set*.

Publication status might be used to control formatting (for example, printing a “draft” watermark on drafts) or processing (perhaps a document with a status of “final” should not include any components that are not final).

## See Also

appendix, article, book, chapter, colophon, dedication, part, partintro, preface.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE set PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">

<set><title>The Perl Series</title>
<setinfo>
  <corpauthor>O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.</corpauthor>
</setinfo>

<book><title>Learning Perl</title>
<chapter><title>...</title><para>...</para></chapter>
</book>

<book><title>Programming Perl</title>
<chapter><title>...</title><para>...</para></chapter>
</book>

<book><title>Advanced Perl Programming</title>
<chapter><title>...</title><para>...</para></chapter>
</book>

</set>
```

# setindex

setindex -- An index to a set of books

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
setindex ::=
(setindexinfo?,
 (title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
 constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
 authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 (indexdiv*|indexentry*))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `SetIndex` contains the formatted index of a complete `Set` of Books. An index may begin with introductory material, followed by any number of `IndexEntry`s or `IndexDiv`s.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. An `Index` in a `Set` usually causes a forced page break in print media.

In many processing systems, indexes are generated automatically or semiautomatically and never appear instantiated as DocBook markup.

## Parents

These elements contain `setindex`: `book`, `set`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `setindex`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexdiv`, `indexentry`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlist-`

ingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, setindexinfo, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, subtitle, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## Examples

See Index.

# setindexinfo

setindexinfo -- Meta-information for a Set Index

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
setindexinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `SetIndexInfo` element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a `SetIndex`. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain `setindexinfo`: `setindex`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `setindexinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliaset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itermset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

# setinfo

setinfo -- Meta-information for a Set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
setinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
 itemset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
 authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset|collab|confgroup|
 contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
 edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
 biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
 bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
 productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
 releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
 volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
 lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
contents	IDREFS	<i>None</i>

## Description

SetInfo contains meta-information about an entire set of Books.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. The wrapper merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Future Changes

AuthorBlurb and Affiliation will be removed from the inline content of SetInfo in DocBook V4.0. A new wrapper element will be created to associate this information with authors, editors, and other contributors.

## Future Changes

The contents attribute will be removed.

## Parents

These elements contain setinfo: set.

## Children

The following elements occur in `setinfo`: `abbrev`, `abstract`, `address`, `affiliation`, `artpagenums`, `author`, `authorblurb`, `authorgroup`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `biblioset`, `bibliosource`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `collab`, `confgroup`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `copyright`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `date`, `edition`, `editor`, `firstname`, `graphic`, `honorific`, `indexterm`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `itermset`, `keywordset`, `legalnotice`, `lineage`, `mediaobject`, `modespec`, `orgname`, `othercredit`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `personname`, `printhistory`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `pubdate`, `publisher`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `releaseinfo`, `revhistory`, `seriesvolnums`, `subjectset`, `subtitle`, `surname`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `volumenum`.

## Attributes

`contents`

`Contents`, if specified, should contain a list of all the IDs of the book-level subelements in the `Set`, presumably in their natural order.

## See Also

`appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `bibliographyinfo`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `screeninfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`.

## Examples

For examples, see `set`.

# sgmltag

sgmltag -- A component of SGML markup

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
sgmltag ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> attribute attvalue element emptytag endtag genentity numcharref paramentity pi sgmlcomment starttag xmlpi	<i>None</i>

## Description

An `SGMLTag` identifies an SGML markup construct. The utility of this element is almost wholly constrained to books about SGML.

`SGMLTag` is sufficient for most XML constructs, which are identical to the corresponding SGML constructs, it but does not have any provisions for handling the special features of XML markup. A future version of DocBook will address this issue, probably by adding new `Class` values. In the meantime, you may get by by assigning a `Role` attribute for XML.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. `SGMLTag` generates all the necessary punctuation before and after the construct it identifies. For example, it generates both the leading ampersand and the trailing semicolon when the `Class` is `genentity`.

## Parents

These elements contain `sgmltag`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`,

literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in sgmltag: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## Attributes

class

Class identifies the specific SGML construct represented.

## See Also

computeroutput, constant, literal, markup, option, optional, parameter, prompt, replaceable, userinput, varname.

## Examples

For examples, see collab, link, simplelist, wordasword, xref.

# shortaffil

shortaffil -- A brief description of an affiliation

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
shortaffil ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

ShortAffil contains an abbreviated or brief description of an individual's Affiliation.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain shortaffil: affiliation.

## Children

The following elements occur in shortaffil: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

affiliation, corpname, jobtitle, orgdiv, orgname.

## Examples

For examples, see author, authorgroup.

# shortcut

shortcut -- A key combination for an action that is also accessible through a menu

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
shortcut ::=  
( (keycap | keycombo | keysym | mousebutton) + )
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"
otheraction	CDATA	<i>None</i>
action	<i>Enumeration:</i> click double-click other press seq simul	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `Shortcut` contains the key combination that is a shortcut for a `MenuChoice`. Users that are familiar with the shortcuts can access the functionality of the corresponding menu choice, without navigating through the menu structure to find the right menu item.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Parents

These elements contain shortcut: `menuchoice`.

## Children

The following elements occur in shortcut: `keycap`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `mousebutton`.

## Attributes

action

Action identifies the nature of the action taken. If Shortcut contains more than one action element, Simul is default value for Action, otherwise there is no default.

If Other is specified, OtherAction should be used to identify the nature of the action.

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the Shortcut.

otheraction

OtherAction should be used when Action is set to Other. It identifies the nature of the action in some application-specific way.

## See Also

accel, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keySYM, menuchoice, mousebutton.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
You can exit from GNU Emacs with
<menuchoice>
  <shortcut>
    <keycombo><keySYM>C-x</keySYM><keySYM>C-c</keySYM></keycombo>
  </shortcut>
  <guimenu>Files</guimenu>
  <guimenuitem>Exit Emacs</guimenuitem>
</menuchoice>.
</para>
```

You can exit from GNU Emacs with Files->Exit Emacs (**C-x-C-c**).

For additional examples, see also menuchoice.

# sidebar

sidebar -- A portion of a document that is isolated from the main narrative flow

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sidebar ::=
(sidebarinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?)?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
 fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
 methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
 graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
 informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
 figure|table|procedure|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|
 indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Sidebar is a short piece of text, rarely longer than a single column or page, that is presented outside the narrative flow of the main text.

Sidebars are often used for digressions or interesting observations that are related, but not directly relevant, to the main text.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sidebars are sometimes boxed.

DocBook does not specify the location of the Sidebar within the final displayed flow of text. The wrapper may float or remain where it is located.

## Parents

These elements contain sidebar: appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, constraintdef, glossary, glossdiv, important, index, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, partintro, preface, procedure, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, simplesect, step, tip, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in sidebar: address, anchor, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis,

equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, programlisting, programlistingco, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebarinfo, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, tip, title, titleabbrev, variablelist, warning.

## See Also

abstract, blockquote, epigraph, highlights.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE sect1 PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<sect1><title>An Example Section</title>

<para>
Some narrative text.
</para>

<sidebar><title>A Sidebar</title>
<para>
Sidebar content.
</para>
</sidebar>

<para>
The continuing flow of the narrative text, as if the
sidebar was not present.
</para>

</sect1>
```

# sidebarinfo

sidebarinfo -- Meta-information for a Sidebar

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
sidebarinfo ::=
((graphic|mediaobject|legalnotice|modespec|subjectset|keywordset|
  itermset|abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author|authorgroup|
  authorinitials|bibliomisc|bibliaset|collab|confgroup|
  contractnum|contractsponsor|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|
  edition|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname|
  biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|
  bibliocoverage|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname|
  productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername|pubsnumber|
  releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|
  volumenum|citetitle|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|
  lineage|othername|affiliation|authorblurb|contrib|indexterm)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The SidebarInfo element is a wrapper for a large collection of meta-information about a Sidebar. Much of this data is bibliographic in nature.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. Many of the elements in this wrapper may be used in presentation, but they are not generally printed as part of the formatting of the wrapper. It merely serves to identify where they occur.

## Parents

These elements contain sidebarinfo: sidebar.

## Children

The following elements occur in sidebarinfo: abbrev, abstract, address, affiliation, artpagenums, author, authorblurb, authorgroup, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliaset, bibliosource, citebiblioid, citetitle, collab, cfgroup, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, copyright, corpauthor, corpname, date, edition, editor, firstname, graphic, honorific, indexterm, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, itermset, keywordset, legalnotice, lineage, mediaobject, modespec, orgname, othercredit, othername, pagenums, personname, printhistory, productname, productnumber, pubdate, publisher, publishername, pubsnumber, releaseinfo, revhistory, seriesvolnums, subjectset, subtitle, surname, title, titleabbrev, volumenum.

# simpara

simpara -- A paragraph that contains only text and inline markup, no block elements

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
simpara ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A SimPara is a “simple paragraph,” one that may contain only character data and inline elements. The Para element is less restrictive; it may also contain block level structures (lists, figures, and so on).

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain simpara: abstract, answer, appendix, article, authorblurb, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, caution, chapter, colophon, constraintdef, dedication, entry, epigraph, example, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, highlights, important, index, indexdiv, informalexample, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, orderedlist, partintro, personblurb, preface, printhistory, procedure,

qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, variablelist, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in `simpara`: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

formalpara, para.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE simpara PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<simpara>
Just the text, ma'am.
</simpara>
```

Just the text, ma'am.

For additional examples, see also para.

# simplelist

simplelist -- An undecorated list of single words or short phrases

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
simplelist ::=
(member+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
columns	CDATA	<i>None</i>
type	<i>Enumeration:</i> horiz inline vert	"vert"

## Description

A `SimpleList` is a list of words or phrases. It offers a convenient alternative to the other list elements for inline content.

## Processing expectations

Ironically, the processing expectations of a `SimpleList` are quite complex.

The presentation of a `SimpleList` is controlled by the `Type` attribute, which has three possible values:

### Inline

Indicates that the `Members` of the list should be rendered as a comma separated, inline list.

### Horiz

Indicates that the `Members` of the list should be rendered in a tabular fashion with members running across the rows.

### Vert

Indicates that the `Members` of the list should be rendered in a tabular fashion with members running down the columns. This is the default.

In both of the tabular cases, the number of columns in the table is controlled by the `Columns` attribute.

## Parents

These elements contain simplelist: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, caution, chapter, colophon, constraintdef, dedication, entry, example, footnote, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, highlights, important, index, indexdiv, informal-example, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, tip, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in simplelist: member.

## Attributes

columns

Columns specifies the number of columns to be used in the presentation of a SimpleList with a Type of Vert or Horiz. If Columns is unspecified, 1 is assumed.

type

Type specifies how the Members of the SimpleList are to be formatted. (This attribute would better fit DocBook semantics if it were named "Class").

## See Also

calloutlist, itemizedlist, listitem, orderedlist, segmentedlist, variablelist.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Here is a <sgmltag>SimpleList</sgmltag>, rendered inline:
<simplelist type='inline'>
<member>A</member>
<member>B</member>
<member>C</member>
<member>D</member>
<member>E</member>
<member>F</member>
<member>G</member>
</simplelist>
</para>
```

Here is a SimpleList, rendered inline: A, B, C, D, E, F, G

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Here is the same <sgmltag>SimpleList</sgmltag> rendered horizontally with
```

three columns:

```
<simplelist type='horiz' columns='3'>
<member>A</member>
<member>B</member>
<member>C</member>
<member>D</member>
<member>E</member>
<member>F</member>
<member>G</member>
</simplelist>
</para>
```

Here is the same SimpleList rendered horizontally with three columns:

A	B	C
D	E	F
G		

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
```

```
<para>
Finally, here is the list rendered vertically:
```

```
<simplelist type='vert' columns='3'>
<member>A</member>
<member>B</member>
<member>C</member>
<member>D</member>
<member>E</member>
<member>F</member>
<member>G</member>
</simplelist>
</para>
```

Finally, here is the list rendered vertically:

A	D	G
B	E	
C	F	

# simplemsgentry

simplemsgentry -- A wrapper for a simpler entry in a message set

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
simplemsgentry ::=  
(msgtext, msgexplan+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
origin	CDATA	<i>None</i>
audience	CDATA	<i>None</i>
level	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

SimpleMsgEntry is a simpler alternative to MsgEntry. In a MsgSet, each SimpleMsgEntry contains the text of a message and its explanation.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V5.0, more than one MsgExplan will be allowed.

## Parents

These elements contain simplemsgentry: msgset.

## Children

The following elements occur in simplemsgentry: msgexplan, msgtext.

## Attributes

audience

Identifies the audience to which this message is relevant.

level

Identifies the level of importance or severity of this message.

origin

Indicates the origin of this message.

# simplesect

simplesect -- A section of a document with no subdivisions

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
simplesect ::=
((title, subtitle?, titleabbrev?),
 (calloutlist | glosslist | itemizedlist | orderedlist | segmentedlist |
 simplelist | variablelist | caution | important | note | tip | warning |
 literallayout | programlisting | programlistingco | screen | screenco |
 screenshot | synopsis | cmdsynopsis | funcsynopsis | classsynopsis |
 fieldsynopsis | constructorsynopsis | destructorsynopsis |
 methodsynopsis | formalpara | para | simpara | address | blockquote |
 graphic | graphicco | mediaobject | mediaobjectco | informalequation |
 informalexample | informalfigure | informaltable | equation | example |
 figure | table | msgset | procedure | sidebar | qandaset | productionset |
 constraintdef | anchor | bridgehead | remark | highlights | abstract |
 authorblurb | epigraph | indexterm | beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

SimpleSect is one of the top-level sectioning elements in a component. There are three types of sectioning elements in DocBook:

- Explicitly numbered sections, Sect1...Sect5, which must be properly nested and can only be five levels deep.
- Recursive Sections, which are alternative to the numbered sections and have unbounded depth.
- SimpleSects, which are terminal. SimpleSects can occur as the “leaf” sections in either recursive sections or any of the numbered sections, or directly in components.

SimpleSects may be more convenient than numbered sections in some authoring environments because they can be moved around in the document hierarchy without renaming.

None of the sectioning elements is allowed to “float” in a component. You can place paragraphs and other block elements before a section, but you cannot place anything after it.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Sometimes sections are numbered.

## Parents

These elements contain simplesect: appendix, article, chapter, partintro, preface, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section.

## Children

The following elements occur in `simplesect`: `abstract`, `address`, `anchor`, `authorblurb`, `beginpage`, `blockquote`, `bridgehead`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `constraintdef`, `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `epigraph`, `equation`, `example`, `fieldsynopsis`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `funcsynopsis`, `glosslist`, `graphic`, `graphicco`, `highlights`, `important`, `indexterm`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgset`, `note`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `qandaset`, `remark`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `table`, `tip`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## See Also

`bridgehead`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE sect1 PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<sect1><title>Additional Coding</title>

<para>
Support for the additional features requested will be provided.
</para>

<simplesect><title>Estimated Time</title>

<para>
2 to 3 weeks.
</para>

</simplesect>
</sect1>
```

For additional examples, see also `productionset`.

# spanspec

spanspec -- Formatting information for a spanned column in a table

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
spanspec ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Name	Type	Default
nameend	CDATA	<i>Required</i>
char	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
charoff	CDATA	<i>None</i>
spanname	CDATA	<i>Required</i>
namest	CDATA	<i>Required</i>
rowsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center char justify left right	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `SpanSpec` associates a name with a span between two columns in a table. In the body of the table, cells can refer to the span by name. Cells that refer to a span will span horizontally from the first column to the last column, inclusive.

Cells can also form spans directly, by naming the start and end columns themselves. The added benefit of a `SpanSpec` is that it can associate formatting information (such as alignment and table rule specifications) with the span. This information does not need to be repeated then, on each spanning cell.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*.

The `NameSt` and `NameEnd` attributes of a `SpanSpec` must refer to named `ColSpecs` in the same table. In other words, if the `SpanSpec`

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

```
<spansec spanname="fullyear" namest="jan" nameend="dec" />
```

exists in a table, ColSpecs named “jan” and “dec” must also exist in the same table.

## Parents

These elements contain spansec: entrytbl, tgroup.

## Attributes

### align

Align specifies the horizontal alignment of Entries (or EntryTbIs) in the span. The default alignment is inherited from the enclosing TGroup. If Char is specified, see also Char and CharOff. Individual Entries and EntryTbIs can specify an alternate alignment.

### char

Char specifies the alignment character when the Align attribute is set to Char.

### charoff

CharOff specifies the percentage of the column's total width that should appear to the left of the first occurrence of the character identified in Char when the Align attribute is set to Char. This attribute is inherited from the ColSpec of the column specified in NameSt or from the enclosing TGroup.

### colsep

If ColSep has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn to the right of the spanning column described by this SpanSpec. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule to the right of the last column in the table is controlled by the Frame attribute of the enclosing Table or InformalTable and the ColSep of the last column in the table is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from enclosing elements.

### nameend

NameEnd is the name (defined in a ColSpec) of the rightmost column of the span.

### namest

NameSt is the name (defined in a ColSpec) of the leftmost column of the span.

### rowsep

If RowSep has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn below all the cells in this Span. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule below the last row in the table is controlled by the Frame attribute of the enclosing Table or InformalTable and the RowSep of the last row is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from enclosing elements.

### spanname

SpanName specifies a name by which subsequent Entry and EntryTbIs can refer to the span defined in this SpanSpec.

## See Also

`colspec`, `entry`, `entrytbl`, `informaltable`, `row`, `table`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `tgroup`, `thead`.

# state

state -- A state or province in an address

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
state ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A State is the name or postal abbreviation for a state (or province) in an Address.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an Address, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain state: address.

## Children

The following elements occur in state: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

address, city, country, email, fax, otheraddr, phone, pob, postcode, street.

## Examples

For examples, see address, otheraddr.

# step

step -- A unit of action in a procedure

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
step ::=
(title?,
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+,
(substeps,
(calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|
screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|
classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|
destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|
address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|
mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table|
msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*?))|
(substeps,
(calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|
fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|
methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|
graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|
informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|productionset|
constraintdef|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|
authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*)))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
performance	<i>Enumeration:</i> optional required	"required"

## Description

A Step identifies a unit of action in a Procedure. If a finer level of granularity is required for some steps, you can embed SubSteps in a Step. Embedded SubSteps contain Steps, so that substeps can be nested to any depth.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Steps are almost always numbered.

## Parents

These elements contain step: procedure, substeps.

## Children

The following elements occur in step: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, caution, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constraintdef, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, epigraph, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, highlights, important, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, msgset, note, orderedlist, para, procedure, productionset, programlisting, programlistingco, qandaset, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, substeps, synopsis, table, tip, title, variablelist, warning.

## Attributes

performance

Performance specifies whether particular Step in a Procedure must be performed or is optional.

## Examples

For examples, see procedure.

# street

street -- A street address in an address

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
street ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

In postal addresses, the `Street` element contains the street address portion of the `Address`. If an address contains more than one line of street address information, each line should appear in its own `Street`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an `Address`, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain street: `address`.

## Children

The following elements occur in street: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`address`, `city`, `country`, `email`, `fax`, `otheraddr`, `phone`, `pob`, `postcode`, `state`.

## Examples

For examples, see `address`, `otheraddr`, `publisher`.

# structfield

structfield -- A field in a structure (in the programming language sense)

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
structfield ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `StructField` is a wrapper for the name of a field in a `struct` (a syntactic element of the C programming language) or a field in an equivalent construct in another programming language.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `structfield`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `structfield`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## See Also

`classname`, `interface`, `property`, `structname`, `symbol`, `token`, `type`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <structfield>tm_isdst</structfield> field is non-zero when
the time reported is in daylight savings time.
</para>
```

The *tm\_isdst* field is non-zero when the time reported is in daylight savings time.

# structname

structname -- The name of a structure (in the programming language sense)

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
structname ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

StructName is an inline wrapper for the name of a struct (a syntactic element of the C programming language) or an equivalent construct in another programming language.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain structname: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glosssee, glossseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in structname: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## See Also

classname, interface, property, structfield, symbol, token, type.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <structname>tm</structname> structure, returned by
<function>_get_tm</function>, contains complete information
about the current time of day.
</para>
```

The tm structure, returned by `_get_tm`, contains complete information about the current time of day.

For additional examples, see also `refentry`.

# subject

subject -- One of a group of terms describing the subject matter of a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
subject ::=
(subjectterm+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
weight	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A “subject” categorizes or describes the topic of a document, or section of a document. In DocBook, a `Subject` is defined by the `SubjectTerms` that it contains.

Subject terms should be drawn from a controlled vocabulary, such as the *Library of Congress Subject Headings*. If an outside vocabulary is not appropriate, a local or institutional subject set should be created.

The advantage of a controlled vocabulary is that it places the document into a known subject space. Searching the subject space with a particular subject term will find *all* of the documents that claim to have that subject. There's no need to worry about terms that are synonymous with the search item, or homophones of the search term.

All of the `SubjectTerms` in a `Subject` should describe the same subject, and be from the *same controlled vocabulary*.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Subjects are rarely displayed to a reader. Usually, they are reserved for searching and retrieval purposes.

Unlike `Keywords`, which may be chosen freely, subject terms should come from a controlled vocabulary.

In order to assure that typographic or other errors are not introduced into the subject terms, they should be compared against the controlled vocabulary by an external process.

## Parents

These elements contain subject: `subjectset`.

## Children

The following elements occur in subject: `subjectterm`.

## Attributes

weight

Weight specifies a ranking for this Subject relative to other subjects in the same set.

## See Also

keyword, keywordset, subjectset, subjectterm.

## Examples

For examples, see subjectset.

# subjectset

subjectset -- A set of terms describing the subject matter of a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
subjectset ::=
(subject+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
scheme	NMTOKEN	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `SubjectSet` is a container for a set of `Subjects`. All of the `Subjects` within a `SubjectSet` should come from the *same* controlled vocabulary.

A document can be described using terms from more than one controlled vocabulary. In order to do this, you should use the `Scheme` attribute to distinguish between controlled vocabularies.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. `Subjects` are rarely displayed to a reader. Usually, they are reserved for searching and retrieval purposes.

DocBook does not specify a relationship between `SubjectSets` in different parts of a document or between a `SubjectSet` and the `SubjectSets` of enclosing parts of the document.

## Parents

These elements contain `subjectset`: `appendixinfo`, `articleinfo`, `bibliographyinfo`, `blockinfo`, `bookinfo`, `chapterinfo`, `glossaryinfo`, `indexinfo`, `objectinfo`, `partinfo`, `prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3info`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1info`, `sect2info`, `sect3info`, `sect4info`, `sect5info`, `sectioninfo`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `subjectset`: `subject`.

## Attributes

`scheme`

`Scheme` identifies the controlled vocabulary used by this `SubjectSet`'s terms.

This is an *alpha* version of this book.

## See Also

keyword, keywordset, subject, subjectterm.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE subjectset PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<subjectset scheme="libraryofcongress">
<subject>
  <subjectterm>Electronic Publishing</subjectterm>
</subject>
<subject>
  <subjectterm>SGML (Computer program language)</subjectterm>
</subject>
</subjectset>
```

# subjectterm

subjectterm -- A term in a group of terms describing the subject matter of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
subjectterm ::=  
(#PCDATA)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `SubjectTerm` is an individual subject word or phrase that describes the subject matter of a document or the portion of a document in which it occurs.

Subject terms are not expected to contain any markup. They are external descriptions from a controlled vocabulary.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Subject terms are rarely displayed to a reader. Usually, they are reserved for searching and retrieval purposes.

## Parents

These elements contain `subjectterm`: `subject`.

## See Also

`keyword`, `keywordset`, `subject`, `subjectset`.

## Examples

For examples, see `subjectset`.

# subscript

subscript -- A subscript (as in H<sub>2</sub>O, the molecular formula for water)

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
subscript ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|replaceable|symbol|
 inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|anchor|remark|subscript|
 superscript)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Subscript identifies text that is to be displayed as a subscript when rendered.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Subscripts are usually printed in a smaller font and shifted down with respect to the baseline.

## Parents

These elements contain subscript: abbrev, ackno, acronym, action, application, artpagenums, attribution, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliosource, bridgehead, citation, citebiblioid, citetitle, city, classsynopsisinfo, collabname, command, computeroutput, confdates, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, corpauthor, corpname, country, database, date, edition, email, emphasis, entry, fax, filename, firstname, firstterm, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glosssee, glossseealso, glossterm, hardware, holder, honorific, interfacename, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, jobtitle, keycap, label, lineage, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, member, modespec, msgaud, olink, option, optional, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, parameter, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, primary, primaryie, productname, productnumber, programlisting, property, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, quote, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo, refpurpose, releaseinfo, remark, replaceable, revnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, shortaffil, simpara, state, street, subscript, subtitle, superscript, surname, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput, volumenum, wordasword, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in subscript: anchor, emphasis, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, symbol, ulink.

## See Also

equation, informalequation, inlineequation, superscript.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
Thirsty? Have some H<subscript>2</subscript>O.
</para>
```

Thirsty? Have some H<sub>2</sub>O.

# substeps

substeps -- A wrapper for steps that occur within steps in a procedure

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
substeps ::=  
(step+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
performance	<i>Enumeration:</i> optional required	"required"

## Description

A Procedure describes a sequence of Steps that a reader is expected to perform. If a finer level of granularity is required for some steps, you can use SubSteps to embed substeps within a Step.

SubSteps contain Steps, so substeps can be nested to any depth.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. SubSteps are almost always numbered.

## Parents

These elements contain substeps: `step`.

## Children

The following elements occur in substeps: `step`.

## Attributes

performance

Performance specifies whether particular set of Substep in a Procedure must be performed or is optional.

## Examples

For examples, see procedure.

# subtitle

subtitle -- The subtitle of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
subtitle ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `Subtitle` identifies the subtitle of a document, or portion of a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

## Parents

These elements contain `subtitle`: `appendix`, `appendixinfo`, `article`, `articleinfo`, `bibliodiv`, `bibli-  
oentry`, `bibliography`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`,  
`book`, `bookinfo`, `chapter`, `chapterinfo`, `colophon`, `dedication`, `glossary`, `glossaryinfo`,  
`glossdiv`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `indexinfo`, `lot`, `objectinfo`, `part`, `partinfo`, `partintro`, `preface`,  
`prefaceinfo`, `refentryinfo`, `reference`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2`,  
`refsect2info`, `refsect3`, `refsect3info`, `refsection`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `ref-  
synopsisdivinfo`, `sect1`, `sect1info`, `sect2`, `sect2info`, `sect3`, `sect3info`, `sect4`, `sect4info`,  
`sect5`, `sect5info`, `section`, `sectioninfo`, `set`, `setindex`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebarinfo`,  
`simplesect`, `toc`.

## Children

The following elements occur in subtitle: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, corpauthor, database, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errorstype, exceptionname, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keySYM, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## See Also

title, titleabbrev.

## Examples

For examples, see bibliography, sectlinf, section.

# superscript

superscript -- A superscript (as in  $x^2$ , the mathematical notation for x multiplied by itself)

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
superscript ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|replaceable|symbol|
 inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|anchor|remark|subscript|
 superscript)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Superscript identifies text that is to be displayed as a superscript when rendered.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Superscripts are usually printed in a smaller font and shifted up with respect to the baseline.

## Parents

These elements contain superscript: abbrev, ackno, acronym, action, application, artpagenums, attribution, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliosource, bridgehead, citation, citebiblioid, citetitle, city, classsynopsisinfo, colabname, command, computeroutput, confdates, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, corpauthor, corpname, country, database, date, edition, email, emphasis, entry, fax, filename, firstname, firstterm, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glosssee, glossseealso, glossterm, hardware, holder, honorific, interfacename, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, jobtitle, keycap, label, lineage, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, member, modespec, msgaud, olink, option, optional, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, parameter, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, primary, primaryie, productname, productnumber, programlisting, property, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, quote, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo, refpurpose, releaseinfo, remark, replaceable, revnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, shortaffil, simpara, state, street, subscript, subtitle, superscript, surname, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput, volumenum, wordasword, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in superscript: anchor, emphasis, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, symbol, ulink.

## See Also

equation, informalequation, inlineequation, subscript.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The equation  $e^{i\pi} + 1 = 0$  ties together
five of the most important mathematical constants.
</para>
```

The equation  $e^{i\pi} + 1 = 0$  ties together five of the most important mathematical constants.

For additional examples, see also `inlinemediaobject`.

# surname

surname -- A family name; in western cultures the “last name”

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
surname ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Surname is a family name; in Western cultures, the “last name.”

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. In an Address, this element may inherit the verbatim qualities of an address.

## Parents

These elements contain surname: address, appendixinfo, articleinfo, author, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, editor, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, othercredit, partinfo, personname, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in surname: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

affiliation, firstname, honorific, lineage, othername.

## Examples

For examples, see ackno, article, author, authorgroup, bibliography, bibliomset, biblioset, book, bookinfo, othercredit, personname.

## svg:svg

svg:svg -- An SVG graphic

## Synopsis

If the SVG Module is used, ImageObjects can include `svg:svg` graphics.

## Description

The Scalable Vector Graphics<sup>i</sup> Recommendation from the W3C defines the features and syntax for SVG, a language for describing two-dimensional vector and mixed vector/raster graphics in XML.

A complete description of SVG is outside the scope of this reference.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE mediaobject PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook SVG Module V1.0beta1//EN"
    "dbsvg.dtd">
<mediaobject>
<imageobject>
<svg:svg/>
</imageobject>
</mediaobject>
```

<sup>i</sup><http://www.w3.org/TR/SVG/>

# symbol

symbol -- A name that is replaced by a value before processing

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
symbol ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> limit	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `Symbol` is a name that represents a value. It should be used in contexts in which the name will actually be replaced by a value before processing. The canonical example is a `#defined` symbol in a C program where the C preprocessor replaces every occurrence of the symbol with its value before compilation begins.

The `Limit` value of the `Class` attribute identifies those symbols that represent system limitations (for example, the number of characters allowed in a path name or the largest possible positive integer). DocBook V3.1 introduced the `Constant` element, which may be more suitable for some of these symbols.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `symbol`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `functsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `sipara`, `subscript`, `subtitle`, `superscript`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `symbol`: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## Attributes

class

Class indicates the type of Symbol.

## See Also

classname, interface, property, structfield, structname, token, type.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
No filename may be more than <symbol class='limit'>MAXPATHLEN</symbol>
characters long.
</para>
```

No filename may be more than MAXPATHLEN characters long.

# synopfragment

synopfragment -- A portion of a `CmdSynopsis` broken out from the main body of the synopsis

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
synopfragment ::=  
( (arg|group)+ )
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A complex `CmdSynopsis` can be made more manageable with `SynopFragments`. Rather than attempting to present the entire synopsis in one large piece, parts of the synopsis can be extracted out and presented elsewhere. These extracted pieces are placed in `SynopFragments` at the end of the `CmdSynopsis`.

At the point in which each piece was extracted, insert a `SynopFragmentRef` that points to the fragment. The content of the reference element will be presented inline.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

The presentation system is responsible for generating text that makes the reader aware of the link. This can be done with numbered bullets, or any other appropriate mechanism. Whatever mark is generated for the reference must also be generated for the fragment.

Online systems have additional flexibility. They may generate hot links between the references and the fragments, for example, or place the fragments in pop-up windows.

## Parents

These elements contain `synopfragment: cmdsynopsis`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `synopfragment: arg, group`.

## See Also

`arg, cmdsynopsis, group, refsynopsisdiv, sbr, synopfragmentref`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE cmdsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"  
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
```

```

<cmdsynopsis>
  <command>cccp</command>
  <arg>-$</arg>
  <arg>-C</arg>
  <arg rep='repeat'>-D<replaceable>name</replaceable>
    <arg>=<replaceable>definition</replaceable></arg></arg>
  <arg>-dD</arg>
  <arg>-dM</arg>
  <sbr/>
  <arg rep='repeat'>-I <replaceable>directory</replaceable></arg>
  <arg>-H</arg>
  <arg>-I-</arg>
  <arg rep='repeat'>-imacros <replaceable>file</replaceable></arg>
  <sbr/>
  <arg rep='repeat'>-include <replaceable>file</replaceable></arg>
  <group>
    <synopfragmentref linkend="langs">languages</synopfragmentref>
  </group>
  <arg>-lint</arg>
  <sbr/>
  <group>
    <arg>-M</arg>
    <arg>-MD</arg>
    <arg>-MM</arg>
    <arg>-MMD</arg>
  </group>
  <arg>-nostdinc</arg>
  <arg>-P</arg>
  <arg>-pedantic</arg>
  <sbr/>
  <arg>-pedantic-errors</arg>
  <arg>-trigraphs</arg>
  <arg>-U<replaceable>name</replaceable></arg>
  <sbr/>
  <arg>-undef</arg>
  <arg choice="plain"><synopfragmentref linkend="warn">warnings
    </synopfragmentref></arg>
  <group choice='req'>
    <arg><replaceable>infile</replaceable></arg>
    <arg>-</arg>
  </group>
  <group choice='req'>
    <arg><replaceable>outfile</replaceable></arg>
    <arg>-</arg>
  </group>

  <synopfragment id="langs">
    <group choice="plain">
      <arg>-lang-c</arg>
      <arg>-lang-c++</arg>
      <arg>-lang-objc</arg>
    </group>
  </synopfragment>

  <synopfragment id="warn">
    <arg>-Wtrigraphs</arg>
    <arg>-Wcomment</arg>
    <arg>-Wall</arg>
    <arg>-Wtraditional</arg>
  </synopfragment>

```

</cmdsynopsis>

cccp [-*\$*] [-C] [-D*name* [=*definition*]...] [-dD] [-dM] [-I *directory*...] [-H] [-I-] [-imacros *file*...] [-include *file*...] [(*l*)] [-lint] [-M | -MD | -MM | -MMD] [-nostdinc] [-P] [-pedantic] [-pedantic-errors] [-trigraphs] [-U*name*] [-undef] (2) {*infile* | -} {*outfile* | -}

(1) -lang-c | -lang-c++ | -lang-objc

(2) [-Wtrigraphs] [-Wcomment] [-Wall] [-Wtraditional]

# synopfragmentref

synopfragmentref -- A reference to a fragment of a command synopsis

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
synopfragmentref ::=  
(#PCDATA)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>Required</i>

## Description

A complex `CmdSynopsis` can be made more manageable with `SynopFragments`. Rather than attempting to present the entire synopsis in one large piece, parts of the synopsis can be extracted out and presented elsewhere.

At the point where each piece was extracted, insert a `SynopFragmentRef` that points to the fragment. The content of the `SynopFragmentRef` will be presented inline.

The extracted pieces are placed in `SynopFragments` at the end of the `CmdSynopsis`.

## Note

The content model of `SynopFragmentRef` is unique in the SGML version of DocBook because it contains RCDATA declared content. What this means is that all markup inside a `SynopFragmentRef` is ignored, except for entity references.

How, you might ask, is this different from a content model that includes only #PCDATA? The difference is only apparent when you consider inclusions. Recall that an inclusion provides a list of elements that can occur *anywhere* inside an element. So, for example, the fact that `Chapter` lists `IndexTerm` as an inclusion means that `IndexTerm` can legally occur inside of a `SynopFragmentRef` that's nested inside a chapter, even if the content model of `SynopFragmentRef` does not explicitly allow `IndexTerms`. Making the content RCDATA ensures that the markup will not be recognized, even if it's allowed by inclusion. A neat trick.

XML does not support RCDATA.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

The presentation system is responsible for generating text that makes the reader aware of the link. This can be done with numbered bullets, or any other appropriate mechanism.

Online systems have additional flexibility. They may generate hot links between the references and the fragments, for example, or place the fragments in pop-up windows.

## Parents

These elements contain `synopfragmentref`: `arg`, `group`.

## Attributes

`linkend`

`Linkend` points to the `SynopFragment` referenced.

## See Also

`arg`, `cmdsynopsis`, `group`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `sbr`, `synopfragment`.

## Examples

For examples, see `synopfragment`.

# synopsis

synopsis -- A general-purpose element for representing the syntax of commands or functions

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
synopsis ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage|graphic|mediaobject|co|coref|textobject|lineannotation)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
format	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> linespecific	"linespecific"
linenumbering	<i>Enumeration:</i> numbered unnumbered	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `Synopsis` is a verbatim environment for displaying command, function, and other syntax summaries.

Unlike `CmdSynopsis` and `FuncSynopsis` which have a complex interior structure, `Synopsis` is simply a verbatim environment.

## Processing expectations

This element is displayed “verbatim”; whitespace and linebreaks within this element are significant. `Synopsis` elements are usually displayed in a fixed width font.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain synopsis: `answer`, `appendix`, `application`, `article`, `attribution`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `bibliomisc`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caution`, `chapter`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `constraintdef`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `example`, `figure`, `footnote`, `foreignphrase`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `itemizedlist`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `listitem`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `olink`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `partintro`, `phrase`, `preface`, `procedure`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `remark`, `revdescription`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `seg`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simpara`, `simplesect`, `step`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tip`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in synopsis: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `co`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `coref`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `graphic`, `guibutton`, `guicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `mediaobject`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `textobject`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`format`

The `Format` attribute applies the `linespecific` notation to all synopses. All white space and line breaks must be preserved.

`label`

`Label` specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation.

`linenumbering`

**V4.0** Line numbering indicates whether or not the lines of a `Synopsis` are to be automatically numbered. The details of numbering (every line or only selected lines, on the left or right, etc.) are left up to the processing application. Be aware that not all processors are capable of numbering lines.

## See Also

`cmdsynopsis`, `computeroutput`, `funcsynopsis`, `lineannotation`, `literallayout`, `programlisting`, `screen`, `screenshot`, `userinput`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE synopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<synopsis>
chgrp [-R [-H | -L | -P] [-f] group file...
</synopsis>
```

```
chgrp [-R [-H | -L | -P] [-f] group file...
```

```
<!DOCTYPE synopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<synopsis>
int max(int int1, int int2);
</synopsis>
```

```
int max(int int1, int int2);
```

For additional examples, see also `optional`, `refentry`, `reference`.

# systemitem

systemitem -- A system-related item or term

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
systemitem ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage|acronym|co)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> constant domainname etheraddress event eventhandler filesystem fqdomainname groupname ipaddress library macro netmask newsgroup osname resource systemname username	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `SystemItem` identifies any system-related item or term. The `Class` attribute defines a number of common system-related terms.

Many inline elements in DocBook are, in fact, system-related. Some of the objects identified by the `Class` attribute on `SystemItem` may eventually migrate out to be inline elements of their own accord...and vice versa.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information.

## Future Changes

In DocBook V4.0, the content model of `SystemItem` will be constrained to (`#PCDATA` | `Replaceable` | `InlineGraphic`).

Also, the `EnvironVar` and `Prompt` values of `Class` will be discarded (use `EnVar` and `Prompt` instead).

## Future Changes

The `register` class value will be added to support CPU registers. The constant class value will be removed.

## Parents

These elements contain `systemitem`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simplara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `systemitem`: `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `beginpage`, `classname`, `co`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `database`, `email`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `function`, `guibutton`, `guicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `parameter`, `prompt`, `property`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`.

## Attributes

`class`

Class indicates the type of `SystemItem`.

`moreinfo`

If `MoreInfo` is set to `RefEntry`, it implies that a `RefEntry` exists which further describes the `SystemItem`.

## See Also

`computeroutput`, `envar`, `filename`, `prompt`, `userinput`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
For many years, O'Reilly's primary web server,
<ulink url="http://www.oreilly.com/">http://www.oreilly.com/</ulink>,
was hosted by <application>WN</application> on
<systemitem class="systemname">helio.oreilly.com</systemitem>.
</para>
```

For many years, O'Reilly's primary web server, <http://www.oreilly.com/>, was hosted by WN on `helio.oreilly.com`.

For additional examples, see also `part`.

# table

table -- A formal table in a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
table ::=
((blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev?),
 (indexterm)*,
 textobject*,
 (graphic+|mediaobject+|tgroup+)))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
tocentry	CDATA	<i>None</i>
shortentry	CDATA	<i>None</i>
tabstyle	CDATA	<i>None</i>
orient	<i>Enumeration:</i> land port	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>
colsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
frame	<i>Enumeration:</i> all bottom none sides top topbot	<i>None</i>
pgwide	CDATA	<i>None</i>
rowsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `Table` element identifies a formal table. DocBook uses the CALS table model, which describes tables geometrically using rows, columns, and cells.

Tables may include column headers and footers, but there is no provision for row headers.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

## Future Changes

The OASIS Exchange Table Model<sup>ii</sup> will replace the full OASIS Table Model.

## Parents

These elements contain table: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caution, chapter, constraintdef, glossary, glossdef, glossdiv, important, index, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, note, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, tip, warning.

## Children

The following elements occur in table: blockinfo, graphic, indexterm, mediaobject, textobject, tgroup, title, titleabbrev.

## Attributes

colsep

If ColSep has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn to the right of all columns in this table. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule to the right of the last column in the table is controlled by the Frame attribute, not the ColSep.

frame

Frame specifies how the table is to be framed:

Value	Meaning
all	Frame all four sides of the table. In some environments with limited control over table border formatting, such as HTML, this may imply additional borders.
bottom	Frame only the bottom of the table.
none	Place no border on the table. In some environments with limited control over table border formatting, such as HTML, this may disable other borders as well.
sides	Frame the left and right sides of the table.
top	Frame the top of the table.
topbot	Frame the top and bottom of the table.

There is no way to obtain a border on only the starting edge (left, in left-to-right writing systems) of the table.

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

<sup>ii</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/specs/tm9901.html>

Generally, an explicit `Label` attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the `Label` is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

#### orient

`Orient` specifies the orientation of the `Table`. An orientation of `Port` is the “upright”, the same orientation as the rest of the text flow. An orientation of `Land` is 90 degrees counterclockwise from the upright orientation.

#### pgwide

If `Pgwide` has the value 0 (false), then the `Table` is rendered in the current text flow (with flow column width). A value of 1 (true) specifies that the table should be rendered across the full text page.

#### rowsep

If `RowSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn below all the rows in the `Table` (unless other, interior elements, suppress some or all of the rules). A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule below the last row in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute and the `RowSep` of the last row is ignored.

#### shortentry

If `ShortEntry` has the value 1 (true), then the `Table's TitleAbbrev` will be used in the `LoT`, `Index`, etc. A value of 0 (false) indicates that the full `Title` should be used in those places.

#### tabstyle

`TabStyle` holds the name of a table style defined in a stylesheet (e.g., a `FOSI`) that will be used to process this document.

#### tocentry

If `ToCEntry` has the value 1 (true), then the `Table` will appear in a generated `List of Tables`. The default value of 0 (false) indicates that it will not.

## See Also

`colspec`, `entry`, `entrytbl`, `equation`, `example`, `figure`, `informalequation`, `informalexample`, `informalfigure`, `informaltable`, `row`, `spanspec`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `tgroup`, `thead`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE table PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<table frame='all'><title>Sample Table</title>
<tgroup cols='5' align='left' colsep='1' rowsep='1'>
<colspec colname='c1' />
<colspec colname='c2' />
<colspec colname='c3' />
<colspec colnum='5' colname='c5' />
<thead>
<row>
  <entry namest="c1" nameend="c2" align="center">Horizontal Span</entry>
  <entry>a3</entry>
  <entry>a4</entry>
```

```

    <entry>a5</entry>
</row>
</thead>
<tfoot>
<row>
    <entry>f1</entry>
    <entry>f2</entry>
    <entry>f3</entry>
    <entry>f4</entry>
    <entry>f5</entry>
</row>
</tfoot>
<tbody>
<row>
    <entry>b1</entry>
    <entry>b2</entry>
    <entry>b3</entry>
    <entry>b4</entry>
    <entry morerows='1' valign='middle'><para>  <!-- Pernicious Mixed Content -->
    Vertical Span</para></entry>
</row>
<row>
    <entry>c1</entry>
    <entry namest="c2" nameend="c3" align='center' morerows='1' valign='bottom'>Span Both</entry>
    <entry>c4</entry>
</row>
<row>
    <entry>d1</entry>
    <entry>d4</entry>
    <entry>d5</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>

```

**Table 2. Sample Table**

Horizontal Span		a3	a4	a5
b1	b2	b3	b4	Vertical Span
c1	Span Both		c4	
d1			d4	d5
f1	f2	f3	f4	f5

# tbody

tbody -- A wrapper for the rows of a table or informal table

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
tbody ::=  
(row+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>

## Description

The TBody wrapper identifies the Rows of a table that form the body of the table, as distinct from the header (THead) and footer (TFoot) rows.

In most tables, the TBody contains most of the rows.

## Processing expectations

This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*.

## Parents

These elements contain tbody: entrytbl, tgroup.

## Children

The following elements occur in tbody: row.

## Attributes

valign

VAalign specifies the vertical alignment of text (and other elements) within the cells of this TBody.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

## See Also

`colspec`, `entry`, `entrytbl`, `informaltable`, `row`, `spanspec`, `table`, `tfoot`, `tgroup`, `thead`.

## Examples

For examples, see `entrytbl`, `footnoteref`, `informaltable`, `table`.

# term

term -- The word or phrase being defined or described in a variable list

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
term ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `Term` in a `VarListEntry` identifies the thing that is described or defined by that entry.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Terms are usually formatted to make them stand out with respect to the text that follows. The best presentation depends on several factors, including the number and length of the terms. The `TermLength` attribute on the containing `VariableList` may influence the presentation of Terms. See `VariableList`.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain term: `varlistentry`.

## Children

The following elements occur in term: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Examples

For examples, see `variablelist`.

# tertiary

tertiary -- A tertiary word or phrase in an index term

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
tertiary ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
sortas	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Tertiary contains a third-level word or phrase in an `IndexTerm`. The text of a Tertiary term is less significant than the Primary and Secondary terms for sorting and display purposes.

DocBook does not define any additional levels. You cannot use `IndexTerms` to construct indexes with more than three levels without extending the DTD.

In `IndexTerms`, you can only have one primary, secondary, and tertiary term. If you want to index multiple tertiary terms for the same primary and secondary, you must repeat the primary and secondary in another `IndexTerm`. You cannot place several Tertiaries in the same primary.

## Processing expectations

Suppressed. This element provides data for processing but is not rendered in the primary flow of text.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain tertiary: `indexterm`.

## Children

The following elements occur in tertiary: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`sortas`

`SortAs` specifies the string by which the element's content is to be sorted. If unspecified, the proper content is used.

## See Also

`indexentry`, `indexterm`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `tertiaryie`.

# tertiaryie

tertiaryie -- A tertiary term in an index entry, rather than in the text

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
tertiaryie ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkends	IDREFS	<i>None</i>

## Description

TertiaryIE identifies a third-level word or words in an IndexEntry.

In IndexEntrys, you can specify as many tertiary terms that are necessary. Secondary and tertiary terms can be mixed, following the primary.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. TertiaryIEs occur below the SecondaryIE, and are usually aligned with each other and indented from the secondary.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain tertiaryie: indexentry.

## Children

The following elements occur in tertiary: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, corppauthor, database, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keySYM, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

linkends

Linkends, if used, points to the IndexTerms indexed by this entry.

## See Also

indexentry, indexterm, primary, primaryie, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, tertiary.

# textdata

textdata -- Pointer to external text data

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
textdata ::=  
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
srccredit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumeration:</i> BMP CGM-BINARY CGM-CHAR CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a IGES JPEG JPG linespecific PCX PIC PNG PS SGML SVG TBL TEX TIFF WMF WPG	<i>None</i>
entityref	ENTITY	<i>None</i>
fileref	CDATA	<i>None</i>
encoding	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

This element points to an external entity containing text to be inserted.

### Note

Any markup in the text identified with `textdata` will be escaped. In other words, this element is for inserting things like program listings, not parts of an XML document. To break a document into separate physical files, use entities.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Insert the text.

There are two ways to provide content for `textdata`: `entityref` or `fileref`. It is best to use only one of these methods, however, if multiple sources are provided, `entityref` will be used in favor of `fileref`.

## Parents

These elements contain `textdata`: `textobject`.

## Attributes

`encoding`

Identifies the encoding of the text in the external file. Recommended best practice suggests that character encodings registered (as charsets)<sup>i</sup> with the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority be referred to using their registered names.

`entityref`

`EntityRef` identifies the general entity which contains (or points to) the external text.

`fileref`

`FileRef` specifies the name of the file which contains the external text.

`format`

`Format` identifies the format of the external text. The `Format` must be a defined notation.

`srccredit`

`SrcCredit` contains details about the source of the external text.

<sup>i</sup><http://ftp.isi.edu/in-notes/iana/assignments/character-sets>

# textobject

textobject -- A wrapper for a text description of an object and its associated meta-information

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
textobject ::=
(objectinfo?,
 (phrase|textdata|
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
 literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|screenco|
 screenshot|formalpara|para|simpara|blockquote)+))
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `TextObject` is a wrapper containing a textual description of a media object, and its associated meta-information. `TextObjects` are only allowed in `MediaObjects` as a fall-back option, they cannot be the primary content.

There are two different forms of `TextObject`, and it is not unreasonable for a media object to contain both of them.

In the first form, the content of a `TextObject` is simply a `Phrase`. This form is a mechanism for providing a simple “alt text” for a media object. The phrase might be used, for example, as the value of the `ALT` attribute on an HTML `IMG`, with the primary content of the image coming from one of the other objects in the media object.

In the second form, the content of `TextObject` is a longer, prose description. This form could be used when rendering to devices that are incapable of displaying any of the other alternatives.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. It might not be rendered at all, depending on its placement within a `MediaObject` or `InlineMediaObject` and the constraints on the publishing system. For a more detailed description of the semantics involved, see `MediaObject`.

## Parents

These elements contain `textobject`: `classsynopsisinfo`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `informaltable`, `inline-mediaobject`, `literallayout`, `mediaobject`, `mediaobjectco`, `programlisting`, `screen`, `synopsis`, `table`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `textobject`: `blockquote`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `formalpara`, `glosslist`, `important`, `itemizedlist`, `literallayout`, `note`, `objectinfo`, `orderedlist`, `para`, `phrase`, `programlisting`, `programlistingco`, `screen`, `screenco`, `screenshot`, `segmentedlist`, `simpara`, `simplelist`, `textdata`, `tip`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## See Also

`alt`, `audioobject`, `caption`, `graphic`, `imageobject`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `mediaobject`, `videoobject`.

## Examples

For examples, see `audioobject`, `imageobject`, `informalfigure`, `inlinemediaobject`, `videoobject`.

# tfoot

tfoot -- A table footer consisting of one or more rows

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
tfoot ::=  
(colspec*, row+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>

## Description

The TFOOT wrapper identifies the Rows of a table that form the foot of the table, as distinct from the header (THEAD) and body (TBODY) rows.

Footer rows are always rendered at the end of the table, despite thier logical placement near the beginning.

## Processing expectations

This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*. Footer rows are often presented in an alternate typographic style, such as boldface.

In paged media, if a table spans across multiple pages, footer rows are printed on the bottom of each page.

In our experience, relatively few formatters handle footer rows correctly.

## Parents

These elements contain tfoot: tgroup.

## Children

The following elements occur in tfoot: colspec, row.

## Attributes

valign

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

`VAlign` specifies the vertical alignment of text (and other elements) within the cells of this `TFoot`.

## See Also

`colspec`, `entry`, `entrytbl`, `informaltable`, `row`, `spansec`, `table`, `tbody`, `tgroup`, `thead`.

## Examples

For examples, see `table`.

# tgroup

tgroup -- A wrapper for the main content of a table, or part of a table

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
tgroup ::=
(colspec*, spanspec*, thead?, tfoot?, tbody)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
char	CDATA	<i>None</i>
charoff	CDATA	<i>None</i>
tgroupstyle	CDATA	<i>None</i>
cols	CDATA	<i>Required</i>
colsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
rowsep	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center char justify left right	<i>None</i>

## Description

A TGroup surrounds a logically complete portion of a table. Most tables consist of a single TGroup, but complex tables with widely varying column specifications may be easier to code using multiple TGroups.

The TGroup specifies the number of columns in the table, and contains all of the header, body, and footer rows, along with any additional column or span specifications necessary to express the geometry of the table.

Most of the properties of rows, columns, and cells inherit their default characteristics from the enclosing TGroup.

## Processing expectations

This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*.

## Parents

These elements contain tgroup: informaltable, table.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

## Children

The following elements occur in `tgroup`: `colspec`, `spanspec`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `thead`.

## Attributes

`align`

`Align` specifies the horizontal alignment of `Entry`s (or `EntryTbl`s) in cells of the `TGroup`. If `Char` is specified, see also `Char` and `CharOff`. Individual columns, spans, and cells can provide an alternate alignment.

`char`

`Char` specifies the alignment character when the `Align` attribute is set to `Char`.

`charoff`

`CharOff` specifies the percentage of the column's total width that should appear to the left of the first occurrence of the character identified in `Char` when the `Align` attribute is set to `Char`.

`cols`

`Cols` specifies the number of columns in the table.

`colsep`

If `ColSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn to the right of all columns in this `TGroup`. A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule to the right of the last column in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute of the enclosing `Table` or `InformalTable` and not the `ColSep`.

`rowsep`

If `RowSep` has the value 1 (true), then a rule will be drawn below all the rows in this `TGroup` (unless other, interior elements, suppress some or all of the rules). A value of 0 (false) suppresses the rule. The rule below the last row in the table is controlled by the `Frame` attribute of the enclosing `Table` or `InformalTable` and the `RowSep` of the last row is ignored. If unspecified, this attribute is inherited from enclosing elements.

`tgroupstyle`

`TGroupstyle` holds the name of a table group style defined in a stylesheet (e.g., a FOSI) that will be used to process this document.

## See Also

`colspec`, `entry`, `entrytbl`, `informaltable`, `row`, `spanspec`, `table`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `thead`.

## Examples

For examples, see `entrytbl`, `footnoteref`, `informaltable`, `table`.

# thead

thead -- A table header consisting of one or more rows

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
thead ::=  
(colspec*, row+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>

## Description

The THead wrapper identifies the Rows of a table that form the head of the table, as distinct from the body (TBody) and foot (TFOOT) rows.

Header rows are always rendered at the beginning of the table.

## Processing expectations

This element is expected to obey the semantics of the *CALS Table Model Document Type Definition*, as specified by *OASIS Technical Memorandum TM 9502:1995<sup>i</sup>*. Header rows are often presented in an alternate typographic style, such as boldface.

In paged media, if a table spans across multiple pages, header rows are printed at the top of each new page.

## Parents

These elements contain `thead`: `entrytbl`, `tgroup`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `thead`: `colspec`, `row`.

## Attributes

`valign`

`VALIGN` specifies the vertical alignment of text (and other elements) within the cells of this THead.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.oasis-open.org/html/a502.htm>

## See Also

`colspec`, `entry`, `entrytbl`, `informaltable`, `row`, `spanspec`, `table`, `tbody`, `tfoot`, `tgroup`.

## Examples

For examples, see `table`.

# tip

tip -- A suggestion to the user, set off from the text

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
tip ::=
(title?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table|
 procedure|sidebar|anchor|bridgehead|remark|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Tip is an admonition set off from the main text.

In some types of documentation, the semantics of admonitions are clearly defined (Caution might imply the possibility of harm to equipment whereas Warning might imply harm to a person), but DocBook makes no such assertions.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Often outputs the generated text “Tip” or some other visible indication of the type of admonition, especially if a Title is not present. Sometimes outputs a graphical icon or other symbol as well.

## Parents

These elements contain tip: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, chapter, colophon, dedication, entry, glossary, glossdiv, highlights, index, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, variablelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in tip: address, anchor, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, orderedlist, para,

procedure, programlisting, programlistingco, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, title, variablelist.

## See Also

caution, important, note, warning.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE tip PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<tip>
<para>
If you tie your shoelaces, you're less likely to trip and
fall down.
</para>
</tip>
```

### **Tip**

If you tie your shoelaces, you're less likely to trip and fall down.

# title

title -- The text of the title of a section of a document or of a formal block-level element

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
title ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

Title is widely used in DocBook. It identifies the titles of documents and parts of documents, and is the required caption on formal objects. It is also allowed as an optional title or caption on many additional block elements.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Titles are often repeated in several locations, for example, at the location where the object occurs, in the *table of contents*, and in running headers and footers.

DocBook does not offer any mechanism for indicating where a line break should occur in long titles. Titles are often repeated and no single line break is likely to be correct in all of the places where a title is used. Instead, you will have to rely on your processing system to provide a mechanism, such as a processing instruction, for identifying the location of forced line breaks.

There are some contexts in which a Title can appear more than once. For example, it may appear in both Book and BookInfo:

```
<book><title>Some Book Title</title>
<bookinfo>
  <title>Some Book Title</title>
```

```

    <author><firstname>Some</firstname><surname>Author</surname>
    </author>
</bookinfo>
...

```

In these contexts, if the `Title` occurs more than once, *the same* title must be used in both places. It is an error to use different titles, although DocBook has no way to detect the error.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `title`: `abstract`, `appendix`, `appendixinfo`, `article`, `articleinfo`, `authorblurb`, `bibliodiv`, `biblioentry`, `bibliography`, `bibliographyinfo`, `bibliomixed`, `bibliomset`, `biblioset`, `blockinfo`, `blockquote`, `book`, `bookinfo`, `calloutlist`, `caution`, `chapter`, `chapterinfo`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `equation`, `example`, `figure`, `formalpara`, `glossary`, `glossaryinfo`, `glossdiv`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `indexinfo`, `itemizedlist`, `legalnotice`, `lot`, `msg`, `msgexplan`, `msgmain`, `msgrel`, `msgset`, `msgsub`, `note`, `objectinfo`, `orderedlist`, `part`, `partinfo`, `partintro`, `personblurb`, `preface`, `prefaceinfo`, `procedure`, `productionset`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `refentryinfo`, `reference`, `referenceinfo`, `refsect1`, `refsect1info`, `refsect2`, `refsect2info`, `refsect3`, `refsect3info`, `refsection`, `refsectioninfo`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `refsynopsisdivinfo`, `sect1`, `sect1info`, `sect2`, `sect2info`, `sect3`, `sect3info`, `sect4`, `sect4info`, `sect5`, `sect5info`, `section`, `sectioninfo`, `segmentedlist`, `set`, `setindex`, `setindexinfo`, `setinfo`, `sidebar`, `sidebarinfo`, `simplesect`, `step`, `table`, `tip`, `toc`, `variablelist`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `title`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`pagenum`

`PageNum` identifies the page on which this `Title` appears in some version of the printed document.

## See Also

subtitle, titleabbrev.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE sect1 PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<sect1><title>A Sect One</title>
<para>
Actual content.
</para>
</sect1>
```

For additional examples, see also abstract, appendix, article, audioobject, beginpage, bibliography, bibliomset, biblioset, book, bookinfo, caution, chapter, collab, contractsponsor, equation, example, figure, formalpara, glossary, graphic, highlights, html-form, index, indexterm, link, lot, note, olink, othercredit, para, part, procedure, productionset, qandaset, refentry, reference, remark, sectlinf, section, segmentedlist, set, sidebar, simplesect, table, titleabbrev, variablelist, xref.

# titleabbrev

titleabbrev -- The abbreviation of a Title

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
titleabbrev ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keySYM|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediainlineobject|inlineequation|
indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

TitleAbbrev holds an abbreviated version of a Title. One common use of TitleAbbrev is for the text used in running headers or footers, when the proper title is too long to be used conveniently.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Abbreviated titles are usually used only in specific contexts, such as headers and footers, and suppressed everywhere else.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain titleabbrev: appendix, appendixinfo, article, articleinfo, bibliodiv, biblioentry, bibliography, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, book, bookinfo, calloutlist, chapter, chapterinfo, colophon, dedication, equation, example, figure, glossary, glossaryinfo, glossdiv, index, indexdiv, indexinfo, itemizedlist, lot, msgset, objectinfo, orderedlist, part, partinfo, partintro, preface, prefaceinfo, procedure, productionset, qandadiv, qandaset, refentryinfo, reference,

referenceinfo, refsect1, refsect1info, refsect2, refsect2info, refsect3, refsect3info, refsection, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdiv, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1, sect1info, sect2, sect2info, sect3, sect3info, sect4, sect4info, sect5, sect5info, section, sectioninfo, segmentedlist, set, setindex, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebar, sidebarinfo, simplesect, table, toc, variablelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in `titleabbrev`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## See Also

`subtitle`, `title`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter><title>How to Configure the Menu Subsystem
of the Graphical User Interface</title>
<titleabbrev>Configuring Menus</titleabbrev>
<para>
Actual content.
</para>
</chapter>
```

For additional examples, see also `article`, `book`, `xref`.

# toc

toc -- A table of contents

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
toc ::=
(beginpage?,
 (title,subtitle?,titleabbrev?)?,
 tocfront*,
 (tocpart|tocchap)*,
 tocback*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The ToC element defines a *table of contents* in a document.

The general structure of elements in a ToC is analogous to the structure of the document described. For example, a ToC for a Book might contain TocFront elements for the front-matter of the book, TocChap elements for the body of the book, and TocBack elements for the back matter. Inside each of these are additional elements reflecting the structure of each component.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain toc: appendix, article, book, chapter, part, preface, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, set.

## Children

The following elements occur in toc: beginpage, subtitle, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocchap, tocfront, tocpart.

## Attributes

pagenum

PageNum indicates the page on which this Table of Contents appears in the printed document

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE toc PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<toc>
<tocfront pagenum="i">Preface</tocfront>
<tocpart>
  <tocentry>Part I</tocentry>
  <tocchap>
    <tocentry pagenum="1">Getting Started with SGML/XML</tocentry>
    <toclevel1>
      <tocentry pagenum="1">HTML and SGML vs. XML</tocentry>
    </toclevel1>
    <toclevel1>
      <tocentry pagenum="3">How Does DocBook Fit In?</tocentry>
      <toclevel2>
        <tocentry pagenum="3">A Short DocBook History</tocentry>
      </toclevel2>
    </toclevel1>
    <!-- ... -->
  </tocchap>
</tocpart>
<!-- ... -->
<tocback pagenum="305">Bibliography</tocback>
</toc>
```

# tocback

tocback -- An entry in a table of contents for a back matter component

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
tocback ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The ToCback element is a chapter-level ToC element for back matter (Bibliographys, Indexs, and so on).

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain toback: toc.

## Children

The following elements occur in toback: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

linkend

Linkend points to the associated back matter element.

pagenum

PageNum indicates the page on which the element of backmatter appears in some version of the printed document.

## Examples

For examples, see toc.

# tocchap

tocchap -- An entry in a table of contents for a component in the body of a document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
tocchap ::=  
(tocentry+, tocleve11*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `ToCchap` element is a chapter-level ToC element for components in the main body of a document.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain `tocchap`: `appendix`, `article`, `chapter`, `preface`, `toc`, `tocpart`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `tocchap`: `tocentry`, `tocleve11`.

## Attributes

label

`Label` specifies an identifying string for presentation purposes.

Generally, an explicit `Label` attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the `Label` is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

## Examples

For examples, see `toc`.

# tocentry

tocentry -- A component title in a table of contents

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
tocentry ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>None</i>
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `ToCentry` contains the title of an entry in a ToC. In entries that allow nested structure, such as `ToCchap`, this additional wrapper is necessary in order to require that a title be present.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain tocentry: tocchap, tocleve11, tocleve12, tocleve13, tocleve14, tocleve15, tocpart.

## Children

The following elements occur in tocentry: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

linkend

Linkend points to the associated element in the document.

pagenum

PageNum indicates the page on which this ToC element appears in some version of the printed document.

## Examples

For examples, see toc.

# tocfront

tocfront -- An entry in a table of contents for a front matter component

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
tocfront ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>None</i>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The `ToCfront` element is a chapter-level ToC element for front matter such as Prefaces.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain tocfont: toc.

## Children

The following elements occur in tocfont: abbrev, acronym, action, anchor, application, author, authorinitials, beginpage, citation, citerefentry, citetitle, classname, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, command, computeroutput, constant, constructorsynopsis, corpauthor, database, destructorsynopsis, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, error-type, exceptionname, fieldsynopsis, filename, firstterm, footnote, footnoteref, foreignphrase, funcsynopsis, function, glossterm, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlineequation, inlinegraphic, inline-mediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, methodsynopsis, modespec, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, othercredit, parameter, personname, phrase, productname, productnumber, prompt, property, quote, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, revhistory, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, synopsis, systemitem, token, trademark, type, ulink, userinput, varname, wordasword, xref.

## Attributes

label

Label specifies an identifying number or string that may be used in presentation.

Generally, an explicit Label attribute is used only if the processing system is incapable of generating the label automatically. If present, the Label is normative; it will be used even if the processing system is capable of automatic labelling.

linkend

Linkend points to the associated front matter element.

pagenum

PageNum indicates the page on which the element of frontmatter appears in some version of the printed document.

## Examples

For examples, see toc.

# toclevel1

toclevel1 -- A top-level entry within a table of contents entry for a chapter-like component

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
toclevel1 ::=  
(tocentry+,toclevel2*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ToClevel1` element is a ToC entry for a first-level section in a component.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain `toclevel1`: `tocchap`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `toclevel1`: `tocentry`, `toclevel2`.

## Examples

For examples, see `toc`.

# toclevel2

toclevel2 -- A second-level entry within a table of contents entry for a chapter-like component

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
toclevel2 ::=  
(tocentry+,toclevel3*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ToClevel2` element is a ToC entry for a second-level section in a component.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain `toclevel2`: `toclevel1`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `toclevel2`: `tocentry`, `toclevel3`.

## Examples

For examples, see `toc`.

# toclevel3

toclevel3 -- A third-level entry within a table of contents entry for a chapter-like component

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
toclevel3 ::=  
(tocentry+,toclevel4*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ToClevel3` element is a ToC entry for a third-level section in a component.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain `toclevel3`: `toclevel2`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `toclevel3`: `tocentry`, `toclevel4`.

# toclevel4

toclevel4 -- A fourth-level entry within a table of contents entry for a chapter-like component

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
toclevel4 ::=
(tocentry+,toclevel5*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ToClevel4` element is a ToC entry for a fourth-level section in a component.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain `toclevel4`: `toclevel3`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `toclevel4`: `tocentry`, `toclevel5`.

# toclevel5

toclevel5 -- A fifth-level entry within a table of contents entry for a chapter-like component

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
toclevel5 ::=
(tocentry+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ToClevel5` element is a ToC entry for a fifth-level section in a component.

The ToC machinery in DocBook has not been extended to handle the infinitely recursive nature of `Sections`. It may never be extended.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain `toclevel5`: `toclevel4`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `toclevel5`: `tocentry`.

# tocpart

tocpart -- An entry in a table of contents for a part of a book

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
tocpart ::=  
(tocentry+, tocchap*)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `ToCpart` element is a division-level ToC element for Parts and References.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

In real life, ToCs are usually generated automatically by the presentation system and never have to be represented explicitly in the document source.

## Parents

These elements contain `tocpart`: `toc`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `tocpart`: `tocchap`, `tocentry`.

## Examples

For examples, see `toc`.

# token

token -- A unit of information

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
token ::=  
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|  
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Token identifies a unit of information. Usually, “tokens” are the result of some processing pass that has performed lexical analysis and divided a data set into the smallest units of information used for subsequent processing.

Exactly what constitutes a token varies by context.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain token: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `functsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `sipara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in token: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## See Also

`classname`, `interface`, `property`, `structfield`, `structname`, `symbol`, `type`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
In parsing, line ends are turned into the <token>CRLF</token>, all other
whitespace becomes <token>WHITESP</token>.
</para>
```

In parsing, line ends are turned into the CRLF, all other whitespace becomes WHITESP.

# trademark

trademark -- A trademark

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
trademark ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
emphasis)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumeration:</i> copyright registered service trade	"trade"

## Description

Trademark identifies a legal trademark.

One of the values of the Class attribute on Trademark is Copyright. DocBook also has a Copyright element, but it is confined to meta-information. A copyright in running text is best represented as `<trademark class=copyright>`.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

In addition to Trademark, two of the values of the Class attribute on ProductName make assertions about trademarks; presumably the same markup is intended for both Trademark and ProductName when they make assertions about trademarks.

## Future Changes

The InterfaceDefinition element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain trademark: abbrev, ackno, acronym, application, artpagenums, attribution, authorinitials, bibliocoverage, biblioid, bibliomisc, bibliorelation, bibliosource, bridgehead, citation, citebiblioid, citetitle, city, collabname, confdates, confnum, confsponsor, conftitle, contractnum, contractsponsor, contrib, corpauthor, corpname, country, date, edition, email, emphasis, entry, fax, firstname, firstterm, foreignphrase, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, holder, honorific, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, jobtitle, label, lineage, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, manvolnum, member, modespec, msgaud, olink, orgdiv, orgname, otheraddr, othername, pagenums, para, phone, phrase, pob, postcode, primary, primaryie, productname, productnumber, programlisting, pubdate, publishername, pubsnumber, quote, refentrytitle, refmiscinfo, refpurpose, releaseinfo, remark, revnumber, revremark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, seriesvolnums, shortaffil, simpara, state, street, subtitle, surname, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink, volumenum, wordasword, year.

## Children

The following elements occur in trademark: action, anchor, application, classname, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, emphasis, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interface, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

class

Class indicates the type of Trademark. The default is Trade.

## See Also

copyright, legalnotice, productname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The name <trademark class='registered'>WebSite</trademark> is a
registered trademark of O'Reilly &amp; Associates, Inc.
</para>
```

The name WebSite® is a registered trademark of O'Reilly & Associates, Inc.

For additional examples, see also `audioobject`, `productname`, `screenco`.

# type

type -- The classification of a value

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
type ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

In general usage, Type identifies one member of a class of values.

In documenting computer programs, it identifies specifically a “type,” as might be declared with `typedef` in the C programming language.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain type: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcdef`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `methodparam`, `methodsynopsis`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `para`, `paramdef`, `parameter`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `property`, `quote`, `refdescriptor`, `refentrytitle`, `refname`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `simpara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`.

## Children

The following elements occur in type: `beginpage`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `replaceable`.

## See Also

`classname`, `interface`, `property`, `structfield`, `structname`, `symbol`, `token`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
The <function>geteuid</function> function returns a <type>uid_t</type> that
contains the user's <emphasis>effective</emphasis> user id.
</para>
```

The `geteuid` function returns a `uid_t` that contains the user's *effective* user id.

# ulink

ulink -- A link that addresses its target by means of a URL (Uniform Resource Locator)

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
ulink ::=
(#PCDATA|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|
citetitle|emphasis|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|
phrase|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname|link|olink|ulink|
action|application|classname|methodname|interfacename|
exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|command|
computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit|
productname|productnumber|revhistory|remark|subscript|
superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation|
synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
url	CDATA	<i>Required</i>
type	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

The ULink element forms the equivalent of an HTML anchor (<A HREF=" . . . ">) for cross reference by a Uniform Resource Locator (URL).

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. When rendered online, it is natural to make the content of the ULink element an active link. When rendered in print media, the URL might be ignored, printed after the text of the link, or printed as a footnote.

When the content of the ULink element is empty, i.e., for either of the following cases: <ulink url="..." /> and <ulink url="..."></ulink>, the content of the url attribute should be rendered as the text of the link.

Linking elements must not be nested within other linking elements (including themselves). Because DocBook is harmonizing towards XML, this restriction cannot easily be enforced by the DTD. The processing of nested linking elements is undefined.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `ulink`: `abbrev`, `ackno`, `acronym`, `action`, `application`, `artpagenums`, `attribution`, `authorinitials`, `bibliocoverage`, `biblioid`, `bibliomisc`, `bibliorelation`, `bibliosource`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citebiblioid`, `citetitle`, `city`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `collabname`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `confdates`, `confnum`, `confsponsor`, `conftitle`, `contractnum`, `contractsponsor`, `contrib`, `corpauthor`, `corpname`, `country`, `database`, `date`, `edition`, `email`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `fax`, `figure`, `filename`, `firstname`, `firstterm`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glosssee`, `glossseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `holder`, `honorific`, `indexdiv`, `informalfigure`, `interfacename`, `invpartnumber`, `isbn`, `issn`, `issuenum`, `jobtitle`, `keycap`, `label`, `lineage`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `manvolnum`, `member`, `modespec`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `option`, `optional`, `orgdiv`, `orgname`, `otheraddr`, `othername`, `pagenums`, `para`, `parameter`, `phone`, `phrase`, `pob`, `postcode`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `programlisting`, `property`, `pubdate`, `publishername`, `pubsnumber`, `quote`, `refentry`, `refentrytitle`, `refmiscinfo`, `refnamediv`, `refpurpose`, `releaseinfo`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `revnumber`, `revremark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `seriesvolnums`, `shortaffil`, `simplara`, `state`, `street`, `subscript`, `subtitle`, `superscript`, `surname`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `trademark`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `volumenum`, `wordasword`, `year`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `ulink`: `abbrev`, `acronym`, `action`, `anchor`, `application`, `author`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `classname`, `classsynopsis`, `cmdsynopsis`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `constructorsynopsis`, `corpauthor`, `database`, `destructorsynopsis`, `email`, `emphasis`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fieldsynopsis`, `filename`, `firstterm`, `footnote`, `footnoteref`, `foreignphrase`, `funcsynopsis`, `function`, `glossterm`, `gubutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `indexterm`, `inlineequation`, `inlinegraphic`, `inline-mediaobject`, `interface`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keycombo`, `keysym`, `link`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `menuchoice`, `methodname`, `methodsynopsis`, `modespec`, `mousebutton`, `nonterminal`, `olink`, `ooclass`, `ooexception`, `oointerface`, `option`, `optional`, `othercredit`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phrase`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `revhistory`, `sgmltag`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `symbol`, `synopsis`, `systemitem`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `ulink`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`, `xref`.

## Attributes

`type`

Type is available for application-specific customization of the linking behavior.

`url`

URL specifies the Uniform Resource Locator that is the target of the ULink.

## See Also

anchor, link, olink, xref.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
For more information, see the O'Reilly catalog entry for
<ulink url="http://www.ora.com/catalog/tex/"><citetitle>Making TeX
Work</citetitle></ulink>.
</para>
```

For more information, see the O'Reilly catalog entry for *Making TeX Work*<sup>i</sup>.

For additional examples, see also olink, productnumber, systemitem.

<sup>i</sup><http://www.ora.com/catalog/tex/>

# userinput

userinput -- Data entered by the user

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
userinput ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|action|application|classname|methodname|
interfacename|exceptionname|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception|
command|computeroutput|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|
errortype|errortext|filename|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|
guimenu|guimenuitem|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap|keycode|
keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel|menuchoice|
mousebutton|option|optional|parameter|prompt|property|
replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield|structname|symbol|
systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname|nonterminal|anchor|
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|
indexterm|beginpage|co)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumeration:</i> none refentry	"none"

## Description

The `UserInput` element identifies words or phrases that the user is expected to provide as input to a computer program.

Note that `UserInput` is not a verbatim environment, but an inline.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. The `MoreInfo` attribute can help generate a link or query to retrieve additional information. Often presented in a fixed width font.

## Future Changes

The `InterfaceDefinition` element will be discarded in DocBook V4.0. It will no longer be available in the content model of this element.

## Parents

These elements contain `userinput`: `action`, `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `classsynopsisinfo`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `database`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `filename`, `foreignphrase`, `funcparams`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `hardware`, `interfacename`, `keycap`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literal`,

literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in userinput: action, anchor, application, beginpage, classname, co, command, computeroutput, constant, database, email, envar, errorcode, errorname, errortext, errortype, exceptionname, filename, function, guibutton, guiicon, guilabel, guimenu, guimenuitem, guisubmenu, hardware, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, interface, interfacename, keycap, keycode, keycombo, keysym, link, literal, markup, medialabel, menuchoice, methodname, mousebutton, nonterminal, olink, ooclass, ooexception, oointerface, option, optional, parameter, prompt, property, remark, replaceable, returnvalue, sgmltag, structfield, structname, subscript, superscript, symbol, systemitem, token, type, ulink, userinput, varname.

## Attributes

moreinfo

If MoreInfo is set to RefEntry, it implies that a RefEntry exists which further describes the UserInput.

## See Also

computeroutput, constant, envar, filename, lineannotation, literal, literallayout, markup, option, optional, parameter, programlisting, prompt, replaceable, screen, screenshot, sgmltag, synopsis, systemitem, varname.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
At the system prompt, enter <userinput>xyzy</userinput> to gain
supervisor access to the system.
</para>
```

At the system prompt, enter **xyzy** to gain supervisor access to the system.

# varargs

varargs -- An empty element in a function synopsis indicating a variable number of arguments

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
varargs ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

VarArgs indicates that a function takes a variable number of arguments.

## Processing expectations

The VarArgs element produces generated text that indicates that the function takes a variable number of arguments. The exact generated text may vary. One common result is “(...)”.

## Parents

These elements contain varargs: funcprototype.

## See Also

funcdef, funcparams, funcprototype, funcsynopsisinfo, function, paramdef, parameter, returnvalue, void.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE funcsynopsis PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<funcsynopsis>
<funcsynopsisinfo>
#include &lt;varargs.h&gt;
</funcsynopsisinfo>
<funcprototype>
    <funcdef>int <function>max</function></funcdef>
    <varargs/>
</funcprototype>
</funcsynopsis>
#include <varargs.h>

int max(...);
```

For additional examples, see also funcsynopsis.

# variablelist

variablelist -- A list in which each entry is composed of a set of one or more terms and an associated description

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
variablelist ::=
(blockinfo?,
 (title,titleabbrev)?,
 (caution|important|note|tip|warning|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|anchor|bridgehead|remark|
 highlights|abstract|authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)*,
 varlistentry+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
termlength	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## Description

A `VariableList` is a list consisting of `Terms` and their definitions or descriptions.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

There are many ways to deal with the problems presented in formatting a variable list with long `Terms`. DocBook does not mandate any particular presentation. The `TermLength` attribute may influence the presentation of `Terms`.

## Future Changes

Introductory material may appear before the first list item.

## Parents

These elements contain `variablelist`: `answer`, `appendix`, `article`, `bibliodiv`, `bibliography`, `blockquote`, `callout`, `caption`, `caution`, `chapter`, `colophon`, `constraintdef`, `dedication`, `entry`, `example`, `footnote`, `glossary`, `glossdef`, `glossdiv`, `highlights`, `important`, `index`, `indexdiv`, `informalexample`, `legalnotice`, `listitem`, `msgexplan`, `msgtext`, `note`, `para`, `partintro`, `preface`, `procedure`, `qandadiv`, `qandaset`, `question`, `refsect1`, `refsect2`, `refsect3`, `refsection`, `refsynopsisdiv`, `revdescription`, `sect1`, `sect2`, `sect3`, `sect4`, `sect5`, `section`, `setindex`, `sidebar`, `simplesect`, `step`, `textobject`, `tip`, `warning`.

## Children

The following elements occur in variablelist: abstract, address, anchor, authorblurb, beginpage, blockinfo,blockquote,bridgehead,caution,classsynopsis,cmdsynopsis,constructorsynopsis,destructorsynopsis,epigraph,fieldsynopsis,formalpara,funcsynopsis,graphic,graphicco,highlights,important,indexterm,informalequation,informalexample,informalfigure,informaltable,literallayout,mediaobject,mediaobjectco,methodsynopsis,note,para,programlisting,programlistingco,remark,screen,screenco,screenshot,simpara,synopsis,tip,title,titleabbrev,varlistentry,warning.

## Attributes

termlength

TermLength indicates a length beyond which the presentation engine may consider the Term(s) too long and select an alternate presentation of the Term(s) and/or, the associated ListItem.

## See Also

calloutlist,itemizedlist,listitem,orderedlist,segmentedlist,simplelist.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE variablelist PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<variablelist><title>Font Filename Extensions</title>
<varlistentry><term><filename>TTF</filename></term>
<listitem>
<para>
TrueType fonts.
</para>
</listitem>
</varlistentry>
<varlistentry><term><filename>PFA</filename></term>
    <term><filename>PFB</filename></term>
<listitem>
<para>
PostScript fonts. <filename>PFA</filename> files are common on
<acronym>UNIX</acronym> systems, <filename>PFB</filename> files
are more common on Windows systems.
</para>
</listitem>
</varlistentry>
</variablelist>
```

### Font Filename Extensions

TTF

TrueType fonts.

PFA, PFB

PostScript fonts. PFA files are common on UNIX systems, PFB files are more common on Windows systems.

# varlistentry

varlistentry -- A wrapper for a set of terms and the associated description in a variable list

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
varlistentry ::=  
(term+, listitem)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `VarListEntry` is an entry in a `VariableList`. Each `VarListEntry` contains one or more `Terms` and their description or definition.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block.

Terms are usually formatted to make them stand out with respect to the text that follows. The best presentation depends on several factors, including the number and length of the terms. See `VariableList`.

## Parents

These elements contain varlistentry: `variablelist`.

## Children

The following elements occur in varlistentry: `listitem`, `term`.

## Examples

For examples, see `variablelist`.

# varname

varname -- The name of a variable

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
varname ::=
(#PCDATA|replaceable|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm|
beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A VarName identifies a variable name in a programming or expression language. Variables most often get their values from Literals, Replaceable values, Constants, or Symbols.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain varname: action, application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, citetitle, classsynopsisinfo, command, computeroutput, database, emphasis, entry, fieldsynopsis, filename, foreignphrase, funcparams, funcsynopsisinfo, function, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, hardware, interfacename, keycap, lineannotation, link, literal, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, option, optional, para, parameter, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, property, quote, refdescriptor, refentrytitle, refname, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, systemitem, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, tocback, tocentry, tocfrent, trademark, ulink, userinput.

## Children

The following elements occur in varname: beginpage, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, replaceable.

## See Also

command, computeroutput, constant, literal, markup, option, optional, parameter, prompt, replaceable, sgmltag, userinput.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
In Perl, <varname>@ARGV</varname> contains the command line parameters
used when the script was run.
</para>
```

In Perl, @ARGV contains the command line parameters used when the script was run.

For additional examples, see also `literal`.

# videodata

videodata -- Pointer to external video data

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
videodata ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
srccredit	CDATA	<i>None</i>
valign	<i>Enumeration:</i> bottom middle top	<i>None</i>
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>
contentwidth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumeration:</i> BMP CGM-BINARY CGM-CHAR CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a IGES JPEG JPG linespecific PCX PIC PNG PS SGML SVG TBL TEX TIFF WMF WPG	<i>None</i>
entityref	ENTITY	<i>None</i>

fileref	CDATA	<i>None</i>
scaleft	CDATA	<i>None</i>
depth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
scale	CDATA	<i>None</i>
contentdepth	CDATA	<i>None</i>
align	<i>Enumeration:</i> center left right	<i>None</i>

## Description

This element points to an external entity containing video data.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. Rendering a video is usually accomplished by reserving a rectangular area on the display and “running” the video in that frame.

There are two ways to provide content for `VideoData`: `EntityRef` or `FileRef`. It is best to use only one of these methods. However, if multiple sources are provided, `EntityRef` will be used in favor of `FileRef`.

## Parents

These elements contain videodata: `videoobject`.

## Attributes

`align`

`Align` specifies the horizontal alignment of the image data on the page or within the element that frames it.

`depth`

`Depth` specifies the desired depth (vertical distance, at least in horizontal writing systems) of the video data.

`entityref`

`EntityRef` identifies the general entity which points to the content of the video data.

`fileref`

`FileRef` specifies the name of the file which contains the content of the video data.

`format`

`Format` identifies the format of the video data. The `Format` must be a defined notation.

`scale`

`Scale` specifies integer representing a percentage scaling factor (retaining the relative dimensions of the original video frame). If unspecified, the value 100 (100%) is assumed.

#### `scalefit`

If `ScaleFit` has the value 1 (true), then the video frame is to be scaled (uniformly) to the specified width or depth. The default value of 0 (false) indicates that the image will not be scaled to fit (although it may still be scaled by the `Scale` attribute).

#### `srccredit`

`SrcCredit` contains details about the source of the video data.

#### `width`

`width` indicates the width of the graphic.

# videoobject

videoobject -- A wrapper for video data and its associated meta-information

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
videoobject ::=  
(objectinfo?,videodata)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A `VideoObject` is a wrapper containing `VideoData` and its associated meta-information.

## Processing expectations

May be formatted inline or as a displayed block, depending on context. It might not be rendered at all, depending on its placement within a `MediaObject` or `InlineMediaObject` and the constraints on the publishing system. For a more detailed description of the semantics involved, see `MediaObject`.

## Parents

These elements contain videoobject: `inlinemediobject`, `mediaobject`.

## Children

The following elements occur in videoobject: `objectinfo`, `videodata`.

## See Also

`alt`, `audioobject`, `caption`, `graphic`, `imageobject`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediobject`, `mediaobject`, `textobject`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE mediaobject PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"  
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">  
<mediaobject>  
<videoobject>  
<videodata fileref='movie.avi' />  
</videoobject>  
<imageobject>  
<imagedata fileref='movie-frame.gif' />  
</imageobject>  
<textobject>  
<para>This video illustrates the proper way to assemble an
```

inverting time distortion device.

</para>

<warning>

<para>

It is imperative that the primary and secondary temporal couplings not be mounted in the wrong order. Temporal catastrophe is the likely result. The future you destroy may be your own.

</para>

</warning>

</textobject>

</mediaobject>



# void

void -- An empty element in a function synopsis indicating that the function in question takes no arguments

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
void ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

The `Void` element indicates explicitly that a `Function` has no arguments.

## Processing expectations

The `Void` element produces generated text that indicates the function has no arguments (or returns nothing). The exact generated text may vary. One common result is `void`.

## Parents

These elements contain `void`: `constructorsynopsis`, `destructorsynopsis`, `funcprototype`, `method-synopsis`.

## See Also

`funcdef`, `funcparams`, `funcprototype`, `funcsynopsisinfo`, `function`, `paramdef`, `parameter`, `returnvalue`, `varargs`.

## Examples

For examples, see `funcdef`, `funcsynopsis`.

# volumenum

volumenum -- The volume number of a document in a set (as of books in a set or articles in a journal)

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
volumenum ::=  
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|  
subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

VolumeNum identifies the volume number of a Book in a Set, or a periodical. It is a wrapper for bibliographic information.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline. Sometimes suppressed.

## Parents

These elements contain volumenum: appendixinfo, articleinfo, biblioentry, bibliographyinfo, bibliomixed, bibliomset, biblioset, blockinfo, bookinfo, chapterinfo, glossaryinfo, indexinfo, objectinfo, partinfo, prefaceinfo, refentryinfo, referenceinfo, refsect1info, refsect2info, refsect3info, refsectioninfo, refsynopsisdivinfo, sect1info, sect2info, sect3info, sect4info, sect5info, sectioninfo, setindexinfo, setinfo, sidebarinfo.

## Children

The following elements occur in volumenum: emphasis, indexterm, inlinegraphic, inlinemediaobject, link, olink, remark, replaceable, subscript, superscript, trademark, ulink.

## See Also

biblioid, invpartnumber, isbn, issn, issuenum, productnumber, pubsnumber, seriesvolnums.

## Examples

For examples, see article, bibliography, bibliomset.

# warning

warning -- An admonition set off from the text

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
warning ::=
(title?,
 (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
 simplelist|variablelist|literallayout|programlisting|
 programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|
 cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|
 constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|
 formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|
 mediaobject|mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
 informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure|table|
 procedure|sidebar|anchor|bridgehead|remark|indexterm|beginpage)+)
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A Warning is an admonition, usually set off from the main text.

In some types of documentation, the semantics of admonitions are clearly defined (Caution might imply the possibility of harm to equipment whereas Warning might imply harm to a person), but DocBook makes no such assertions.

## Processing expectations

Formatted as a displayed block. Often outputs the generated text “Warning” or some other visible indication of the type of admonition, especially if a Title is not present. Sometimes outputs a graphical icon or other symbol as well.

## Parents

These elements contain warning: answer, appendix, article, bibliodiv, bibliography, blockquote, callout, caption, chapter, colophon, dedication, entry, glossary, glossdiv, highlights, index, itemizedlist, legalnotice, listitem, msgexplan, msgtext, orderedlist, para, partintro, preface, procedure, qandadiv, qandaset, question, refsect1, refsect2, refsect3, refsection, refsynopsisdiv, revdescription, sect1, sect2, sect3, sect4, sect5, section, setindex, sidebar, simplesect, step, textobject, variablelist.

## Children

The following elements occur in warning: address, anchor, beginpage, blockquote, bridgehead, calloutlist, classsynopsis, cmdsynopsis, constructorsynopsis, destructorsynopsis, equation, example, fieldsynopsis, figure, formalpara, funcsynopsis, glosslist, graphic, graphicco, indexterm, informalequation, informalexample, informalfigure, informaltable, itemizedlist, literallayout, mediaobject, mediaobjectco, methodsynopsis, orderedlist, para,

procedure, programlisting, programlistingco, remark, screen, screenco, screenshot, segmentedlist, sidebar, simpara, simplelist, synopsis, table, title, variablelist.

## See Also

caution, important, note, tip.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE warning PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<warning>
<para>
Striking your thumb with a hammer may cause severe pain and discomfort.
</para>
</warning>
```

### Warning

Striking your thumb with a hammer may cause severe pain and discomfort.

For additional examples, see also `videoobject`.

# wordasword

wordasword -- A word meant specifically as a word and not representing anything else

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
wordasword ::=  
(#PCDATA|acronym|emphasis|trademark|link|olink|ulink|anchor|  
remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|  
indexterm|beginpage)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

A lot of technical documentation contains words that have overloaded meanings. Sometimes it is useful to be able to use a word without invoking its technical meaning. The `WordAsWord` element identifies a word or phrase that might otherwise be interpreted in some specific way, and asserts that it should be interpreted simply as a word.

It is unlikely that the presentation of this element will be able to help readers understand the variation in meaning; good writing will have to achieve that goal. The real value of `WordAsWord` lies in the fact that full-text searching and indexing tools can use it to avoid false-positives.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain `wordasword`: `application`, `attribution`, `bibliomisc`, `bridgehead`, `citation`, `citetitle`, `emphasis`, `entry`, `foreignphrase`, `glossee`, `glosseealso`, `glossterm`, `lineannotation`, `link`, `literallayout`, `lotentry`, `member`, `msgaud`, `olink`, `para`, `phrase`, `primary`, `primaryie`, `productname`, `programlisting`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `refpurpose`, `remark`, `screen`, `screeninfo`, `secondary`, `secondaryie`, `see`, `seealso`, `seealsoie`, `seeie`, `seg`, `segtitle`, `sipara`, `subtitle`, `synopsis`, `term`, `tertiary`, `tertiaryie`, `title`, `titleabbrev`, `tocback`, `tocentry`, `tocfront`, `ulink`.

## Children

The following elements occur in `wordasword`: `acronym`, `anchor`, `beginpage`, `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## See Also

`abbrev`, `acronym`, `emphasis`, `foreignphrase`, `phrase`, `quote`.

## Examples

```
<!DOCTYPE para PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<para>
A <wordasword>Term</wordasword> in Algebra has a very different meaning
than a <sgmltag>Term</sgmltag> in DocBook.
</para>
```

A *Term* in Algebra has a very different meaning than a Term in DocBook.

# xref

xref -- A cross reference to another part of the document

## Synopsis

### Content Model

```
xref ::=
EMPTY
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>Required</i>
endterm	IDREF	<i>None</i>

## Description

The XRef element forms a cross-reference from the location of the XRef to the element to which it points. Unlike Link and the other cross-referencing elements, XRef is empty. The processing system has to generate appropriate cross-reference text for the reader.

## Processing expectations

If the Endterm attribute is specified, the content of the element pointed to by Endterm must be used as the text of the cross-reference, otherwise it is up to the application to generate appropriate cross reference text from the element pointed to by Linkend.

If the object *pointed to* has a specified XRefLabel, that should be used as the cross-reference text.

## Parents

These elements contain xref: application, attribution, bibliomisc, bridgehead, citation, cite-title, emphasis, entry, foreignphrase, glossee, glosseealso, glossterm, lineannotation, link, literallayout, lotentry, member, msgaud, olink, para, phrase, primary, primaryie, productname, programlisting, quote, refentrytitle, refpurpose, remark, screen, screeninfo, secondary, secondaryie, see, seealso, seealsoie, seeie, seg, segtitle, simpara, subtitle, synopsis, term, tertiary, tertiaryie, title, titleabbrev, toback, tocentry, tocfrent, ulink.

## Attributes

endterm

Endterm points to the element whose content is to be used as the text of the link.

linkend

Linkend points to the target of the cross reference.

## See Also

anchor, link, olink, ulink.

## Examples

Consider the following example:

```
<!DOCTYPE book PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.1.2//EN"
    "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.1.2/docbookx.dtd">
<book><title>An Example Book</title>
<chapter id="ch01"><title>XRef Samples</title>
<para>
This paragraph demonstrates several features of
<sgmltag>XRef</sgmltag>.
</para>
<itemizedlist>
<listitem><para>A straight link generates the
cross-reference text: <xref linkend="ch02"/>.
</para></listitem>
<listitem><para>A link to an element with an
<sgmltag class="attribute">XRefLabel</sgmltag>:
<xref linkend="ch03"/>.
</para></listitem>
<listitem><para>A link with an
<sgmltag class="attribute">EndTerm</sgmltag>:
<xref linkend="ch04" endterm="ch04short"/>.
</para></listitem>
</itemizedlist>
</chapter>

<chapter id="ch02">
  <title>The Second Chapter</title>
  <para>Some content here</para>
</chapter>

<chapter id="ch03" xreflabel="Chapter the Third">
  <title>The Third Chapter</title>
  <para>Some content here</para>
</chapter>

<chapter id="ch04">
  <title>The Fourth Chapter</title>
  <titleabbrev id="ch04short">Chapter 4</titleabbrev>
  <para>Some content here</para>
</chapter>
</book>
```

One reasonable rendering for the content of the first chapter of this book is the following:

This paragraph demonstrates several features of XRef.

- A straight link generates the cross-reference text: Chapter 2, “The Second Chapter”
- A link to an element with an XRefLabel: Chapter the Third.

- A link with an `EndTerm`: Chapter 4.

Of course, in an online system, these references would also be links to the appropriate chapters.

For additional examples, see also `part`.

# year

year -- The year of publication of a document

## Synopsis

### Mixed Content Model

```
year ::=
(#PCDATA|link|olink|ulink|emphasis|trademark|replaceable|remark|
 subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|indexterm)*
```

### Attributes

Common attributes

## Description

Year identifies a year. In DocBook V3.0, this is only used in `Copyright`, to identify the year or years in which copyright is asserted.

## Processing expectations

Formatted inline.

## Parents

These elements contain year: `copyright`.

## Children

The following elements occur in year: `emphasis`, `indexterm`, `inlinegraphic`, `inlinemediaobject`, `link`, `olink`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `trademark`, `ulink`.

## Examples

For examples, see `bibliography`, `biblioset`, `bookinfo`, `copyright`.

# DocBook Parameter Entity Reference

The reference pages in this section describe each of the parameter entities used in DocBook. This information is most useful when you are writing a customization layer.

In the print version of this book, these reference pages provide only a brief summary of the function of each broad family of parameter entities. There are nearly 2,000 parameter entity declarations in DocBook, and displaying long lists of parameter entity names on paper seemed wasteful. The online version provides more detailed, hyperlinked information about each parameter entity family.

# **%\*.attlist; Parameter Entities**

%\*.attlist; Parameter Entities -- Control individual attribute list declarations

## **Synopsis**

Used to control marked sections around the declarations of individual attribute lists.

## **Description**

The %\*.attlist; parameter entities provide marked sections around individual attribute list declarations. You can selectively include or remove attribute list declarations from DocBook by changing these parameter entities.

The following sections identify all of the attlist module parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%abbrev.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%abstract.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%accel.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ackno.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%acronym.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%action.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%address.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%affiliation.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%alt.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%anchor.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%answer.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%appendix.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%appendixinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%application.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%area.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%areaset.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%areaspec.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%arg.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%article.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%articleinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%artpagenums.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%attribution.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%audiodata.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%audioobject.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%author.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorblurb.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorgroup.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorinitials.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%beginpage.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliocoverage.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliodiv.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%biblioentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliography.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliographyinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%biblioid.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliomisc.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliomixed.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliomset.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliorelation.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%biblioset.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliosome.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%blockinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%blockquote.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%book.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bookinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bridgehead.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%callout.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%calloutlist.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%caption.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%caution.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%chapter.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%chapterinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%citation.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%citebiblioid.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%citerefentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%citetitle.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%city.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classsynopsis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classsynopsisinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%cmdsynopsis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%co.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%collab.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%collabname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%colophon.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%command.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%computeroutput.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confdates.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confgroup.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confnum.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confsponsor.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%conftitle.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%constant.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%constructorsynopsis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contractnum.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contractsponsor.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contrib.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%copyright.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%coref.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%corpauthor.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%corpname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%country.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%database.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%date.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%dedication.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%destructorsynopsis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%edition.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%editor.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%email.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%emphasis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%envar.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%epigraph.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%equation.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errorcode.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errorname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errortext.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errortype.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%example.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%exceptionname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%fax.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%fieldsynopsis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%figure.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%filename.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%firstname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%firstterm.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%footnote.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%footnoteref.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%foreignphrase.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%formalpara.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcdef.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcparams.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcprototype.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcsynopsis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcsynopsisinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%function.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossary.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossaryinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%glossdef.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%glossdiv.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%glossentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%glosslist.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%glosssee.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%glossseealso.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%glossterm.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%graphic.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%graphicco.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%group.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guibutton.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guiicon.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guilabel.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guimenu.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guimenuitem.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guisubmenu.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%hardware.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%highlights.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%holder.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%honorific.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%imagedata.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%imageobject.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%imageobjectco.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%important.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%index.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexdiv.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexterm.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalequation.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalexample.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalfigure.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informaltable.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%initializer.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%inlineequation.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%inlinegraphic.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%inlinemediaobject.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%interface.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%interfacename.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%invpartnumber.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%isbn.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%issn.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%issuenum.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%itemizedlist.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%itermset.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%jobtitle.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keycap.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keycode.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keycombo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keysym.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keyword.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%keywordset.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%label.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%legalnotice.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%lineage.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%lineannotation.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%link.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%listitem.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%literal.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%literallayout.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%lot.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%lotentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%manvolnum.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%markup.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%medialabel.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%mediaobject.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%mediaobjectco.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%member.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%menuchoice.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%methodname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%methodparam.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%methodsynopsis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%modespec.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%modifier.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%mousebutton.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%msg.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgaud.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgexplan.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msginfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msglevel.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgmain.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgorig.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgrel.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgset.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%msgsub.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%msgtext.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%note.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%objectinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%olink.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ooclass.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ooexception.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%oointerface.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%option.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%optional.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orderedlist.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orgdiv.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orgname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%otheraddr.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%othercredit.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%othername.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pagenums.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%para.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%paramdef.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%parameter.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%part.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%partinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%partintro.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%personblurb.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%personname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%phone.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%phrase.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pob.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%postcode.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%preface.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%prefaceinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%primary.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%primaryie.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%printhistory.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%procedure.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%productname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%productnumber.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%programlisting.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%programlistingco.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%prompt.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%property.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%pubdate.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%publisher.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%publishername.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pubsnumber.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%qandadiv.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%qandaentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%qandaset.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%question.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%quote.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refclass.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refdescriptor.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refentryinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refentrytitle.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%reference.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%referenceinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refmeta.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refmiscinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refnamediv.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refpurpose.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect1.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect1info.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect2.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect2info.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect3.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect3info.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsection.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsectioninfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsynopsisdiv.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsynopsisdivinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%releaseinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%remark.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%replaceable.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%returnvalue.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revdescription.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revhistory.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revision.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revnumber.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revremark.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sbr.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%screen.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%screenco.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%screeninfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%screenshot.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%secondary.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%secondaryie.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sect1.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sect1info.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sect2.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sect2info.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sect3.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect3info.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect4.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect4info.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect5.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect5info.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%section.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sectioninfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%see.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%seealso.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seealsoie.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seeie.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seg.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seglistitem.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%segmentedlist.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%segtitle.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seriesvolnums.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%set.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%setindex.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%setindexinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%setinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sgmltag.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%shortaffil.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%shortcut.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sidebar.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sidebarinfo.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%simpara.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%simplelist.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%simplemsgentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%simplesect.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%state.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%step.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%street.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%structfield.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%structname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subject.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subjectset.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subjectterm.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subscript.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%substeps.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subtitle.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%superscript.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%surname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%symbol.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%synopfragment.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%synopfragmentref.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%synopsis.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%systemitem.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%term.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%tertiary.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%tertiaryie.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%textdata.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%textobject.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tip.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%title.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%titleabbrev.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%toc.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tocback.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tocchap.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tocentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tocfront.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel1.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel2.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel3.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel4.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel5.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%tocpart.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%token.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%trademark.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%type.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%ulink.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%userinput.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%varargs.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%variablelist.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%varlistentry.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%varname.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%videodata.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%videoobject.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%void.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%volumenum.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%warning.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%wordasword.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%xref.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%year.attlist;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

# %\*.attrib; Parameter Entities

%\*.attrib; Parameter Entities -- Define attributes on selected elements

## Synopsis

These entities parameterize the attribute declarations on selected elements.

## Description

Each of the following sections describes an individual parameter entity.

### %bibliorelation.type.attrib;

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
type	<i>Enumerated:</i> isversionof hasversion isreplacedby replaces isrequiredby requires ispartof haspart isreferencedby references isformatof hasformat othertype	<i>None</i>
othertype	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliorelation.type.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliorelation.type.attrib; appears in:**

bibliorelation

### %common.table.attrs;

Parameter entity content:

```
label CDATA #IMPLIED
id ID #IMPLIED
lang CDATA #IMPLIED
remap CDATA #IMPLIED
xreflabel CDATA #IMPLIED
revisionflag (changed
|added
|deleted
|off) #IMPLIED
```

```

arch CDATA #IMPLIED
    condition CDATA #IMPLIED
conformance NMTOKENS #IMPLIED
os CDATA #IMPLIED
revision CDATA #IMPLIED
    security CDATA #IMPLIED
userlevel CDATA #IMPLIED
vendor CDATA #IMPLIED

```

```

role CDATA #IMPLIED

```

### **%common.table.attribs; appears in:**

**%common.table.attribs; appears in:**

informaltable

### **%condition.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
condition	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%graphics.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
entityref	ENTITY	<i>None</i>
fileref	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumerated:</i> BMP CGM-CHAR CGM-BINARY CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a JPG JPEG IGES PCX PIC PNG PS SGML TBL	<i>None</i>



## **%label.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%label.attrib; appears in:**

**%label.attrib; appears in:**

appendix	area	areaset
book	chapter	cmdsynopsis
co	coref	equation
example	figure	footnote
footnoteref	funcsynopsis	informalfigure
lot	part	partintro
reference	sect1	sect2
sect3	sect4	sect5
section	synopsis	tocback
tocchap	tocfront	

## **%linespecific.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
format	<i>Enumerated notation:</i> linespecific	'linespecific'
linenumbering	<i>Enumerated:</i> numbered unnumbered	<i>None</i>

### **%linespecific.attrib; appears in:**

**%linespecific.attrib; appears in:**

address	classsynopsisinfo	funcsynopsisinfo
literallayout	programlisting	screen
synopsis		

## **%linkend.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
linkend	IDREF	<i>None</i>

**%linkend.attrib; appears in:**

**%linkend.attrib; appears in:**

firstterm	glossterm	lotentry
seeie	tocback	tocentry
tocfront		

**%linkendreq.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
linkend	IDREF	<i>Required</i>

**%linkendreq.attrib; appears in:****%linkendreq.attrib; appears in:**

coref	footnoteref	link
synopfragmentref	xref	

**%linkends.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
linkends	IDREFS	<i>None</i>

**%linkends.attrib; appears in:****%linkends.attrib; appears in:**

area	co	primaryie
secondaryie	seealsoie	tertiaryie

**%mark.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
mark	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%mark.attrib; appears in:****%mark.attrib; appears in:**

itemizedlist

**%moreinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
moreinfo	<i>Enumerated:</i>	'none'

	refentry none	
--	------------------	--

### **%moreinfo.attrib; appears in:**

#### **%moreinfo.attrib; appears in:**

action	application	command
computeroutput	database	errorcode
filename	function	guibutton
guiicon	guilabel	guimenu
guimenuitem	guisubmenu	hardware
interface	keycap	keycombo
literal	menuchoice	mousebutton
parameter	prompt	property
shortcut	systemitem	userinput

### **%objectdata.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
entityref	ENTITY	<i>None</i>
fileref	CDATA	<i>None</i>
format	<i>Enumerated:</i> BMP CGM-CHAR CGM-BINARY CGM-CLEAR DITROFF DVI EPS EQN FAX GIF GIF87a GIF89a JPG JPEG IGES PCX PIC PNG PS SGML TBL TEX TIFF WMF WPG	<i>None</i>

	SVG linespecific	
srccredit	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%objectdata.attrib; appears in:**

**%objectdata.attrib; appears in:**

audiodata                      imagedata                      textdata  
videodata

**%pagenum.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
pagenum	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%pagenum.attrib; appears in:**

**%pagenum.attrib; appears in:**

anchor                      beginpage                      indexterm  
lotentry                      title                      toc  
tocback                      tocentry                      tocfrent

**%required-IDREF-to-constraintdef-ID;**

Parameter entity content:

linkend IDREF #REQUIRED

**%required-IDREF-to-constraintdef-ID; appears in:**

**%required-IDREF-to-constraintdef-ID; appears in:**

constraint

**%required-IDREF-to-production-ID;**

Parameter entity content:

linkend IDREF #REQUIRED

**%required-IDREF-to-production-ID; appears in:**

**%required-IDREF-to-production-ID; appears in:**

productionrecap

**%required-XLink-to-production-ID;**

Parameter entity content:

def CDATA #REQUIRED

**%required-XLink-to-production-ID; appears in:****%required-XLink-to-production-ID; appears in:**

nonterminal

**%role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%role.attrib; appears in:****%role.attrib; appears in:**

constraint	constraintdef	lhs
nonterminal	production	productionrecap
productionset	rhs	

**%security.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
security	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%status.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
status	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%status.attrib; appears in:****%status.attrib; appears in:**

appendix	article	bibliodiv
bibliography	book	chapter
colophon	dedication	glossary
glossdiv	part	preface
refentry	reference	refsect1
refsect2	refsect3	refsection
sect1	sect2	sect3
sect4	sect5	section
set		

## **%width.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
width	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%width.attrib; appears in:**

#### **%width.attrib; appears in:**

example	informalexample	literallayout
programlisting	screen	

# **%\*.attval; Parameter Entities**

`%*.attval; Parameter Entities -- Define attribute values`

## **Synopsis**

These parameter entities define attribute values used on selected attributes.

## **Description**

The following parameter entities define attribute values in DocBook:

### **%yesorno.attvals;**

Parameter entity content:

CDATA

### **%yesorno.attvals; appears in:**

**%yesorno.attvals; appears in:**

<code>figure</code>	<code>imagedata</code>	<code>informalfigure</code>
<code>informaltable</code>	<code>videodata</code>	

# CALS Table Model Parameter Entities

CALS Table Model Parameter Entities -- Parameter entities which control the CALS Table Model

## Synopsis

The CALS Table Model is incorporated into DocBook by reference to the standard CALS Table Model DTD. The CALS Table Model DTD, like DocBook, can be customized by defining a number of parameter entities before including it. The parameter entities in the following sections are the table-model related parameter entities defined by DocBook for use in the CALS Table Model.

## Description

The following parameter entities are related to the CALS Table Model:

### **%bodyatt;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
label	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%bodyatt; appears in:**

**%bodyatt; appears in:**

table

### **%paracon;**

Parameter entity content:

#PCDATA

### **%secur;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
id	ID	<i>None</i>
lang	CDATA	<i>None</i>
remap	CDATA	<i>None</i>
xreflabel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
revisionflag	<i>Enumerated:</i> changed added deleted off	<i>None</i>
arch	CDATA	<i>None</i>

condition	CDATA	None
conformance	NMTOKENS	None
os	CDATA	None
revision	CDATA	None
security	CDATA	None
userlevel	CDATA	None
vendor	CDATA	None
role	CDATA	None

### **%secur; appears in:**

#### **%secur; appears in:**

entry	entrytbl	row
table	tbody	tfoot
tgroup	thead	

### **%tabentry.mix;**

#### Parameter entity content:

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist  
|simplelist|variablelist |caution|important|note|tip|warning  
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen  
|screenco|screenshot  
|formalpara|para|simpara |graphic|mediaobject

### **%tablemodel;**

#### Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** -//OASIS//DTD DocBook CALS Table Model V4.2CR3//EN

**System identifier:** calstblx.dtd

### **%tbl.entry.mdl;**

#### Parameter entity content:

#PCDATA  
|footnoteref|xref |abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|citetitle|emphasis  
|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|phrase  
|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname  
|link|olink|ulink |action|application  
|classname|methodname|interfacename|exceptionname  
|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception  
|command|computeroutput  
|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|errortype|errortext|filename  
|function|guibutton|guicon|guilabel|guimenu|guimenuitem  
|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap  
|keycode|keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel  
|menuchoice|mousebutton|option|optional|parameter



**%tbl.row.mdl; appears in:**

row

## **%tbl.table-main.mdl;**

Parameter entity content:

(tgroup+|graphic

## **%tbl.table-titles.mdl;**

Parameter entity content:

title

## **%tbl.table.att;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
tabstyle	CDATA	<i>None</i>
tocentry	CDATA	<i>None</i>
shortentry	CDATA	<i>None</i>
orient	<i>Enumerated:</i> port land	<i>None</i>
pgwide	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%tbl.table.att; appears in:**

**%tbl.table.att; appears in:**

informaltable                      table

## **%tbl.table.mdl;**

Parameter entity content:

(blockinfo?, (title, titleabbrev?), (indexterm)\*,  
textobject\*,  
(graphic+|mediaobject+|tgroup

**%tbl.table.mdl; appears in:**

**%tbl.table.mdl; appears in:**

table

## **%tbl.table.name;**

Parameter entity content:

(table|chart

## **%tbl.tgroup.att;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
tgroupstyle	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%tbl.tgroup.att; appears in:**

**%tbl.tgroup.att; appears in:**

entrytbl                      tgroup

## **%tbl.tgroup.mdl;**

Parameter entity content:

colspec\*, spanspec\*, thead?, tfoot?, tbody

**%tbl.tgroup.mdl; appears in:**

**%tbl.tgroup.mdl; appears in:**

tgroup

## **%titles;**

Parameter entity content:

title

## **%yesorno;**

Parameter entity content:

CDATA

**%yesorno; appears in:**

**%yesorno; appears in:**

colspec	entry	entrytbl
row	spanspec	table
tgroup		

# **%\* .class; Parameter Entities**

`%* .class;` Parameter Entities -- Parameter entities which define the DocBook classes

## **Synopsis**

Classes group elements of a similar type, for example all the lists are in the `%list.class;`

If you want to add a new kind of something (a new kind of list or a new kind of verbatim environment, for example), you generally want to add the name of the new element to the appropriate class.

## **Description**

The following sections identify all of the class parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%admon.class;**

Parameter entity content:

`caution|important|note|tip|warning`

### **%appendix.class;**

Parameter entity content:

`appendix`

### **%appendix.class; appears in:**

**%appendix.class; appears in:**

`article` `book`

### **%article.class;**

Parameter entity content:

`article`

### **%article.class; appears in:**

**%article.class; appears in:**

`book`

### **%base.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

`anchor`

### **%base.char.class; appears in:**

**%base.char.class; appears in:**

replaceable  
trademark

subscript

superscript

## **%biblio.class.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
class	<i>Enumerated:</i> uri doi isbn issn libraryofcongress pubnumber other	<i>None</i>
otherclass	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%biblio.class.attrib; appears in:**

**%biblio.class.attrib; appears in:**

biblioid

bibliorelation

bibliosource

citebiblioid

## **%book.class;**

Parameter entity content:

book

### **%book.class; appears in:**

**%book.class; appears in:**

set

## **%chapter.class;**

Parameter entity content:

chapter

### **%chapter.class; appears in:**

**%chapter.class; appears in:**

book

## **%compound.class;**

Parameter entity content:

msgset | procedure | sidebar | qandaset  
| productionset | constraintdef

## **%descobj.class;**

Parameter entity content:

abstract | authorblurb | epigraph

## **%docinfo.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

author | authorinitials | corppauthor | modespec | othercredit  
| productname | productnumber | revhistory

## **%formal.class;**

Parameter entity content:

equation | example | figure | table

## **%gen.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

abbrev | acronym | citation | citerefentry | citetitle | emphasis  
| firstterm | foreignphrase | glossterm | footnote | phrase  
| quote | trademark | wordasword | personname

## **%genobj.class;**

Parameter entity content:

anchor | bridgehead | remark | highlights

## **%index.class;**

Parameter entity content:

index | setindex

## **%index.class; appears in:**

**%index.class; appears in:**

book

## **%info.class;**

Parameter entity content:

graphic | mediaobject | legalnotice | modespec  
| subjectset | keywordset | iterset | abbrev | abstract | address | artpagenums | author

|authorgroup|authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset  
|collab|confgroup|contractnum|contractsponsor  
|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|edition  
|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname  
|biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|bibliocoverage  
|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname  
|productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername  
|pubsnumber|releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums  
|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|volumenum|citetitle  
|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|othername|affiliation  
|authorblurb|contrib  
|indexterm

## **%info.class; appears in:**

### **%info.class; appears in:**

appendixinfo	articleinfo	bibliographyinfo
blockinfo	bookinfo	chapterinfo
glossaryinfo	indexinfo	objectinfo
partinfo	prefaceinfo	refentryinfo
referenceinfo	refsect1info	refsect2info
refsect3info	refsectioninfo	refsynopsisdivinfo
sect1info	sect2info	sect3info
sect4info	sect5info	sectioninfo
setindexinfo	setinfo	sidebarinfo

## **%informal.class;**

### Parameter entity content:

address|blockquote  
|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco  
|informalequation  
|informalexample  
|informalfigure  
|informaltable

## **%inlineobj.char.class;**

### Parameter entity content:

inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation

## **%linespecific.class;**

### Parameter entity content:

literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen  
|screenco|screenshot

## **%link.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

link|olink|ulink

## **%link.char.class; appears in:**

**%link.char.class; appears in:**

figure	informalfigure	refentry
refnamediv	replaceable	subscript
superscript	trademark	

## **%list.class;**

Parameter entity content:

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist  
|simplelist|variablelist

## **%method.synop.class;**

Parameter entity content:

constructorsynopsis  
|destructorsynopsis  
|methodsynopsis

## **%method.synop.class; appears in:**

**%method.synop.class; appears in:**

classsynopsis

## **%nav.class;**

Parameter entity content:

toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography

## **%nav.class; appears in:**

**%nav.class; appears in:**

appendix	article	chapter
preface	sect1	sect2
sect3	sect4	sect5
section		

## **%ndxterm.class;**

Parameter entity content:

indexterm



**%refentry.class; appears in:**

reference	sect1	sect2
sect3	sect4	sect5
section		

**%section.class;**

Parameter entity content:

section

**%section.class; appears in:**

**%section.class; appears in:**

section

**%synop.class;**

Parameter entity content:

synopsis | cmdsynopsis | funcsynopsis  
| classsynopsis | fieldsynopsis  
| constructorsynopsis  
| destructorsynopsis  
| methodsynopsis

**%tech.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

action | application  
| classname | methodname | interfacename | exceptionname  
| ooclass | oointerface | ooexception  
| command | computeroutput  
| database | email | envar | errorcode | errorname | errortype | errortext | filename  
| function | guibutton | guicon | guilabel | guimenu | guimenuitem  
| guisubmenu | hardware | interface | keycap  
| keycode | keycombo | keysym | literal | constant | markup | medialabel  
| menuchoice | mousebutton | option | optional | parameter  
| prompt | property | replaceable | returnvalue | sgmltag | structfield  
| structname | symbol | systemitem | token | type | userinput | varname  
| nonterminal

**%tech.char.class; appears in:**

**%tech.char.class; appears in:**

trademark

**%xref.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

footnoteref | xref

# Content Model Parameter Entities

Content Model Parameter Entities -- Control groups of element definitions

## Synopsis

The content model parameter entities provide marked sections around groups of related elements. You can selectively include or remove these elements from DocBook by changing these parameter entities.

## Description

The following sections identify all of the content model parameter entities in DocBook.

FIXME: This is probably a DTD typo. This should be the sidebar.content.module parameter entity, surely?

### **%sidebar.content.model;**

Parameter entity content:

```
INCLUDE
```

# Content Module Parameter Entities

Content Module Parameter Entities -- Control groups of element definitions

## Synopsis

The content module parameter entities provide marked sections around groups of related elements. You can selectively include or remove these elements from DocBook by changing these parameter entities.

## Description

The following sections identify all of the content module parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%address.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%affiliation.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%areaspec.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%authorgroup.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliography.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%book.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%calloutlist.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classsynopsis.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%cmdsynopsis.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%collab.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%confgroup.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%copyright.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%docinfo.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcsynopsis.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossary.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%glossentry.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%index.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%indexterm.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%keywordset.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%lot.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%mediaobject.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%menuchoice.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%msgset.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%procedure.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%publisher.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%qandaset.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refentry.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revhistory.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%screenshot.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%section.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%segmentedlist.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%set.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%simplelist.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%subjectset.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toc.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%variablelist.content.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

# Common Attribute Parameter Entities

Common Attribute Parameter Entities -- Parameter entities which define the common attributes

## Synopsis

These parameter entities define the attributes that are considered “common”. Common attributes occur on every element. They are provided by either the `%common.attrib;` parameter entity or the `%idreq.common.attrib;` parameter entity. Those parameter entities are defined in terms of the others, listed here.

## Description

The following parameter entities define the common attributes in DocBook:

### **%arch.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
arch	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%common.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
id	ID	<i>None</i>
lang	CDATA	<i>None</i>
remap	CDATA	<i>None</i>
xreflabel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
revisionflag	<i>Enumerated:</i> changed added deleted off	<i>None</i>
arch	CDATA	<i>None</i>
condition	CDATA	<i>None</i>
conformance	NMTOKENS	<i>None</i>
os	CDATA	<i>None</i>
revision	CDATA	<i>None</i>
security	CDATA	<i>None</i>
userlevel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
vendor	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%common.attrib;** appears in:

**%common.attrib; appears in:**

abbrev	abstract	accel
ackno	acronym	action
address	affiliation	alt
answer	appendix	appendixinfo
application	areaspec	arg
article	articleinfo	artpagenums
attribution	audiodata	audioobject
author	authorblurb	authorgroup
authorinitials	beginpage	bibliocoverage
bibliodiv	biblioentry	bibliography
bibliographyinfo	biblioid	bibliomisc
bibliomixed	bibliomset	bibliorelation
biblioset	bibliosource	blockinfo
blockquote	book	bookinfo
bridgehead	callout	calloutlist
caption	caution	chapter
chapterinfo	citation	citebiblioid
citerefentry	citetitle	city
classname	classsynopsis	classsynopsisinfo
cmdsynopsis	collab	collabname
colophon	command	computeroutput
confdates	confgroup	confnum
confsponsor	conftitle	constant
constraint	constructorsynopsis	contractnum
contractsponsor	contrib	copyright
coref	corpauthor	corpname
country	database	date
dedication	destructorsynopsis	edition
editor	email	emphasis
envar	epigraph	equation
errorcode	errorname	errortext
errortype	example	exceptionname
fax	fieldsynopsis	figure
filename	firstname	firstterm
footnote	footnoteref	foreignphrase
formalpara	funcdef	funcparams
funcprototype	funcsynopsis	funcsynopsisinfo
function	glossary	glossaryinfo

glossdef	glossdiv	glossentry
glosslist	glosssee	glossseealso
glossterm	graphic	graphicco
group	guibutton	guiicon
guilabel	guimenu	guimenuitem
guisubmenu	hardware	highlights
holder	honorific	imagedata
imageobject	imageobjectco	important
index	indexdiv	indexentry
indexinfo	indexterm	informalequation
informalexample	informalfigure	initializer
inlineequation	inlinegraphic	inlinemediaobject
interface	interfacename	invpartnumber
isbn	issn	issuenum
itemizedlist	itermset	jobtitle
keycap	keycode	keycombo
keysym	keyword	keywordset
label	legalnotice	lhs
lineage	lineannotation	link
listitem	literal	literallayout
lot	lotentry	manvolnum
markup	medialabel	mediaobject
mediaobjectco	member	menuchoice
methodname	methodparam	methodsynopsis
modespec	modifier	mousebutton
msg	msgaud	msgentry
msgexplan	msginfo	msglevel
msgmain	msgorig	msgrel
msgset	msgsub	msgtext
nonterminal	note	objectinfo
olink	ooclass	ooexception
oointerface	option	optional
orderedlist	orgdiv	orgname
otheraddr	othercredit	othername
pagenums	para	paramdef
parameter	part	partinfo
partintro	personblurb	personname
phone	phrase	pob

postcode	preface	prefaceinfo
primary	primaryie	printhistory
procedure	productionrecap	productionset
productname	productnumber	programlisting
programlistingco	prompt	property
pubdate	publisher	publishername
pubsnumber	qandadiv	qandaentry
qandaset	question	quote
refclass	refdescriptor	refentry
refentryinfo	refentrytitle	reference
referenceinfo	refmeta	refmiscinfo
refname	refnamediv	refpurpose
refsect1	refsect1info	refsect2
refsect2info	refsect3	refsect3info
refsection	refsectioninfo	refsynopsisdiv
refsynopsisdivinfo	releaseinfo	remark
replaceable	returnvalue	revdescription
revhistory	revision	revnumber
revremark	rhs	sbr
screen	screenco	screeninfo
screenshot	secondary	secondaryie
sect1	sect1info	sect2
sect2info	sect3	sect3info
sect4	sect4info	sect5
sect5info	section	sectioninfo
see	seealso	seealsoie
seeie	seg	seglistitem
segmentedlist	segtitle	seriesvolnums
set	setindex	setindexinfo
setinfo	sgmltag	shortaffil
shortcut	sidebar	sidebarinfo
simplera	simplelist	simplemsgentry
simplesect	state	step
street	structfield	structname
subject	subjectset	subjectterm
subscript	substeps	subtitle
superscript	surname	symbol
synopfragmentref	synopsis	systemitem

term	tertiary	tertiaryie
textdata	textobject	tip
title	titleabbrev	toc
tocback	tocchap	tocentry
tocfront	toclevel1	toclevel2
toclevel3	toclevel4	toclevel5
tocpart	token	trademark
type	ulink	userinput
varargs	variablelist	varlistentry
varname	videodata	videobject
void	volumenum	warning
wordasword	xref	year

### **%conformance.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
conformance	NMTOKENS	<i>None</i>

### **%effectivity.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
arch	CDATA	<i>None</i>
condition	CDATA	<i>None</i>
conformance	NMTOKENS	<i>None</i>
os	CDATA	<i>None</i>
revision	CDATA	<i>None</i>
security	CDATA	<i>None</i>
userlevel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
vendor	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%effectivity.attrib; appears in:**

**%effectivity.attrib; appears in:**

anchor

### **%id.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
------	------	---------

id	ID	<i>None</i>
----	----	-------------

## **%idreq.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
id	ID	<i>Required</i>

**%idreq.attrib; appears in:**

**%idreq.attrib; appears in:**

anchor

## **%idreq.common.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
id	ID	<i>Required</i>
lang	CDATA	<i>None</i>
remap	CDATA	<i>None</i>
xreflabel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
revisionflag	<i>Enumerated:</i> changed added deleted off	<i>None</i>
arch	CDATA	<i>None</i>
condition	CDATA	<i>None</i>
conformance	NMTOKENS	<i>None</i>
os	CDATA	<i>None</i>
revision	CDATA	<i>None</i>
security	CDATA	<i>None</i>
userlevel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
vendor	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%idreq.common.attrib; appears in:**

**%idreq.common.attrib; appears in:**

area	areaset	co
constraintdef	production	synopfragment

## **%lang.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
lang	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%os.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
os	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%remap.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
remap	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%remap.attrib; appears in:**

**%remap.attrib; appears in:**

anchor

### **%revision.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
revision	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%revisionflag.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
revisionflag	<i>Enumerated:</i> changed added deleted off	<i>None</i>

**%revisionflag.attrib; appears in:**

**%revisionflag.attrib; appears in:**

anchor

### **%userlevel.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
------	------	---------

userlevel	CDATA	<i>None</i>
-----------	-------	-------------

### **%vendor.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
vendor	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%xreflabel.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
xreflabel	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%xreflabel.attrib; appears in:**

**%xreflabel.attrib; appears in:**

anchor

# DocBook Content Parameter Entities

DocBook Content Parameter Entities -- Specify content of selected elements

## Synopsis

These parameter entities control the content of selected elements.

## Description

The content model of several elements in DocBook are controlled by parameter entities.

The following sections identify all of the module parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%bookcomponent.content;**

Parameter entity content:

```
((calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
|constructorsynopsis
|destructorsynopsis
|methodsynopsis
|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote
|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
|informalequation
|informalexample
|informalfigure
|informaltable
|equation|example|figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset
|productionset|constraintdef

|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights
|abstract|authorblurb|epigraph

|indexterm|beginpage

)+,
(sect1*|(refentry)*|simplesect*|(section*))
|(sect1+|(refentry)+|simplesect+|(section
```

### **%bookcomponent.content; appears in:**

**%bookcomponent.content; appears in:**

appendix	article	chapter
partintro	preface	

### **%bookcomponent.title.content;**

Parameter entity content:

title, subtitle?, titleabbrev

**%bookcomponent.title.content; appears in:**

**%bookcomponent.title.content; appears in:**

appendix	bibliography	chapter
glossary	index	lot
part	preface	reference
setindex	toc	

**%div.title.content;**

Parameter entity content:

title, subtitle?, titleabbrev

**%div.title.content; appears in:**

**%div.title.content; appears in:**

article	book	partintro
set		

**%equation.content;**

Parameter entity content:

(alt?, (graphic+|mediaobject

**%equation.content; appears in:**

**%equation.content; appears in:**

equation	informalequation
----------	------------------

**%formalobject.title.content;**

Parameter entity content:

title, titleabbrev

**%formalobject.title.content; appears in:**

**%formalobject.title.content; appears in:**

calloutlist	equation	example
figure	itemizedlist	msgset
orderedlist	procedure	productionset
qandadiv	qandaset	segmentedlist
sidebar	variablelist	

## **%inlineequation.content;**

Parameter entity content:

(alt?, (graphic+|inlinemediaobject

## **%inlineequation.content; appears in:**

**%inlineequation.content; appears in:**

inlineequation

## **%refsect.title.content;**

Parameter entity content:

title, subtitle?, titleabbrev

## **%refsect.title.content; appears in:**

**%refsect.title.content; appears in:**

refsect1	refsect2	refsect3
refsection	refsynopsisdiv	

## **%sect.title.content;**

Parameter entity content:

title, subtitle?, titleabbrev

## **%sect.title.content; appears in:**

**%sect.title.content; appears in:**

bibliodiv	colophon	dedication
glossdiv	indexdiv	sect1
sect2	sect3	sect4
sect5	section	simplesect

# **%db\* ; Parameter Entities**

%db\* ; Parameter Entities -- Control inclusion of DocBook modules

## **Synopsis**

These parameter entities control the inclusion of DocBook modules.

## **Description**

The modules listed here are included in DocBook DTD via parameter entity reference. For more information about these modules, and additional modules that can be defined, see Chapter 5.

The following sections identify all of the module parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%dbcent.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%dbcent;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** -//OASIS//ENTITIES DocBook Character Entities V4.2CR3//EN

**System identifier:** dbcentx.mod

### **%dbgenent.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%dbgenent;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** -//OASIS//ENTITIES DocBook Additional General Entities V4.2CR3//EN

**System identifier:** dbgenent.mod

### **%dbhier.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%dbhier;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** -//OASIS//ELEMENTS DocBook Document Hierarchy V4.2CR3//EN

**System identifier:** dbhierx.mod

## **%dbhier.redecl.module;**

Parameter entity content:

IGNORE

## **%dbhier.redecl2.module;**

Parameter entity content:

IGNORE

## **%dbnotn.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%dbnotn;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** -//OASIS//ENTITIES DocBook Notations V4.2CR3//EN

**System identifier:** dbnotnx.mod

## **%dbpool.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%dbpool;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** -//OASIS//ELEMENTS DocBook Information Pool V4.2CR3//EN

**System identifier:** dbpoolx.mod

## **%dbpool.redecl.module;**

Parameter entity content:

IGNORE

# **%\*.element; Parameter Entities**

%\*.element; Parameter Entities -- Control individual element declarations

## **Synopsis**

Used to control marked sections around the declarations of individual elements.

## **Description**

The %\*.element; parameter entities provide marked sections around individual element declarations. You can selectively include or remove element declarations from DocBook by changing these parameter entities.

The following sections identify all of the element parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%abbrev.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%abstract.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%accel.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ackno.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%acronym.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%action.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%address.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%affiliation.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%alt.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%anchor.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%answer.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%appendix.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%appendixinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%application.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%area.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%areaset.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%areaspec.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%arg.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%article.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%articleinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%artpagenums.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%attribution.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%audiodata.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%audioobject.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%author.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorblurb.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorgroup.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorinitials.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%beginpage.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliocoverage.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliodiv.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%biblioentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliography.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliographyinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%biblioid.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliomisc.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliomixed.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliomset.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%bibliorelation.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%biblioset.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliosome.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%blockinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%blockquote.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%book.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bookinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bridgehead.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%callout.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%calloutlist.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%caption.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%caution.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%chapter.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%chapterinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%citation.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%citebiblioid.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%citerefentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%citetitle.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%city.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classsynopsis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classsynopsisinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%cmdsynopsis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%co.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%collab.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%collabname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%colophon.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%command.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%computeroutput.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confdates.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confgroup.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confnum.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confsponsor.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%conftitle.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%constant.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%constructorsynopsis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contractnum.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contractsponsor.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contrib.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%copyright.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%coref.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%corpauthor.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%corpname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%country.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%database.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%date.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%dedication.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%destructorsynopsis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%edition.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%editor.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%email.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%emphasis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%envar.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%epigraph.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%equation.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errorcode.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errorname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errortext.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errortype.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%example.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%exceptionname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%fax.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%fieldsynopsis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%figure.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%filename.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%firstname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%firstterm.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%footnote.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%footnoteref.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%foreignphrase.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%formalpara.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcdef.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcparams.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcprototype.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcsynopsis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcsynopsisinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%function.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossary.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossaryinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%glossdef.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%glossdiv.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%glossentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%glosslist.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%glosssee.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%glossseealso.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%glossterm.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%graphic.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%graphicco.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%group.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guibutton.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guiicon.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guilabel.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guimenu.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guimenuitem.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guisubmenu.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%hardware.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%highlights.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%holder.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%honorific.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%imagedata.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%imageobject.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%imageobjectco.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%important.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%index.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexdiv.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexterm.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalequation.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalexample.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalfigure.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informaltable.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%initializer.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%inlineequation.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%inlinegraphic.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%inlinemediaobject.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%interface.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%interfacename.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%invpartnumber.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%isbn.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%issn.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%issuenum.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%itemizedlist.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%itermset.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%jobtitle.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keycap.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keycode.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keycombo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keysym.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%keyword.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%keywordset.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%label.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%legalnotice.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%lineage.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%lineannotation.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%link.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%listitem.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%literal.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%literallayout.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%lot.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%lotentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%manvolnum.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%markup.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%medialabel.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%mediaobject.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%mediaobjectco.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%member.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%menuchoice.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%methodname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%methodparam.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%methodsynopsis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%modespec.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%modifier.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%mousebutton.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%msg.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgaud.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgexplan.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msginfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msglevel.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgmain.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgorig.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgrel.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgset.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%msgsub.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%msgtext.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%note.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%objectinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%olink.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ooclass.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ooexception.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%oointerface.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%option.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%optional.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orderedlist.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orgdiv.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orgname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%otheraddr.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%othercredit.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%othername.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pagenums.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%para.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%paramdef.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%parameter.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%part.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%partinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%partintro.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%personblurb.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%personname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%phone.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%phrase.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pob.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%postcode.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%preface.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%prefaceinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%primary.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%primaryie.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%printhistory.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%procedure.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%productname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%productnumber.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%programlisting.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%programlistingco.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%prompt.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%property.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%pubdate.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%publisher.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%publishername.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pubsnumber.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%qandadiv.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%qandaentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%qandaset.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%question.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%quote.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refclass.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refdescriptor.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refentryinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refentrytitle.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%reference.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%referenceinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refmeta.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%refmiscinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refnamediv.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refpurpose.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect1.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect1info.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect2.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect2info.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect3.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect3info.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsection.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsectioninfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsynopsisdiv.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsynopsisdivinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%releaseinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%remark.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%replaceable.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%returnvalue.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revdescription.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revhistory.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revision.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revnumber.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revremark.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sbr.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%screen.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%screenco.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%screeninfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%screenshot.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%secondary.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%secondaryie.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect1.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect1info.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect2.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect2info.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect3.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect3info.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect4.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect4info.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect5.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect5info.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%section.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sectioninfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%see.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%seealso.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seealsoie.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seeie.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seg.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seglistitem.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%segmentedlist.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%segtitle.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seriesvolnums.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%set.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%setindex.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%setindexinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%setinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sgmltag.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%shortaffil.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%shortcut.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sidebar.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sidebarinfo.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%simpara.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%simplelist.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%simplemsgentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%simplesect.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%state.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%step.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%street.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%structfield.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%structname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subject.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subjectset.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subjectterm.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subscript.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%substeps.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subtitle.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%superscript.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%surname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%symbol.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%synopfragment.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%synopfragmentref.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%synopsis.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%systemitem.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%term.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%tertiary.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%tertiaryie.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%textdata.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%textobject.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tip.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%title.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%titleabbrev.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%toc.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tocback.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tocchap.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tocentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%tocfront.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%toclevel1.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%toclevel2.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%toclevel3.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%toclevel4.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%toclevel5.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%tocpart.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%token.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%trademark.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%type.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%ulink.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%userinput.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%varargs.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%variablelist.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%varlistentry.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%varname.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%videodata.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%videoobject.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%void.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%volumenum.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%warning.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%wordasword.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%xref.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%year.element;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

# **%\*.exclusion; Parameter Entities**

%\*.exclusion; Parameter Entities -- Control SGML exclusions

## **Synopsis**

Used to control the exclusion declarations on elements with exclusions.

## **Description**

The %\*.exclusion; parameter entities parameterize element exclusions. You can selectively include or remove elements from the exclusion by changing the appropriate parameter entity.

In the XML version of DocBook V4, there are no inclusion entities because inclusions are not part of XML.

## **%\* .hook; Parameter Entities**

`%* .hook;` Parameter Entities -- Control access to additional modules

### **Synopsis**

The hook parameter entities provide a mechanism for including additional modules (EBNF, MathML, HTML Forms, etc.). Each of these hooks exists so that the module can insert additional content in appropriate places without interfering with the normal user-level customization provided by the local.\* entities.

### **Description**

The following sections identify all of the hook parameter entities in DocBook.

#### **%ebnf.block.hook;**

Parameter entity content:

`|productionset|constraintdef`

#### **%ebnf.inline.hook;**

Parameter entity content:

`|nonterminal`

#### **%ebnf;**

Parameter entity content:

**System identifier:** `dbebnf.dtd`

#### **%forminlines.hook;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

#### **%forms.hook;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

# **%\*.inclusion; Parameter Entities**

%\*.inclusion; Parameter Entities -- Control SGML inclusions

## **Synopsis**

Used to control the inclusion declarations on elements with inclusions.

## **Description**

The %\*.inclusion; parameter entities parameterize element inclusions. You can selectively include or remove elements from the inclusion by changing the appropriate parameter entity. For example, if you remove BeginPage from the %ubiq.inclusion; parameter entity, it is no longer included everywhere in DocBook.

In the XML version of DocBook V4, there are no inclusion entities because inclusions are not part of XML.

# **%iso\* ; Parameter Entities**

`%iso*` ; Parameter Entities -- Parameter entities which control ISO Entity Sets

## **Synopsis**

These parameter entities pull in the corresponding ISO entity set.

## **Description**

The following sections identify all of the ISO entity sets in DocBook.

### **%ISOamsa;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Arrow Relations//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-amsa.ent

### **%ISOamsb;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Binary Operators//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-amsb.ent

### **%ISOamsc;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Delimiters//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-amsc.ent

### **%ISOamsn;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Negated Relations//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-amsn.ent

### **%ISOamso;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Ordinary//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-amso.ent

## **%ISOamsr;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Relations//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-amsr.ent

## **%ISObox;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Box and Line Drawing//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-box.ent

## **%ISOcyr1;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Russian Cyrillic//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-cyr1.ent

## **%ISOcyr2;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Non-Russian Cyrillic//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-cyr2.ent

## **%ISODia;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Diacritical Marks//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-dia.ent

## **%ISOgrk1;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Greek Letters//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-grk1.ent

## **%ISOgrk2;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Monotoniko Greek//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-grk2.ent

## **%ISOgrk3;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Greek Symbols//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-grk3.ent

## **%ISOgrk4;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Alternative Greek Symbols//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-grk4.ent

## **%ISOlat1;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Latin 1//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-lat1.ent

## **%ISOlat2;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Latin 2//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-lat2.ent

## **%ISOnum;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Numeric and Special Graphic//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-num.ent

## **%ISOpub;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Publishing//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-pub.ent

## **%ISOtech;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES General Technical//EN//XML

**System identifier:** ent/iso-tech.ent

# **%local.\*.attrib; Parameter Entities**

`%local.*.attrib;` Parameter Entities -- Allow attribute extension

## **Synopsis**

These parameter entities offer a place where you can easily add new attributes to DocBook elements.

## **Description**

The following sections identify all of the local attribute parameter entities in DocBook. Each of the entities is defined as empty.

### **%local.abbrev.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

#### **%local.abbrev.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.abbrev.attrib; appears in:**

`abbrev`

### **%local.abstract.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

#### **%local.abstract.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.abstract.attrib; appears in:**

`abstract`

### **%local.accel.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

#### **%local.accel.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.accel.attrib; appears in:**

`accel`

### **%local.ackno.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.ackno.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.ackno.attrib; appears in:**

ackno

**%local.acronym.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.acronym.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.acronym.attrib; appears in:**

acronym

**%local.action.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.action.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.action.attrib; appears in:**

action

**%local.address.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.address.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.address.attrib; appears in:**

address

**%local.admon.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.admon.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.admon.attrib; appears in:**

caution

important

note

tip

warning

## **%local.affiliation.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.affiliation.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.affiliation.attrib; appears in:**

affiliation

## **%local.alt.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.alt.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.alt.attrib; appears in:**

alt

## **%local.anchor.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.anchor.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.anchor.attrib; appears in:**

anchor

## **%local.answer.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.answer.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.answer.attrib; appears in:**

answer

## **%local.appendix.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.appendix.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.appendix.attrib; appears in:**

appendix

### **%local.appendixinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.appendixinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.appendixinfo.attrib; appears in:**

appendixinfo

### **%local.application.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.application.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.application.attrib; appears in:**

application

### **%local.area.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.area.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.area.attrib; appears in:**

area

### **%local.areaset.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.areaset.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.areaset.attrib; appears in:**

areaset

### **%local.areaspec.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.areaspec.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.areaspec.attrib; appears in:**

areaspec

**%local.arg.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.arg.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.arg.attrib; appears in:**

arg

**%local.article.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.article.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.article.attrib; appears in:**

article

**%local.articleinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.articleinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.articleinfo.attrib; appears in:**

articleinfo

**%local.artpagenums.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.artpagenums.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.artpagenums.attrib; appears in:**

artpagenums

**%local.attribution.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.attribution.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.attribution.attrib; appears in:**

attribution

**%local.audiodata.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.audiodata.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.audiodata.attrib; appears in:**

audiodata

**%local.audioobject.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.audioobject.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.audioobject.attrib; appears in:**

audioobject

**%local.author.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.author.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.author.attrib; appears in:**

author

**%local.authorblurb.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.authorblurb.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.authorblurb.attrib; appears in:**

authorblurb

## **%local.authorgroup.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.authorgroup.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.authorgroup.attrib; appears in:**

authorgroup

## **%local.authorinitials.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.authorinitials.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.authorinitials.attrib; appears in:**

authorinitials

## **%local.beginpage.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.beginpage.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.beginpage.attrib; appears in:**

beginpage

## **%local.bibliocoverage.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bibliocoverage.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliocoverage.attrib; appears in:**

bibliocoverage

## **%local.bibliodiv.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bibliodiv.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliodiv.attrib; appears in:**

bibliodiv

### **%local.biblioentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.biblioentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.biblioentry.attrib; appears in:**

biblioentry

### **%local.bibliography.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bibliography.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliography.attrib; appears in:**

bibliography

### **%local.bibliographyinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bibliographyinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliographyinfo.attrib; appears in:**

bibliographyinfo

### **%local.biblioid.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.biblioid.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.biblioid.attrib; appears in:**

biblioid

### **%local.bibliomisc.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bibliomisc.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliomisc.attrib; appears in:**

bibliomisc

**%local.bibliomixed.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bibliomixed.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliomixed.attrib; appears in:**

bibliomixed

**%local.bibliomset.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bibliomset.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliomset.attrib; appears in:**

bibliomset

**%local.bibliorelation.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bibliorelation.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliorelation.attrib; appears in:**

bibliorelation

**%local.bibliorelation.types;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.biblioset.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.biblioset.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.biblioset.attrib; appears in:**

biblioset

### **%local.bibliosource.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.bibliosource.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bibliosource.attrib; appears in:**

bibliosource

### **%local.blockinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.blockinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.blockinfo.attrib; appears in:**

blockinfo

### **%local.blockquote.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.blockquote.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.blockquote.attrib; appears in:**

blockquote

### **%local.book.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.book.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.book.attrib; appears in:**

book

### **%local.bookinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bookinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bookinfo.attrib; appears in:**

bookinfo

**%local.bridgehead.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.bridgehead.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.bridgehead.attrib; appears in:**

bridgehead

**%local.callout.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.callout.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.callout.attrib; appears in:**

callout

**%local.calloutlist.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.calloutlist.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.calloutlist.attrib; appears in:**

calloutlist

**%local.caption.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.caption.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.caption.attrib; appears in:**

caption

**%local.chapter.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.chapter.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.chapter.attrib; appears in:**

chapter

**%local.chapterinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.chapterinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.chapterinfo.attrib; appears in:**

chapterinfo

**%local.citation.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.citation.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.citation.attrib; appears in:**

citation

**%local.citebiblioid.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.citebiblioid.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.citebiblioid.attrib; appears in:**

citebiblioid

**%local.citerefentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.citerefentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.citerefentry.attrib; appears in:**

citerefentry

## **%local.citetitle.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.citetitle.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.citetitle.attrib; appears in:**

`citetitle`

## **%local.city.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.city.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.city.attrib; appears in:**

`city`

## **%local.classname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.classname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.classname.attrib; appears in:**

`classname`

## **%local.classsynopsis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.classsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.classsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

`classsynopsis`

## **%local.classsynopsisinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.classsynopsisinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.classsynopsisinfo.attrib; appears in:**

classsynopsisinfo

### **%local.cmdsynopsis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.cmdsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.cmdsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

cmdsynopsis

### **%local.co.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.co.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.co.attrib; appears in:**

co

### **%local.collab.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.collab.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.collab.attrib; appears in:**

collab

### **%local.collabname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.collabname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.collabname.attrib; appears in:**

collabname

### **%local.colophon.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.colophon.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.colophon.attrib; appears in:**

colophon

**%local.command.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.command.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.command.attrib; appears in:**

command

**%local.common.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.computeroutput.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.computeroutput.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.computeroutput.attrib; appears in:**

computeroutput

**%local.confdates.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.confdates.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.confdates.attrib; appears in:**

confdates

**%local.confgroup.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.confgroup.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.confgroup.attrib; appears in:**

confgroup

### **%local.confnum.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.confnum.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.confnum.attrib; appears in:**

confnum

### **%local.confsponsor.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.confsponsor.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.confsponsor.attrib; appears in:**

confsponsor

### **%local.conftitle.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.conftitle.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.conftitle.attrib; appears in:**

conftitle

### **%local.constant.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.constant.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.constant.attrib; appears in:**

constant

### **%local.constructorsynopsis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.constructorsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.constructorsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

constructorsynopsis

**%local.contractnum.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.contractnum.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.contractnum.attrib; appears in:**

contractnum

**%local.contractsponsor.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.contractsponsor.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.contractsponsor.attrib; appears in:**

contractsponsor

**%local.contrib.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.contrib.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.contrib.attrib; appears in:**

contrib

**%local.copyright.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.copyright.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.copyright.attrib; appears in:**

copyright

**%local.coref.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.coref.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.coref.attrib; appears in:**

coref

**%local.corpauthor.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.corpauthor.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.corpauthor.attrib; appears in:**

corpauthor

**%local.corpname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.corpname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.corpname.attrib; appears in:**

corpname

**%local.country.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.country.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.country.attrib; appears in:**

country

**%local.database.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.database.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.database.attrib; appears in:**

database

## **%local.date.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.date.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.date.attrib; appears in:**

date

## **%local.dedication.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.dedication.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.dedication.attrib; appears in:**

dedication

## **%local.destructorsynopsis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.destructorsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.destructorsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

destructorsynopsis

## **%local.edition.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.edition.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.edition.attrib; appears in:**

edition

## **%local.editor.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.editor.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.editor.attrib; appears in:**

editor

### **%local.effectivity.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.email.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.email.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.email.attrib; appears in:**

email

### **%local.emphasis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.emphasis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.emphasis.attrib; appears in:**

emphasis

### **%local.envvar.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.envvar.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.envvar.attrib; appears in:**

envvar

### **%local.epigraph.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.epigraph.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.epigraph.attrib; appears in:**

epigraph

## **%local.equation.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.equation.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.equation.attrib; appears in:**

`equation`

## **%local.errorcode.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.errorcode.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.errorcode.attrib; appears in:**

`errorcode`

## **%local.errorname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.errorname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.errorname.attrib; appears in:**

`errorname`

## **%local.errortext.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.errortext.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.errortext.attrib; appears in:**

`errortext`

## **%local.errortype.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.errortype.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.errortype.attrib; appears in:**

errortype

### **%local.example.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.example.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.example.attrib; appears in:**

example

### **%local.exceptionname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.exceptionname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.exceptionname.attrib; appears in:**

exceptionname

### **%local.fax.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.fax.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.fax.attrib; appears in:**

fax

### **%local.fieldsynopsis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.fieldsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.fieldsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

fieldsynopsis

### **%local.figure.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.figure.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.figure.attrib; appears in:**

figure

**%local.filename.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.filename.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.filename.attrib; appears in:**

filename

**%local.firstname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.firstname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.firstname.attrib; appears in:**

firstname

**%local.firstterm.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.firstterm.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.firstterm.attrib; appears in:**

firstterm

**%local.footnote.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.footnote.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.footnote.attrib; appears in:**

footnote

**%local.footnoteref.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.footnoteref.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.footnoteref.attrib; appears in:**

footnoteref

**%local.foreignphrase.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.foreignphrase.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.foreignphrase.attrib; appears in:**

foreignphrase

**%local.formalpara.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.formalpara.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.formalpara.attrib; appears in:**

formalpara

**%local.funcdef.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.funcdef.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.funcdef.attrib; appears in:**

funcdef

**%local.funcparams.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.funcparams.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.funcparams.attrib; appears in:**

funcparams

## **%local.funcprototype.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.funcprototype.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.funcprototype.attrib; appears in:**

funcprototype

## **%local.funcsynopsis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.funcsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.funcsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

funcsynopsis

## **%local.funcsynopsisinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.funcsynopsisinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.funcsynopsisinfo.attrib; appears in:**

funcsynopsisinfo

## **%local.function.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.function.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.function.attrib; appears in:**

function

## **%local.glossary.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.glossary.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glossary.attrib; appears in:**

glossary

### **%local.glossaryinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.glossaryinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glossaryinfo.attrib; appears in:**

glossaryinfo

### **%local.glossdef.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.glossdef.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glossdef.attrib; appears in:**

glossdef

### **%local.glossdiv.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.glossdiv.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glossdiv.attrib; appears in:**

glossdiv

### **%local.glossentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.glossentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glossentry.attrib; appears in:**

glossentry

### **%local.glosslist.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.glosslist.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glosslist.attrib; appears in:**

glosslist

**%local.glossee.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.glossee.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glossee.attrib; appears in:**

glossee

**%local.glosseealso.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.glosseealso.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glosseealso.attrib; appears in:**

glosseealso

**%local.glossterm.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.glossterm.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.glossterm.attrib; appears in:**

glossterm

**%local.graphic.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.graphic.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.graphic.attrib; appears in:**

graphic

**%local.graphicco.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.graphicco.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.graphicco.attrib; appears in:**

graphicco

**%local.graphics.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.group.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.group.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.group.attrib; appears in:**

group

**%local.guibutton.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.guibutton.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.guibutton.attrib; appears in:**

guibutton

**%local.guiicon.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.guiicon.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.guiicon.attrib; appears in:**

guiicon

**%local.guilabel.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.guilabel.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.guilabel.attrib; appears in:**

guilabel

**%local.guimenu.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.guimenu.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.guimenu.attrib; appears in:**

guimenu

**%local.guimenuitem.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.guimenuitem.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.guimenuitem.attrib; appears in:**

guimenuitem

**%local.guisubmenu.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.guisubmenu.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.guisubmenu.attrib; appears in:**

guisubmenu

**%local.hardware.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.hardware.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.hardware.attrib; appears in:**

hardware

**%local.highlights.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.highlights.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.highlights.attrib; appears in:**

highlights

**%local.holder.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.holder.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.holder.attrib; appears in:**

holder

**%local.honorific.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.honorific.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.honorific.attrib; appears in:**

honorific

**%local.imagedata.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.imagedata.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.imagedata.attrib; appears in:**

imagedata

**%local.imageobject.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.imageobject.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.imageobject.attrib; appears in:**

imageobject



indexinfo

### **%local.indexterm.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.indexterm.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.indexterm.attrib; appears in:**

indexterm

### **%local.informalequation.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.informalequation.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.informalequation.attrib; appears in:**

informalequation

### **%local.informalexample.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.informalexample.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.informalexample.attrib; appears in:**

informalexample

### **%local.informalfigure.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.informalfigure.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.informalfigure.attrib; appears in:**

informalfigure

### **%local.informaltable.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.informaltable.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.informaltable.attrib; appears in:**

informaltable

**%local.initializer.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.initializer.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.initializer.attrib; appears in:**

initializer

**%local.inlineequation.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.inlineequation.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.inlineequation.attrib; appears in:**

inlineequation

**%local.inlinegraphic.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.inlinegraphic.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.inlinegraphic.attrib; appears in:**

inlinegraphic

**%local.inlinemediaobject.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.inlinemediaobject.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.inlinemediaobject.attrib; appears in:**

inlinemediaobject

**%local.interface.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.interface.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.interface.attrib; appears in:**

interface

**%local.interfacename.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.interfacename.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.interfacename.attrib; appears in:**

interfacename

**%local.invpartmentnumber.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.invpartmentnumber.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.invpartmentnumber.attrib; appears in:**

invpartnumber

**%local.isbn.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.isbn.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.isbn.attrib; appears in:**

isbn

**%local.issn.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.issn.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.issn.attrib; appears in:**

issn

## **%local.issuenum.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.issuenum.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.issuenum.attrib; appears in:**

issuenum

## **%local.itemizedlist.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.itemizedlist.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.itemizedlist.attrib; appears in:**

itemizedlist

## **%local.itemset.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.itemset.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.itemset.attrib; appears in:**

itemset

## **%local.jobtitle.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.jobtitle.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.jobtitle.attrib; appears in:**

jobtitle

## **%local.keyaction.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.keycap.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.keycap.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.keycap.attrib; appears in:**

keycap

## **%local.keycode.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.keycode.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.keycode.attrib; appears in:**

keycode

## **%local.keycombo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.keycombo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.keycombo.attrib; appears in:**

keycombo

## **%local.keysym.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.keysym.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.keysym.attrib; appears in:**

keysym

## **%local.keyword.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.keyword.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.keyword.attrib; appears in:**

keyword

### **%local.keywordset.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.keywordset.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.keywordset.attrib; appears in:**

keywordset

### **%local.label.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.label.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.label.attrib; appears in:**

label

### **%local.legalnotice.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.legalnotice.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.legalnotice.attrib; appears in:**

legalnotice

### **%local.lineage.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.lineage.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.lineage.attrib; appears in:**

lineage

### **%local.lineannotation.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.lineannotation.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.lineannotation.attrib; appears in:**

lineannotation

**%local.link.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.link.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.link.attrib; appears in:**

link

**%local.listitem.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.listitem.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.listitem.attrib; appears in:**

listitem

**%local.literal.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.literal.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.literal.attrib; appears in:**

literal

**%local.literallayout.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.literallayout.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.literallayout.attrib; appears in:**

literallayout

**%local.lot.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.lot.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.lot.attrib; appears in:**

lot

**%local.lotentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.lotentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.lotentry.attrib; appears in:**

lotentry

**%local.manvolnum.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.manvolnum.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.manvolnum.attrib; appears in:**

manvolnum

**%local.mark.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.markup.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.markup.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.markup.attrib; appears in:**

markup

**%local.medialabel.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.medialabel.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.medialabel.attrib; appears in:**

medialabel

**%local.mediaobject.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.mediaobject.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.mediaobject.attrib; appears in:**

mediaobject

**%local.mediaobjectco.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.mediaobjectco.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.mediaobjectco.attrib; appears in:**

mediaobjectco

**%local.member.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.member.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.member.attrib; appears in:**

member

**%local.menuchoice.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.menuchoice.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.menuchoice.attrib; appears in:**

menuchoice

**%local.methodname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.methodname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.methodname.attrib; appears in:**

methodname

**%local.methodparam.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.methodparam.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.methodparam.attrib; appears in:**

methodparam

**%local.methodsynopsis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.methodsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.methodsynopsis.attrib; appears in:**

methodsynopsis

**%local.modespec.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.modespec.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.modespec.attrib; appears in:**

modespec

**%local.modifier.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.modifier.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.modifier.attrib; appears in:**

modifier

## **%local.mousebutton.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.mousebutton.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.mousebutton.attrib; appears in:**

mousebutton

## **%local.msg.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.msg.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msg.attrib; appears in:**

msg

## **%local.msgaud.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.msgaud.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgaud.attrib; appears in:**

msgaud

## **%local.msgentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.msgentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgentry.attrib; appears in:**

msgentry

## **%local.msgexplan.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.msgexplan.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgexplan.attrib; appears in:**

msgexplan

### **%local.msginfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.msginfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msginfo.attrib; appears in:**

msginfo

### **%local.msglevel.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.msglevel.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msglevel.attrib; appears in:**

msglevel

### **%local.msgmain.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.msgmain.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgmain.attrib; appears in:**

msgmain

### **%local.msgorig.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.msgorig.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgorig.attrib; appears in:**

msgorig

### **%local.msgrel.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.msgrel.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgrel.attrib; appears in:**

msgrel

**%local.msgset.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.msgset.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgset.attrib; appears in:**

msgset

**%local.msgsub.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.msgsub.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgsub.attrib; appears in:**

msgsub

**%local.msgtext.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.msgtext.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.msgtext.attrib; appears in:**

msgtext

**%local.objectdata.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.objectinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.objectinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.objectinfo.attrib; appears in:**

objectinfo

### **%local.olink.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.olink.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.olink.attrib; appears in:**

olink

### **%local.ooclass.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.ooclass.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.ooclass.attrib; appears in:**

ooclass

### **%local.ooexception.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.ooexception.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.ooexception.attrib; appears in:**

ooexception

### **%local.oointerface.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.oointerface.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.oointerface.attrib; appears in:**

oointerface

### **%local.option.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.option.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.option.attrib; appears in:**

option

**%local.optional.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.optional.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.optional.attrib; appears in:**

optional

**%local.orderedlist.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.orderedlist.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.orderedlist.attrib; appears in:**

orderedlist

**%local.orgdiv.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.orgdiv.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.orgdiv.attrib; appears in:**

orgdiv

**%local.orgname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.orgname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.orgname.attrib; appears in:**

orgname

**%local.otheraddr.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.otheraddr.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.otheraddr.attrib; appears in:**

otheraddr

**%local.othercredit.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.othercredit.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.othercredit.attrib; appears in:**

othercredit

**%local.othername.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.othername.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.othername.attrib; appears in:**

othername

**%local.pagenums.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.pagenums.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.pagenums.attrib; appears in:**

pagenums

**%local.para.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.para.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.para.attrib; appears in:**

para

## **%local.paramdef.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.paramdef.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.paramdef.attrib; appears in:**

paramdef

## **%local.parameter.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.parameter.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.parameter.attrib; appears in:**

parameter

## **%local.part.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.part.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.part.attrib; appears in:**

part

## **%local.partinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.partinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.partinfo.attrib; appears in:**

partinfo

## **%local.partintro.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.partintro.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.partintro.attrib; appears in:**

partintro

### **%local.personblurb.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.personblurb.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.personblurb.attrib; appears in:**

personblurb

### **%local.personname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.personname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.personname.attrib; appears in:**

personname

### **%local.phone.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.phone.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.phone.attrib; appears in:**

phone

### **%local.phrase.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.phrase.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.phrase.attrib; appears in:**

phrase

### **%local.pob.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.pob.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.pob.attrib; appears in:**

pob

**%local.postcode.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.postcode.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.postcode.attrib; appears in:**

postcode

**%local.preface.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.preface.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.preface.attrib; appears in:**

preface

**%local.prefaceinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.prefaceinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.prefaceinfo.attrib; appears in:**

prefaceinfo

**%local.primsector.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.primsector.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.primsector.attrib; appears in:**

primary

secondary

tertiary

**%local.primsecterie.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.primsecterie.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.primsecterie.attrib; appears in:**

primaryie

secondaryie

tertiaryie

**%local.prinhistory.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.prinhistory.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.prinhistory.attrib; appears in:**

prinhistory

**%local.procedure.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.procedure.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.procedure.attrib; appears in:**

procedure

**%local.productname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.productname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.productname.attrib; appears in:**

productname

**%local.productnumber.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.productnumber.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.productnumber.attrib; appears in:**

productnumber

## **%local.programlisting.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.programlisting.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.programlisting.attrib; appears in:**

`programlisting`

## **%local.programlistingco.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.programlistingco.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.programlistingco.attrib; appears in:**

`programlistingco`

## **%local.prompt.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.prompt.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.prompt.attrib; appears in:**

`prompt`

## **%local.property.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.property.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.property.attrib; appears in:**

`property`

## **%local.pubdate.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.pubdate.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.pubdate.attrib; appears in:**

pubdate

### **%local.publisher.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.publisher.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.publisher.attrib; appears in:**

publisher

### **%local.publishername.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.publishername.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.publishername.attrib; appears in:**

publishername

### **%local.pubsnumber.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.pubsnumber.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.pubsnumber.attrib; appears in:**

pubsnumber

### **%local.qandadiv.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.qandadiv.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.qandadiv.attrib; appears in:**

qandadiv

### **%local.qandaentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.qandaentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.qandaentry.attrib; appears in:**

qandaentry

**%local.qandaset.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.qandaset.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.qandaset.attrib; appears in:**

qandaset

**%local.question.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.question.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.question.attrib; appears in:**

question

**%local.quote.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.quote.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.quote.attrib; appears in:**

quote

**%local.refclass.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refclass.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refclass.attrib; appears in:**

refclass

**%local.refdescriptor.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refdescriptor.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refdescriptor.attrib; appears in:**

refdescriptor

**%local.refentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refentry.attrib; appears in:**

refentry

**%local.refentryinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refentryinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refentryinfo.attrib; appears in:**

refentryinfo

**%local.refentrytitle.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refentrytitle.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refentrytitle.attrib; appears in:**

refentrytitle

**%local.reference.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.reference.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.reference.attrib; appears in:**

reference

## **%local.referenceinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.referenceinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.referenceinfo.attrib; appears in:**

referenceinfo

## **%local.refmeta.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refmeta.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refmeta.attrib; appears in:**

refmeta

## **%local.refmiscinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refmiscinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refmiscinfo.attrib; appears in:**

refmiscinfo

## **%local.refname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refname.attrib; appears in:**

refname

## **%local.refnamediv.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refnamediv.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refnamediv.attrib; appears in:**

refnamediv

### **%local.refpurpose.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.refpurpose.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refpurpose.attrib; appears in:**

refpurpose

### **%local.refsect1.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.refsect1.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsect1.attrib; appears in:**

refsect1

### **%local.refsect1info.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.refsect1info.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsect1info.attrib; appears in:**

refsect1info

### **%local.refsect2.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.refsect2.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsect2.attrib; appears in:**

refsect2

### **%local.refsect2info.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refsect2info.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsect2info.attrib; appears in:**

`refsect2info`

**%local.refsect3.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refsect3.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsect3.attrib; appears in:**

`refsect3`

**%local.refsect3info.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refsect3info.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsect3info.attrib; appears in:**

`refsect3info`

**%local.refsection.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refsection.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsection.attrib; appears in:**

`refsection`

**%local.refsectioninfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refsectioninfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsectioninfo.attrib; appears in:**

`refsectioninfo`

**%local.refsynopsisdiv.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refsynopsisdiv.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsynopsisdiv.attrib; appears in:**

refsynopsisdiv

**%local.refsynopsisdivinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.refsynopsisdivinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.refsynopsisdivinfo.attrib; appears in:**

refsynopsisdivinfo

**%local.releaseinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.releaseinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.releaseinfo.attrib; appears in:**

releaseinfo

**%local.remark.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.remark.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.remark.attrib; appears in:**

remark

**%local.replaceable.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.replaceable.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.replaceable.attrib; appears in:**

replaceable

## **%local.returnvalue.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.returnvalue.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.returnvalue.attrib; appears in:**

returnvalue

## **%local.revdescription.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.revdescription.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.revdescription.attrib; appears in:**

revdescription

## **%local.revhistory.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.revhistory.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.revhistory.attrib; appears in:**

revhistory

## **%local.revision.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.revision.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.revision.attrib; appears in:**

revision

## **%local.revnumber.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.revnumber.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.revnumber.attrib; appears in:**

revnumber

### **%local.revremark.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.revremark.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.revremark.attrib; appears in:**

revremark

### **%local.sbr.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sbr.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sbr.attrib; appears in:**

sbr

### **%local.screen.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.screen.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.screen.attrib; appears in:**

screen

### **%local.screenco.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.screenco.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.screenco.attrib; appears in:**

screenco

### **%local.screeninfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.screeninfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.screeninfo.attrib; appears in:**

screeninfo

**%local.screenshot.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.screenshot.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.screenshot.attrib; appears in:**

screenshot

**%local.sect1.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sect1.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect1.attrib; appears in:**

sect1

**%local.sect1info.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sect1info.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect1info.attrib; appears in:**

sect1info

**%local.sect2.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sect2.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect2.attrib; appears in:**

sect2

**%local.sect2info.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sect2info.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect2info.attrib; appears in:**

sect2info

**%local.sect3.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sect3.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect3.attrib; appears in:**

sect3

**%local.sect3info.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sect3info.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect3info.attrib; appears in:**

sect3info

**%local.sect4.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sect4.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect4.attrib; appears in:**

sect4

**%local.sect4info.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sect4info.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect4info.attrib; appears in:**

sect4info

## **%local.sect5.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.sect5.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect5.attrib; appears in:**

sect5

## **%local.sect5info.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.sect5info.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sect5info.attrib; appears in:**

sect5info

## **%local.section.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.section.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.section.attrib; appears in:**

section

## **%local.sectioninfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.sectioninfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sectioninfo.attrib; appears in:**

sectioninfo

## **%local.seealsoie.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.seealsoie.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.seealsoie.attrib; appears in:**

seealsoie

### **%local.seeie.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.seeie.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.seeie.attrib; appears in:**

seeie

### **%local.seeseealso.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.seeseealso.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.seeseealso.attrib; appears in:**

see seealso

### **%local.seg.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.seg.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.seg.attrib; appears in:**

seg

### **%local.seglistitem.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.seglistitem.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.seglistitem.attrib; appears in:**

seglistitem

### **%local.segmentedlist.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.segmentedlist.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.segmentedlist.attrib; appears in:**

segmentedlist

**%local.segtitle.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.segtitle.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.segtitle.attrib; appears in:**

segtitle

**%local.seriesvolnums.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.seriesvolnums.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.seriesvolnums.attrib; appears in:**

seriesvolnums

**%local.set.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.set.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.set.attrib; appears in:**

set

**%local.setindexinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.setindexinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.setindexinfo.attrib; appears in:**

setindexinfo

**%local.setinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.setinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.setinfo.attrib; appears in:**

setinfo

**%local.sgmltag.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sgmltag.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sgmltag.attrib; appears in:**

sgmltag

**%local.shortaffil.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.shortaffil.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.shortaffil.attrib; appears in:**

shortaffil

**%local.shortcut.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.shortcut.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.shortcut.attrib; appears in:**

shortcut

**%local.sidebar.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.sidebar.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sidebar.attrib; appears in:**

sidebar

## **%local.sidebarinfo.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.sidebarinfo.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.sidebarinfo.attrib; appears in:**

sidebarinfo

## **%local.simpара.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.simpара.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.simpара.attrib; appears in:**

simpара

## **%local.simplelist.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.simplelist.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.simplelist.attrib; appears in:**

simplelist

## **%local.simplemsgentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.simplemsgentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.simplemsgentry.attrib; appears in:**

simplemsgentry

## **%local.simplesect.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.simplesect.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.simplesect.attrib; appears in:**



## **%local.structfield.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.structfield.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.structfield.attrib; appears in:**

structfield

## **%local.structname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.structname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.structname.attrib; appears in:**

structname

## **%local.subject.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.subject.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.subject.attrib; appears in:**

subject

## **%local.subjectset.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.subjectset.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.subjectset.attrib; appears in:**

subjectset

## **%local.subjectterm.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.subjectterm.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.subjectterm.attrib; appears in:**

subjectterm

### **%local.substeps.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.substeps.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.substeps.attrib; appears in:**

substeps

### **%local.subtitle.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.subtitle.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.subtitle.attrib; appears in:**

subtitle

### **%local.surname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.surname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.surname.attrib; appears in:**

surname

### **%local.symbol.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.symbol.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.symbol.attrib; appears in:**

symbol

### **%local.synopfragment.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.synopfragment.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.synopfragment.attrib; appears in:**

synopfragment

**%local.synopfragmentref.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.synopfragmentref.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.synopfragmentref.attrib; appears in:**

synopfragmentref

**%local.synopsis.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.synopsis.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.synopsis.attrib; appears in:**

synopsis

**%local.systemitem.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.systemitem.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.systemitem.attrib; appears in:**

systemitem

**%local.term.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.term.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.term.attrib; appears in:**

term

**%local.textdata.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.textdata.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.textdata.attrib; appears in:**

textdata

**%local.textobject.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.textobject.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.textobject.attrib; appears in:**

textobject

**%local.title.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.title.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.title.attrib; appears in:**

title

**%local.titleabbrev.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.titleabbrev.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.titleabbrev.attrib; appears in:**

titleabbrev

**%local.toc.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.toc.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.toc.attrib; appears in:**

toc

## **%local.tocback.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.tocback.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.tocback.attrib; appears in:**

tocback

## **%local.tocchap.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.tocchap.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.tocchap.attrib; appears in:**

tocchap

## **%local.tocentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.tocentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.tocentry.attrib; appears in:**

tocentry

## **%local.tocfront.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.tocfront.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.tocfront.attrib; appears in:**

tocfront

## **%local.toclevel1.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.toclevel1.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.toclevel1.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel1

## **%local.toclevel2.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.toclevel2.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.toclevel2.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel2

## **%local.toclevel3.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.toclevel3.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.toclevel3.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel3

## **%local.toclevel4.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.toclevel4.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.toclevel4.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel4

## **%local.toclevel5.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.toclevel5.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.toclevel5.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel5

## **%local.tocpart.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.tocpart.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.tocpart.attrib; appears in:**

tocpart

**%local.token.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.token.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.token.attrib; appears in:**

token

**%local.trademark.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.trademark.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.trademark.attrib; appears in:**

trademark

**%local.type.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.type.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.type.attrib; appears in:**

type

**%local.ulink.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.ulink.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.ulink.attrib; appears in:**

ulink

**%local.userinput.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.userinput.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.userinput.attrib; appears in:**

userinput

**%local.varargs.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.varargs.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.varargs.attrib; appears in:**

varargs

**%local.variablelist.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.variablelist.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.variablelist.attrib; appears in:**

variablelist

**%local.varlistentry.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.varlistentry.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.varlistentry.attrib; appears in:**

varlistentry

**%local.varname.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%local.varname.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.varname.attrib; appears in:**

varname

## **%local.videodata.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.videodata.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.videodata.attrib; appears in:**

videodata

## **%local.videoobject.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.videoobject.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.videoobject.attrib; appears in:**

videoobject

## **%local.void.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.void.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.void.attrib; appears in:**

void

## **%local.volumenum.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.volumenum.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.volumenum.attrib; appears in:**

volumenum

## **%local.wordasword.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.wordasword.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.wordasword.attrib; appears in:**

wordasword

### **%local.xref.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.xref.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.xref.attrib; appears in:**

xref

### **%local.year.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.year.attrib; appears in:**

**%local.year.attrib; appears in:**

year

# **%local.\*.class; Parameter Entities**

`%local.*.class;` Parameter Entities -- Allow class extension

## **Synopsis**

These parameter entities offer a place where you can easily add new elements to the DocBook classes.

## **Description**

The following sections identify all of the local class parameter entities in DocBook. Each of the entities is defined as empty.

### **%local.admon.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.appendix.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.article.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.base.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.book.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.chapter.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.compound.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.descobj.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.docinfo.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.formal.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.gen.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.genobj.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.index.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.info.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.informal.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.inlineobj.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.linespecific.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.link.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.list.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.method.synop.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.nav.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.ndxterm.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.notation.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.other.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.para.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refentry.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.section.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.synop.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.tech.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.xref.char.class;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

# **%local.\*.mix; Parameter Entities**

`%local.*.mix;` Parameter Entities -- Allow mixture extension

## **Synopsis**

These parameter entities offer a place where you can easily add new elements to the DocBook mixtures.

## **Description**

The following sections identify all of the local mixture parameter entities in DocBook. Each of the entities is defined as empty.

### **%local.admon.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.bibliocomponent.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.component.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.cptr.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.divcomponent.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.docinfo.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.example.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.figure.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.footnote.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.glossdef.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.highlights.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.indexdivcomponent.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.legalnotice.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.listpreamble.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.mediaobject.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.ndxterm.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.para.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.para.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.partcontent.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.person.ident.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.qandaset.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refclass.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refcomponent.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refinline.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.refname.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.revdescription.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.sidebar.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.smallcptr.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.tabentry.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

## **%local.textobject.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.title.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.ubiq.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

### **%local.word.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

# **%\* .mix; Parameter Entities**

%\* .mix; Parameter Entities -- Parameter entities which define the DocBook mixtures

## **Synopsis**

Mixtures are collections of classes that appear in content models. For example, the content model of `Example` element includes the `%example.mix;`. Not every element's content model is a single mixture, but elements in the same class tend to have the same mixture in their content model.

If you want to change the content model of some class of elements (lists or admonitions, perhaps), you generally want to change the definition of the appropriate mixture.

## **Description**

The following sections identify all of the mixture parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%admon.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
|constructorsynopsis
|destructorsynopsis
|methodsynopsis
|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote
|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
|informalequation
|informalexample
|informalfigure
|informaltable
|equation|example|figure|table|procedure|sidebar
|anchor|bridgehead|remark
|indexterm|beginpage
```

### **%admon.mix; appears in:**

**%admon.mix; appears in:**

caution	constraintdef	important
note	tip	warning

### **%bibliocomponent.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
abbrev|abstract|address|artpagenums|author
|authorgroup|authorinitials|bibliomisc|biblioset
|collab|confgroup|contractnum|contractsponsor
|copyright|corpauthor|corpname|date|edition
```

|editor|invpartnumber|isbn|issn|issuenum|orgname  
|biblioid|citebiblioid|bibliosource|bibliorelation|bibliocoverage  
|othercredit|pagenums|printhistory|productname  
|productnumber|pubdate|publisher|publishername  
|pubsnumber|releaseinfo|revhistory|seriesvolnums  
|subtitle|title|titleabbrev|volumenum|citetitle  
|personname|honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|othername|affiliation  
|authorblurb|contrib  
|indexterm

## **%bibliocomponent.mix; appears in:**

### **%bibliocomponent.mix; appears in:**

biblioentry                      bibliomixed                      bibliomset  
biblioset

## **%component.mix;**

### Parameter entity content:

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist  
|simplelist|variablelist    |caution|important|note|tip|warning  
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen  
|screenco|screenshot    |synopsis|cmdsynopsis|functsynopsis  
                          |classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis  
                          |constructorsynopsis  
                          |destructorsynopsis  
                          |methodsynopsis  
|formalpara|para|simpara    |address|blockquote  
                          |graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco  
                          |informalequation  
|informalexample  
                          |informalfigure  
                          |informaltable  
|equation|example|figure|table    |msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset  
                          |productionset|constraintdef  
  
|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights  
  |abstract|authorblurb|epigraph  
  
|indexterm                      |beginpage

## **%component.mix; appears in:**

### **%component.mix; appears in:**

bibliodiv                      bibliography                      blockquote  
callout                      glossary                      glossdiv  
index                      listitem                      msgexplan  
msgtext                      procedure                      setindex  
step

## **%cptr.char.mix;**

### Parameter entity content:

```
#PCDATA
|link|olink|ulink  |action|application
                    |classname|methodname|interfacename|exceptionname
                    |ooclass|oointerface|ooexception
                    |command|computeroutput
|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|errortype|errortext|filename
|function|guibutton|guicon|guilabel|guimenu|guimenuitem
|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap
|keycode|keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel
|menuchoice|mousebutton|option|optional|parameter
|prompt|property|replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield
|structname|symbol|systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname
                    |nonterminal

|anchor
|remark|subscript|superscript  |inlinegraphic|inlinemediobject
|indexterm                |beginpage
```

### **%cptr.char.mix; appears in:**

#### **%cptr.char.mix; appears in:**

action	classsynopsisinfo	command
computeroutput	database	filename
funcparams	funcsynopsisinfo	function
hardware	interfacename	keycap
literal	option	optional
parameter	property	systemitem
userinput		

### **%divcomponent.mix;**

#### Parameter entity content:

```
calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist  |caution|important|note|tip|warning
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot  |synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
                    |classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
                    |constructorsynopsis
                    |destructorsynopsis
                    |methodsynopsis
|formalpara|para|simpara  |address|blockquote
                    |graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
                    |informalequation
|informalexample
                    |informalfigure
                    |informaltable
|equation|example|figure|table  |msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset
                    |productionset|constraintdef

|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights
|abstract|authorblurb|epigraph

|indexterm                |beginpage
```

## **%divcomponent.mix; appears in:**

### **%divcomponent.mix; appears in:**

sect1	sect2	sect3
sect4	sect5	section
simplesect		

## **%docinfo.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
#PCDATA
|link|olink|ulink
  |emphasis|trademark
  |replaceable
|remark|subscript|superscript |inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject
|indexterm
```

## **%docinfo.char.mix; appears in:**

### **%docinfo.char.mix; appears in:**

ackno	artpagenums	authorinitials
bibliocoverage	biblioid	bibliorelation
bibliosource	citebiblioid	city
collabname	confdates	confnum
confsponsor	conftitle	contractnum
contractsponsor	contrib	corpauthor
corpname	country	date
edition	email	fax
firstname	holder	honorific
invpartnumber	isbn	issn
issuenum	jobtitle	lineage
modespec	orgdiv	orgname
otheraddr	othername	pagenums
phone	pob	postcode
productnumber	pubdate	publishername
pubsnumber	refmiscinfo	releaseinfo
revnumber	revremark	seriesvolnums
shortaffil	state	street
surname	volumenum	year

## **%example.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
|constructorsynopsis
|destructorsynopsis
|methodsynopsis
|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote
|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
|informalequation
|informalexample
|informalfigure
|informaltable
|indexterm|beginpage

```

### **%example.mix; appears in:**

#### **%example.mix; appears in:**

```
example                informalexample
```

### **%figure.mix;**

#### Parameter entity content:

```

literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
|constructorsynopsis
|destructorsynopsis
|methodsynopsis
|address|blockquote
|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
|informalequation
|informalexample
|informalfigure
|informaltable
|indexterm|beginpage

```

### **%figure.mix; appears in:**

#### **%figure.mix; appears in:**

```
figure                informalfigure
```

### **%footnote.mix;**

#### Parameter entity content:

```

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
|constructorsynopsis
|destructorsynopsis
|methodsynopsis
|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote

```

```
        |graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
        |informalequation
|informalexample
        |informalfigure
        |informaltable
```

### **%footnote.mix; appears in:**

**%footnote.mix; appears in:**

footnote

### **%glossdef.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot |synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
        |classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
        |constructorsynopsis
        |destructorsynopsis
        |methodsynopsis
|formalpara|para|simpara |address|blockquote
        |graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
        |informalequation
|informalexample
        |informalfigure
        |informaltable
|equation|example|figure|table
|remark
|indexterm |beginpage
```

### **%glossdef.mix; appears in:**

**%glossdef.mix; appears in:**

glossdef

### **%highlights.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist |caution|important|note|tip|warning
|formalpara|para|simpara
|indexterm
```

### **%highlights.mix; appears in:**

**%highlights.mix; appears in:**

highlights

### **%indexdivcomponent.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```

itemizedlist|orderedlist|variablelist|simplelist
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
|constructorsynopsis
|destructorsynopsis
|methodsynopsis
|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote
|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
|informalequation
|informalexample
|informalfigure
|informaltable
|anchor|remark
|link|olink|ulink
|beginpage

```

### **%indexdivcomponent.mix; appears in:**

**%indexdivcomponent.mix; appears in:**

indexdiv

### **%legalnotice.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot
|formalpara|para|simpara|blockquote
|indexterm|beginpage

```

### **%legalnotice.mix; appears in:**

**%legalnotice.mix; appears in:**

dedication legalnotice

### **%listpreamble.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```

caution|important|note|tip|warning
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
|constructorsynopsis
|destructorsynopsis
|methodsynopsis
|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote
|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
|informalequation
|informalexample
|informalfigure
|informaltable
|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights
|abstract|authorblurb|epigraph

```

|indexterm |beginpage

### **%listpreamble.mix; appears in:**

#### **%listpreamble.mix; appears in:**

itemizedlist orderedlist variablelist

### **%mediaobject.mix;**

#### Parameter entity content:

videoobject|audioobject|imageobject|textobject

### **%mediaobject.mix; appears in:**

#### **%mediaobject.mix; appears in:**

inlinemediaobject mediaobject

### **%ndxterm.char.mix;**

#### Parameter entity content:

#PCDATA

|footnoteref|xref |abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|citetitle|emphasis  
|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|phrase  
|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname  
|link|olink|ulink |action|application  
|classname|methodname|interfacename|exceptionname  
|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception  
|command|computeroutput  
|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|errortype|errortext|filename  
|function|guibutton|guicon|guilabel|guimenu|guimenuitem  
|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap  
|keycode|keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel  
|menuchoice|mousebutton|option|optional|parameter  
|prompt|property|replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield  
|structname|symbol|systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname  
|nonterminal  
  
|anchor |author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit  
|productname|productnumber|revhistory  
  
|remark|subscript|superscript |inlinenonterminal|inlinemediaobject

### **%ndxterm.char.mix; appears in:**

#### **%ndxterm.char.mix; appears in:**

primary	primaryie	secondary
secondaryie	see	seealso
seealsoie	seeie	tertiary
tertiaryie		

## %para.char.mix;

Parameter entity content:

```
#PCDATA
|footnoteref|xref|abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|citetitle|emphasis
|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|phrase
|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname
|link|olink|ulink|action|application
|classname|methodname|interfacename|exceptionname
|ooclass|oointerface|ooexception
|command|computeroutput
|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|errortype|errortext|filename
|function|guibutton|guiicon|guilabel|guimenu|guimenuitem
|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap
|keycode|keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel
|menuchoice|mousebutton|option|optional|parameter
|prompt|property|replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield
|structname|symbol|systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname
|nonterminal

|anchor|author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit
|productname|productnumber|revhistory

|remark|subscript|superscript|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation
|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis
|constructorsynopsis
|destructorsynopsis
|methodsynopsis
|indexterm|beginpage
```

## %para.char.mix; appears in:

### %para.char.mix; appears in:

application	attribution	bibliomisc
citation	citetitle	emphasis
foreignphrase	glosssee	glossseealso
glossterm	lineannotation	link
literallayout	lotentry	member
msgaud	olink	para
phrase	productname	programlisting
quote	refentrytitle	remark
screen	screeninfo	seg
simpara	synopsis	term
tocback	tocentry	tocfront
ulink		

## %para.mix;

Parameter entity content:

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist  
|simplelist|variablelist |caution|important|note|tip|warning  
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen  
|screenco|screenshot  
|address|blockquote  
|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco  
|informalequation  
|informalexample  
|informalfigure  
|informaltable  
|equation|example|figure|table

### **%para.mix; appears in:**

**%para.mix; appears in:**

para

### **%partcontent.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

appendix|chapter|toc|lot|index|glossary|bibliography  
|article  
|preface|refentry|reference

### **%partcontent.mix; appears in:**

**%partcontent.mix; appears in:**

part

### **%person.ident.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

honorific|firstname|surname|lineage|othername|affiliation  
|authorblurb|contrib

### **%person.ident.mix; appears in:**

**%person.ident.mix; appears in:**

address author editor

othercredit

### **%qandaset.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist  
|simplelist|variablelist |caution|important|note|tip|warning  
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen  
|screenco|screenshot |synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis  
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis  
|constructorsynopsis  
|destructorsynopsis  
|methodsynopsis



### **%refcomponent.mix; appears in:**

refsect1	refsect2	refsect3
refsection	refsynopsisdiv	

### **%refinline.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
#PCDATA
|footnoteref|xref |abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|citetitle|emphasis
|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|phrase
|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname
|link|olink|ulink |action|application
|classname|methodname|interfacename|exceptionname
|oclass|oointerface|ooexception
|command|computeroutput
|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|errortype|errortext|filename
|function|guibutton|guicon|guilabel|guimenu|guimenuitem
|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap
|keycode|keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel
|menuchoice|mousebutton|option|optional|parameter
|prompt|property|replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield
|structname|symbol|systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname
|nonterminal

|anchor |author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit
|productname|productnumber|revhistory

|remark|subscript|superscript
|indexterm |beginpage
```

### **%refinline.char.mix; appears in:**

**%refinline.char.mix; appears in:**

refpurpose

### **%refname.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
#PCDATA
|action|application
|classname|methodname|interfacename|exceptionname
|oclass|oointerface|ooexception
|command|computeroutput
|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|errortype|errortext|filename
|function|guibutton|guicon|guilabel|guimenu|guimenuitem
|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap
|keycode|keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel
|menuchoice|mousebutton|option|optional|parameter
|prompt|property|replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield
|structname|symbol|systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname
|nonterminal
```

### **%refname.char.mix; appears in:**

**%refname.char.mix; appears in:**

refdescriptor                      refname

**%revdescription.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist  
|simplelist|variablelist    |caution|important|note|tip|warning  
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen  
|screenco|screenshot    |synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis  
                          |classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis  
                          |constructorsynopsis  
                          |destructorsynopsis  
                          |methodsynopsis  
|formalpara|para|simpara    |address|blockquote  
                          |graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco  
                          |informalequation  
|informalexample  
                          |informalfigure  
                          |informaltable  
|equation|example|figure|table    |procedure  
|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights  
  
|indexterm

**%revdescription.mix; appears in:**

**%revdescription.mix; appears in:**

revdescription

**%sidebar.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist  
|simplelist|variablelist    |caution|important|note|tip|warning  
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen  
|screenco|screenshot    |synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis  
                          |classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis  
                          |constructorsynopsis  
                          |destructorsynopsis  
                          |methodsynopsis  
|formalpara|para|simpara    |address|blockquote  
                          |graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco  
                          |informalequation  
|informalexample  
                          |informalfigure  
                          |informaltable  
|equation|example|figure|table    |procedure  
|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights  
  
|indexterm                      |beginpage

**%sidebar.mix; appears in:**

**%sidebar.mix; appears in:**

sidebar

## **%smallcptr.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
#PCDATA
|replaceable
|inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject
|indexterm          |beginpage
```

### **%smallcptr.char.mix; appears in:**

#### **%smallcptr.char.mix; appears in:**

accel	classname	constant
envar	errorcode	errorname
errortext	errortype	exceptionname
guibutton	guiicon	guilabel
guimenu	guimenuitem	guisubmenu
initializer	interface	keycode
keysym	markup	medialabel
methodname	modifier	mousebutton
msglevel	msgorig	prompt
returnvalue	sgmltag	structfield
structname	symbol	token
type	varname	

## **%textobject.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist
|simplelist|variablelist  |caution|important|note|tip|warning
|literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen
|screenco|screenshot
|formalpara|para|simpara  |blockquote
```

### **%textobject.mix; appears in:**

#### **%textobject.mix; appears in:**

caption	colophon	textobject
---------	----------	------------

## **%title.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```
#PCDATA
|footnoteref|xref  |abbrev|acronym|citation|citerefentry|citetitle|emphasis
|firstterm|foreignphrase|glossterm|footnote|phrase
|quote|trademark|wordasword|personname
```

```

|link|olink|ulink  |action|application
                    |classname|methodname|interfacename|exceptionname
                    |ooclass|oointerface|ooexception
                    |command|computeroutput
|database|email|envar|errorcode|errorname|errortype|errortext|filename
|function|guibutton|guicon|guilabel|guimenu|guimenuitem
|guisubmenu|hardware|interface|keycap
|keycode|keycombo|keysym|literal|constant|markup|medialabel
|menuchoice|mousebutton|option|optional|parameter
|prompt|property|replaceable|returnvalue|sgmltag|structfield
|structname|symbol|systemitem|token|type|userinput|varname
                    |nonterminal

|anchor  |author|authorinitials|corpauthor|modespec|othercredit
|productname|productnumber|revhistory

|remark|subscript|superscript  |inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject|inlineequation
|indexterm

```

**%title.char.mix; appears in:**

**%title.char.mix; appears in:**

bridgehead	segtitle	subtitle
title	titleabbrev	

**%ubiq.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

The replacement text for this entity is empty.

**%word.char.mix;**

Parameter entity content:

```

#PCDATA
  |acronym|emphasis|trademark
|link|olink|ulink
|anchor
|remark|subscript|superscript  |inlinegraphic|inlinemediaobject
|indexterm          |beginpage

```

**%word.char.mix; appears in:**

**%word.char.mix; appears in:**

abbrev	acronym	firstterm
label	manvolnum	wordasword

# **%\* .module; Parameter Entities**

`%* .module; Parameter Entities -- Control element definitions`

## **Synopsis**

The module parameter entities provide marked sections around a single pair of element and attribute declarations. You can selectively include or remove elements from DocBook by changing these parameter entities.

## **Description**

The following sections identify all of the module parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%ISOamsa.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ISOamsb.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ISOamsc.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ISOamsn.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ISOamso.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ISOamsr.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISObox.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOcyr1.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOcyr2.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOdia.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOgrk1.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOgrk2.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOgrk3.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOgrk4.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOlat1.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOlat2.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOnum.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOpub.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ISOftech.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%abbrev.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%abstract.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%accel.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%ackno.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%acronym.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%action.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%address.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%admon.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%affiliation.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%alt.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%anchor.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%answer.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%appendix.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%appendixinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%application.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%area.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%areaset.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%areaspec.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%arg.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%article.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%articleinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%artpagenums.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%attribution.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%audiodata.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%audioobject.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%author.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorblurb.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorgroup.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%authorinitials.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%beginpage.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliocoverage.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliodiv.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%biblioentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliography.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliographyinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%biblioid.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliomisc.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliomixed.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliomset.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliorelation.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%biblioset.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bibliosource.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%blockinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%blockquote.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%book.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bookinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%bridgehead.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%callout.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%calloutlist.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%cals.table.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%caption.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%chapter.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%chapterinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%citation.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%citebiblioid.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%citerefentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%citetitle.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%city.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classsynopsis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%classsynopsisinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%cmdsynopsis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%co.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%collab.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%collabname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%colophon.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%command.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%computeroutput.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confdates.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confgroup.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confnum.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%confsponsor.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%conftitle.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%constant.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%constructorsynopsis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contractnum.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contractsponsor.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%contrib.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%copyright.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%coref.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%corpauthor.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%corpname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%country.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%database.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%date.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%dedication.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%destructorsynopsis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%docbook;**

Parameter entity content:

**Public identifier:** -//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.2//EN

**System identifier:** <http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.2/docbookx.dtd>

### **%edition.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%editor.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%email.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%emphasis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%envar.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%epigraph.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%equation.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errorcode.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errorname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%errortext.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%error.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%example.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%exceptionname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%exchange.table.module;**

Parameter entity content:

IGNORE

**%fax.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%fieldsynopsis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%figure.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%filename.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%firstname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%firstterm.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%footnote.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%footnoteref.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%foreignphrase.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%formalpara.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcdef.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcparams.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcprototype.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcsynopsis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%funcsynopsisinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%function.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossary.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossaryinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossdef.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossdiv.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glosslist.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossee.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glosseealso.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%glossterm.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%graphic.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%graphicco.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%group.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guibutton.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%guiicon.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%guilabel.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%guimenu.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%guimenuitem.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%guisubmenu.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%hardware.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%highlights.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%holder.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%honorific.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%imagedata.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%imageobject.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%imageobjectco.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexdiv.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexes.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%indexterm.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalequation.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalexample.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informalfigure.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%informaltable.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%initializer.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%inlineequation.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%inlinegraphic.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%inlinemediaobject.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%interface.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%interfacename.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%intermod.redecl.module;**

Parameter entity content:

IGNORE

## **%invpartnumber.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%isbn.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%issn.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%issuenum.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%itemizedlist.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%itermset.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%jobtitle.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%keycap.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%keycode.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%keycombo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%keySYM.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%keyword.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%keywordset.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%label.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%legalnotice.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%lineage.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%lineannotation.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%link.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%listitem.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%literal.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%literallayout.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%lot.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%lotentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%manvolnum.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%markup.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%medialabel.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%mediaobject.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%mediaobjectco.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%member.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%menuchoice.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%methodname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%methodparam.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%methodsynopsis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%modespec.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%modifier.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%mousebutton.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msg.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgaud.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msgexplan.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%msginfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%msglevel.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%msgmain.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%msgorig.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%msgrel.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%msgset.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%msgsub.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%msgtext.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%objectinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%olink.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%ooclass.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%ooexception.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%oointerface.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%option.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%optional.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orderedlist.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orgdiv.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%orgname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%otheraddr.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%othercredit.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%othername.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%pagenums.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%para.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%paramdef.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%parameter.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%part.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%partinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%partintro.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%person.ident.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%personblurb.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%personname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%phone.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%phrase.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pob.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%postcode.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%preface.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%prefaceinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%primsecter.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%primsecterie.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%printhistory.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%procedure.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%productname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%productnumber.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%programlisting.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%programlistingco.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%prompt.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%property.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pubdate.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%publisher.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%publishername.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%pubsnumber.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%qandadiv.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%qandaentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%qandaset.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%question.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%quote.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refclass.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refdescriptor.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refentryinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refentrytitle.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%reference.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%referenceinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refmeta.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refmiscinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refnamediv.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refpurpose.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsect1.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsect1info.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsect2.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsect2info.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsect3.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsect3info.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsection.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsectioninfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%refsynopsisdiv.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%refsynopsisdivinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%releaseinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%remark.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%replaceable.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%returnvalue.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revdescription.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revhistory.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revision.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%revnumber.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%revremark.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sbr.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%screen.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%screenco.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%screeninfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%screenshot.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sect1.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sect2.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect3.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect4.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sect5.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%section.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%sectioninfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%seealsoie.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%seeie.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%seesealso.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%seg.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seglitem.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%segmentedlist.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%segtitle.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%seriesvolnums.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%set.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%setindexinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%setinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%sgmltag.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%shortaffil.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%shortcut.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sidebar.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sidebarinfo.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%simpara.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%simplelist.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%simplemsgentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%simplesect.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%sssript.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%state.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%step.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%street.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%structfield.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%structname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%subject.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%subjectset.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%subjectterm.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%substeps.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%subtitle.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%surname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%symbol.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%synopfragment.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%synopfragmentref.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%synopsis.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%systemitem.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%table.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%term.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%textdata.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%textobject.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%title.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%titleabbrev.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toc.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%tocback.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%tocchap.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%tocentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%tocfront.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel1.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel2.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel3.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel4.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%toclevel5.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%tocpart.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

**%token.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%trademark.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%type.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%ulink.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%userinput.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%varargs.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%variablelist.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%varlistentry.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

### **%varname.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%videodata.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%videoobject.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%void.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%volumenum.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%wordasword.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%xref.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

## **%year.module;**

Parameter entity content:

INCLUDE

# **%\*.role.attrib; Parameter Entities**

%\*.role.attrib; Parameter Entities -- Parameter entities which control definition of role attributes

## **Synopsis**

Role is a string used to classify or subclassify an element.

The declaration for the role attribute is parameterized in such a way that every element's role can be independently redefined. This provides an easy mechanism for modifying the legal values of the role attribute for particular elements.

## **Description**

The following sections identify all of the role parameter entities in DocBook.

### **%abbrev.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

#### **%abbrev.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%abbrev.role.attrib; appears in:**

abbrev

### **%abstract.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

#### **%abstract.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%abstract.role.attrib; appears in:**

abstract

### **%accel.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Default</b>
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

#### **%accel.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%accel.role.attrib; appears in:**

accel

## **%ackno.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%ackno.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%ackno.role.attrib; appears in:**

ackno

## **%acronym.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%acronym.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%acronym.role.attrib; appears in:**

acronym

## **%action.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%action.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%action.role.attrib; appears in:**

action

## **%address.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%address.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%address.role.attrib; appears in:**

address

## **%admon.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%admon.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%admon.role.attrib; appears in:**

caution	important	note
tip	warning	

**%affiliation.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%affiliation.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%affiliation.role.attrib; appears in:**

affiliation

**%alt.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%alt.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%alt.role.attrib; appears in:**

alt

**%anchor.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%anchor.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%anchor.role.attrib; appears in:**

anchor

**%answer.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
------	------	---------

role	CDATA	<i>None</i>
------	-------	-------------

**%answer.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%answer.role.attrib; appears in:**

answer

**%appendix.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%appendix.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%appendix.role.attrib; appears in:**

appendix

**%appendixinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%appendixinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%appendixinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

appendixinfo

**%application.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%application.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%application.role.attrib; appears in:**

application

**%area.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%area.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%area.role.attrib;** appears in:

area

## **%areaset.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%areaset.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%areaset.role.attrib;** appears in:

areaset

## **%areaspec.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%areaspec.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%areaspec.role.attrib;** appears in:

areaspec

## **%arg.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%arg.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%arg.role.attrib;** appears in:

arg

## **%article.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%article.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%article.role.attrib;** appears in:

article

## **%articleinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%articleinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%articleinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

articleinfo

## **%artpagenums.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%artpagenums.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%artpagenums.role.attrib; appears in:**

artpagenums

## **%attribution.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%attribution.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%attribution.role.attrib; appears in:**

attribution

## **%audiodata.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%audiodata.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%audiodata.role.attrib; appears in:**

audiodata

## **%audioobject.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%audioobject.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%audioobject.role.attrib; appears in:**

audioobject

**%author.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%author.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%author.role.attrib; appears in:**

author

**%authorblurb.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%authorblurb.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%authorblurb.role.attrib; appears in:**

authorblurb

**%authorgroup.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%authorgroup.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%authorgroup.role.attrib; appears in:**

authorgroup

**%authorinitials.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%authorinitials.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%authorinitials.role.attrib; appears in:**

authorinitials

## **%beginpage.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%beginpage.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%beginpage.role.attrib; appears in:**

beginpage

## **%bibliocoverage.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliocoverage.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliocoverage.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliocoverage

## **%bibliodiv.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliodiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliodiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliodiv

## **%biblioentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%biblioentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%biblioentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

biblioentry

## **%bibliography.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliography.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliography.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliography

## **%bibliographyinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliographyinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliographyinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliographyinfo

## **%biblioid.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%biblioid.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%biblioid.role.attrib; appears in:**

biblioid

## **%bibliomisc.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliomisc.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliomisc.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliomisc

## **%bibliomixed.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliomixed.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliomixed.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliomixed

**%bibliomset.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliomset.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliomset.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliomset

**%bibliorelation.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliorelation.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliorelation.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliorelation

**%biblioset.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%biblioset.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%biblioset.role.attrib; appears in:**

biblioset

**%bibliosource.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bibliosome.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bibliosome.role.attrib; appears in:**

bibliosome

## **%blockinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%blockinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%blockinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

blockinfo

## **%blockquote.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%blockquote.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%blockquote.role.attrib; appears in:**

blockquote

## **%book.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%book.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%book.role.attrib; appears in:**

book

## **%bookinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bookinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%bookinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

bookinfo

## **%bridgehead.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%bridgehead.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%bridgehead.role.attrib;** appears in:

bridgehead

## **%callout.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%callout.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%callout.role.attrib;** appears in:

callout

## **%calloutlist.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%calloutlist.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%calloutlist.role.attrib;** appears in:

calloutlist

## **%caption.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%caption.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%caption.role.attrib;** appears in:

caption

## **%chapter.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%chapter.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%chapter.role.attrib; appears in:**

chapter

**%chapterinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%chapterinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%chapterinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

chapterinfo

**%citation.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%citation.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%citation.role.attrib; appears in:**

citation

**%citebiblioid.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%citebiblioid.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%citebiblioid.role.attrib; appears in:**

citebiblioid

**%citerefentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%citerefentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%citerefentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

citerefentry

## **%citetitle.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%citetitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%citetitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

citetitle

## **%city.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%city.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%city.role.attrib; appears in:**

city

## **%classname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%classname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%classname.role.attrib; appears in:**

classname

## **%classsynopsis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%classsynopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%classsynopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

classsynopsis

## **%classsynopsisinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%classsynopsisinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%classsynopsisinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

classsynopsisinfo

## **%cmdsynopsis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%cmdsynopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%cmdsynopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

cmdsynopsis

## **%co.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%co.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%co.role.attrib; appears in:**

co

## **%collab.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%collab.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%collab.role.attrib; appears in:**

collab

## **%collabname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%collabname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%collabname.role.attrib; appears in:**

collabname

**%colophon.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%colophon.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%colophon.role.attrib; appears in:**

colophon

**%command.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%command.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%command.role.attrib; appears in:**

command

**%computeroutput.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%computeroutput.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%computeroutput.role.attrib; appears in:**

computeroutput

**%confdates.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%confdates.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%confdates.role.attrib; appears in:**

confdates

## **%confgroup.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%confgroup.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%confgroup.role.attrib; appears in:**

confgroup

## **%confnum.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%confnum.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%confnum.role.attrib; appears in:**

confnum

## **%confsponsor.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%confsponsor.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%confsponsor.role.attrib; appears in:**

confsponsor

## **%conftitle.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%conftitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%conftitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

conftitle

## **%constant.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%constant.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%constant.role.attrib;** appears in:

constant

## **%constructorsynopsis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%constructorsynopsis.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%constructorsynopsis.role.attrib;** appears in:

constructorsynopsis

## **%contractnum.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%contractnum.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%contractnum.role.attrib;** appears in:

contractnum

## **%contractsponsor.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%contractsponsor.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%contractsponsor.role.attrib;** appears in:

contractsponsor

## **%contrib.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%contrib.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%contrib.role.attrib; appears in:**

contrib

**%copyright.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%copyright.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%copyright.role.attrib; appears in:**

copyright

**%coref.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%coref.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%coref.role.attrib; appears in:**

coref

**%corpauthor.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%corpauthor.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%corpauthor.role.attrib; appears in:**

corpauthor

**%corpname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%corpname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%corpname.role.attrib; appears in:**

corpname

## **%country.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%country.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%country.role.attrib; appears in:**

country

## **%database.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%database.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%database.role.attrib; appears in:**

database

## **%date.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%date.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%date.role.attrib; appears in:**

date

## **%dedication.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%dedication.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%dedication.role.attrib; appears in:**

dedication

## **%destructorsynopsis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%destructorsynopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%destructorsynopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

destructorsynopsis

## **%edition.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%edition.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%edition.role.attrib; appears in:**

edition

## **%editor.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%editor.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%editor.role.attrib; appears in:**

editor

## **%email.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%email.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%email.role.attrib; appears in:**

email

## **%emphasis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%emphasis.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%emphasis.role.attrib; appears in:**

emphasis

**%envar.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%envar.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%envar.role.attrib; appears in:**

envar

**%epigraph.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%epigraph.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%epigraph.role.attrib; appears in:**

epigraph

**%equation.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%equation.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%equation.role.attrib; appears in:**

equation

**%errorcode.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%errorcode.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%errorcode.role.attrib; appears in:**

errorcode

**%errorname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%errorname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%errorname.role.attrib; appears in:**

errorname

**%errortext.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%errortext.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%errortext.role.attrib; appears in:**

errortext

**%errortype.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%errortype.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%errortype.role.attrib; appears in:**

errortype

**%example.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%example.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%example.role.attrib; appears in:**

example

## **%exceptionname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%exceptionname.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%exceptionname.role.attrib;** appears in:

exceptionname

## **%fax.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%fax.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%fax.role.attrib;** appears in:

fax

## **%fieldsynopsis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%fieldsynopsis.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%fieldsynopsis.role.attrib;** appears in:

fieldsynopsis

## **%figure.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%figure.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%figure.role.attrib;** appears in:

figure

## **%filename.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%filename.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%filename.role.attrib; appears in:**

filename

**%firstname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%firstname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%firstname.role.attrib; appears in:**

firstname

**%firstterm.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%firstterm.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%firstterm.role.attrib; appears in:**

firstterm

**%footnote.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%footnote.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%footnote.role.attrib; appears in:**

footnote

**%footnoteref.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%footnoteref.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%footnoteref.role.attrib; appears in:**

footnoteref

**%foreignphrase.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%foreignphrase.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%foreignphrase.role.attrib; appears in:**

foreignphrase

**%formalpara.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%formalpara.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%formalpara.role.attrib; appears in:**

formalpara

**%funcdef.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%funcdef.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%funcdef.role.attrib; appears in:**

funcdef

**%funcparams.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%funcparams.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%funcparams.role.attrib; appears in:**

funcparams

## **%funcprototype.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%funcprototype.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%funcprototype.role.attrib;** appears in:

funcprototype

## **%funcsynopsis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%funcsynopsis.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%funcsynopsis.role.attrib;** appears in:

funcsynopsis

## **%funcsynopsisinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%funcsynopsisinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%funcsynopsisinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

funcsynopsisinfo

## **%function.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%function.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%function.role.attrib;** appears in:

function

## **%glossary.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glossary.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%glossary.role.attrib;** appears in:

glossary

**%glossaryinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glossaryinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%glossaryinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

glossaryinfo

**%glossdef.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glossdef.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%glossdef.role.attrib;** appears in:

glossdef

**%glossdiv.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glossdiv.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%glossdiv.role.attrib;** appears in:

glossdiv

**%glossentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glossentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%glossentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

glossentry

## **%glosslist.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glosslist.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%glosslist.role.attrib; appears in:**

glosslist

## **%glosssee.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glosssee.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%glosssee.role.attrib; appears in:**

glosssee

## **%glossseealso.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glossseealso.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%glossseealso.role.attrib; appears in:**

glossseealso

## **%glossterm.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%glossterm.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%glossterm.role.attrib; appears in:**

glossterm

## **%graphic.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%graphic.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%graphic.role.attrib; appears in:**

graphic

## **%graphicco.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%graphicco.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%graphicco.role.attrib; appears in:**

graphicco

## **%group.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%group.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%group.role.attrib; appears in:**

group

## **%guibutton.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%guibutton.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%guibutton.role.attrib; appears in:**

guibutton

## **%guiicon.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%guiicon.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%guiicon.role.attrib; appears in:**

guiicon

**%guilabel.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%guilabel.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%guilabel.role.attrib; appears in:**

guilabel

**%guimenu.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%guimenu.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%guimenu.role.attrib; appears in:**

guimenu

**%guimenuitem.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%guimenuitem.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%guimenuitem.role.attrib; appears in:**

guimenuitem

**%guisubmenu.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%guisubmenu.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%guisubmenu.role.attrib; appears in:**

guisubmenu

## **%hardware.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%hardware.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%hardware.role.attrib; appears in:**

hardware

## **%highlights.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%highlights.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%highlights.role.attrib; appears in:**

highlights

## **%holder.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%holder.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%holder.role.attrib; appears in:**

holder

## **%honorific.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%honorific.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%honorific.role.attrib; appears in:**

honorific

## **%imagedata.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%imagedata.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%imagedata.role.attrib; appears in:**

imagedata

## **%imageobject.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%imageobject.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%imageobject.role.attrib; appears in:**

imageobject

## **%imageobjectco.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%imageobjectco.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%imageobjectco.role.attrib; appears in:**

imageobjectco

## **%indexdiv.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%indexdiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%indexdiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

indexdiv

## **%indexentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:



**%informalequation.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%informalequation.role.attrib; appears in:**

informalequation

**%informalexample.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%informalexample.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%informalexample.role.attrib; appears in:**

informalexample

**%informalfigure.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%informalfigure.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%informalfigure.role.attrib; appears in:**

informalfigure

**%initializer.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%initializer.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%initializer.role.attrib; appears in:**

initializer

**%inlineequation.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%inlineequation.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%inlineequation.role.attrib; appears in:**

inlineequation

## **%inlinegraphic.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%inlinegraphic.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%inlinegraphic.role.attrib;** appears in:

inlinegraphic

## **%inlinemediaobject.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%inlinemediaobject.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%inlinemediaobject.role.attrib;** appears in:

inlinemediaobject

## **%interface.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%interface.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%interface.role.attrib;** appears in:

interface

## **%interfacename.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%interfacename.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%interfacename.role.attrib;** appears in:

interfacename

## **%invpartnumber.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%invpartnumber.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%invpartnumber.role.attrib;** appears in:

invpartnumber

**%isbn.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%isbn.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%isbn.role.attrib;** appears in:

isbn

**%issn.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%issn.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%issn.role.attrib;** appears in:

issn

**%issuenum.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%issuenum.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%issuenum.role.attrib;** appears in:

issuenum

**%itemizedlist.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%itemizedlist.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%itemizedlist.role.attrib; appears in:**

itemizedlist

## **%itermset.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%itermset.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%itermset.role.attrib; appears in:**

itermset

## **%jobtitle.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%jobtitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%jobtitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

jobtitle

## **%keycap.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%keycap.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%keycap.role.attrib; appears in:**

keycap

## **%keycode.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%keycode.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%keycode.role.attrib; appears in:**

keycode

## **%keycombo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%keycombo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%keycombo.role.attrib; appears in:**

keycombo

## **%keysysm.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%keysysm.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%keysysm.role.attrib; appears in:**

keysym

## **%keyword.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%keyword.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%keyword.role.attrib; appears in:**

keyword

## **%keywordset.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%keywordset.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%keywordset.role.attrib; appears in:**

keywordset

## **%label.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%label.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%label.role.attrib; appears in:**

label

**%legalnotice.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%legalnotice.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%legalnotice.role.attrib; appears in:**

legalnotice

**%lineage.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%lineage.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%lineage.role.attrib; appears in:**

lineage

**%lineannotation.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%lineannotation.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%lineannotation.role.attrib; appears in:**

lineannotation

**%link.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%link.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%link.role.attrib; appears in:**

link

### **%listitem.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%listitem.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%listitem.role.attrib; appears in:**

listitem

### **%literal.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%literal.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%literal.role.attrib; appears in:**

literal

### **%literallayout.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%literallayout.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%literallayout.role.attrib; appears in:**

literallayout

### **%lot.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%lot.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%lot.role.attrib; appears in:**

lot

## **%lotentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%lotentry.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%lotentry.role.attrib;** appears in:

lotentry

## **%markup.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%markup.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%markup.role.attrib;** appears in:

markup

## **%medialabel.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%medialabel.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%medialabel.role.attrib;** appears in:

medialabel

## **%mediaobject.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%mediaobject.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%mediaobject.role.attrib;** appears in:

mediaobject

## **%mediaobjectco.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%mediaobjectco.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%mediaobjectco.role.attrib; appears in:**

mediaobjectco

**%member.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%member.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%member.role.attrib; appears in:**

member

**%menuchoice.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%menuchoice.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%menuchoice.role.attrib; appears in:**

menuchoice

**%methodname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%methodname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%methodname.role.attrib; appears in:**

methodname

**%methodparam.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%methodparam.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%methodparam.role.attrib; appears in:**

methodparam

**%methodsynopsis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%methodsynopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%methodsynopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

methodsynopsis

**%modespec.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%modespec.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%modespec.role.attrib; appears in:**

modespec

**%modifier.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%modifier.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%modifier.role.attrib; appears in:**

modifier

**%mousebutton.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%mousebutton.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%mousebutton.role.attrib; appears in:**

mousebutton

## **%msg.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msg.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%msg.role.attrib;** appears in:

msg

## **%msgaud.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgaud.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%msgaud.role.attrib;** appears in:

msgaud

## **%msgentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgentry.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%msgentry.role.attrib;** appears in:

msgentry

## **%msgexplan.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgexplan.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%msgexplan.role.attrib;** appears in:

msgexplan

## **%msginfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msginfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%msginfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

msginfo

**%msglevel.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msglevel.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%msglevel.role.attrib; appears in:**

msglevel

**%msgmain.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgmain.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%msgmain.role.attrib; appears in:**

msgmain

**%msgorig.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgorig.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%msgorig.role.attrib; appears in:**

msgorig

**%msgrel.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgrel.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%msgrel.role.attrib; appears in:**

msgrel

**%msgset.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgset.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%msgset.role.attrib; appears in:**

msgset

**%msgsub.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgsub.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%msgsub.role.attrib; appears in:**

msgsub

**%msgtext.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%msgtext.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%msgtext.role.attrib; appears in:**

msgtext

**%namvolnum.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%namvolnum.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%namvolnum.role.attrib; appears in:**

manvolnum

## **%objectinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%objectinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%objectinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

objectinfo

## **%olink.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%olink.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%olink.role.attrib; appears in:**

olink

## **%ooclass.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%ooclass.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%ooclass.role.attrib; appears in:**

ooclass

## **%ooexception.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%ooexception.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%ooexception.role.attrib; appears in:**

ooexception

## **%oointerface.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%oointerface.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%oointerface.role.attrib;** appears in:

oointerface

**%option.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%option.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%option.role.attrib;** appears in:

option

**%optional.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%optional.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%optional.role.attrib;** appears in:

optional

**%orderedlist.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%orderedlist.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%orderedlist.role.attrib;** appears in:

orderedlist

**%orgdiv.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%orgdiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%orgdiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

orgdiv

## **%orgname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%orgname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%orgname.role.attrib; appears in:**

orgname

## **%otheraddr.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%otheraddr.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%otheraddr.role.attrib; appears in:**

otheraddr

## **%othercredit.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%othercredit.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%othercredit.role.attrib; appears in:**

othercredit

## **%othername.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%othername.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%othername.role.attrib; appears in:**

othername

## **%pagenums.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%pagenums.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%pagenums.role.attrib; appears in:**

pagenums

## **%para.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%para.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%para.role.attrib; appears in:**

para

## **%paramdef.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%paramdef.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%paramdef.role.attrib; appears in:**

paramdef

## **%parameter.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%parameter.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%parameter.role.attrib; appears in:**

parameter

## **%part.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%part.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%part.role.attrib;** appears in:

part

**%partinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%partinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%partinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

partinfo

**%partintro.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%partintro.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%partintro.role.attrib;** appears in:

partintro

**%personblurb.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%personblurb.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%personblurb.role.attrib;** appears in:

personblurb

**%personname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%personname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%personname.role.attrib; appears in:**

personname

## **%phone.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%phone.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%phone.role.attrib; appears in:**

phone

## **%phrase.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%phrase.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%phrase.role.attrib; appears in:**

phrase

## **%pob.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%pob.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%pob.role.attrib; appears in:**

pob

## **%postcode.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%postcode.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%postcode.role.attrib; appears in:**

postcode

## **%preface.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%preface.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%preface.role.attrib; appears in:**

preface

## **%prefaceinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%prefaceinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%prefaceinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

prefaceinfo

## **%primsector.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%primsector.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%primsector.role.attrib; appears in:**

primary

secondary

tertiary

## **%primsecterie.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

### **%primsecterie.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%primsecterie.role.attrib; appears in:**

primaryie

secondaryie

tertiaryie

## **%printhistory.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%printhistory.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%printhistory.role.attrib;** appears in:

printhistory

**%procedure.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%procedure.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%procedure.role.attrib;** appears in:

procedure

**%productname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%productname.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%productname.role.attrib;** appears in:

productname

**%productnumber.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%productnumber.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%productnumber.role.attrib;** appears in:

productnumber

**%programlisting.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%programlisting.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%programlisting.role.attrib; appears in:**

programlisting

## **%programlistingco.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%programlistingco.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%programlistingco.role.attrib; appears in:**

programlistingco

## **%prompt.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%prompt.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%prompt.role.attrib; appears in:**

prompt

## **%property.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%property.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%property.role.attrib; appears in:**

property

## **%pubdate.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%pubdate.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%pubdate.role.attrib; appears in:**

pubdate

## **%publisher.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%publisher.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%publisher.role.attrib; appears in:**

publisher

## **%publishername.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%publishername.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%publishername.role.attrib; appears in:**

publishername

## **%pubsnumber.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%pubsnumber.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%pubsnumber.role.attrib; appears in:**

pubsnumber

## **%qandadiv.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%qandadiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%qandadiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

qandadiv

## **%qandaentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%qandaentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%qandaentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

qandaentry

**%qandaset.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%qandaset.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%qandaset.role.attrib; appears in:**

qandaset

**%question.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%question.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%question.role.attrib; appears in:**

question

**%quote.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%quote.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%quote.role.attrib; appears in:**

quote

**%refclass.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refclass.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refclass.role.attrib; appears in:**

refclass

## **%refdescriptor.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refdescriptor.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refdescriptor.role.attrib; appears in:**

refdescriptor

## **%refentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

refentry

## **%refentryinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refentryinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refentryinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

refentryinfo

## **%refentrytitle.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refentrytitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refentrytitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

refentrytitle

## **%reference.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%reference.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%reference.role.attrib;** appears in:

reference

## **%referenceinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%referenceinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%referenceinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

referenceinfo

## **%refmeta.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refmeta.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%refmeta.role.attrib;** appears in:

refmeta

## **%refmiscinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refmiscinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%refmiscinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

refmiscinfo

## **%refname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refname.role.attrib; appears in:**

refname

**%refnamediv.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refnamediv.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refnamediv.role.attrib; appears in:**

refnamediv

**%refpurpose.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refpurpose.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refpurpose.role.attrib; appears in:**

refpurpose

**%refsect1.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsect1.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsect1.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsect1

**%refsect1info.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsect1info.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsect1info.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsect1info

### **%refsect2.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsect2.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsect2.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsect2

### **%refsect2info.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsect2info.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsect2info.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsect2info

### **%refsect3.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsect3.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsect3.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsect3

### **%refsect3info.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsect3info.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsect3info.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsect3info

## **%refsection.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsection.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsection.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsection

## **%refsectioninfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsectioninfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsectioninfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsectioninfo

## **%refsynopsisdiv.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsynopsisdiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsynopsisdiv.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsynopsisdiv

## **%refsynopsisdivinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%refsynopsisdivinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%refsynopsisdivinfo.role.attrib; appears in:**

refsynopsisdivinfo

## **%releaseinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%releaseinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%releaseinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

releaseinfo

**%remark.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%remark.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%remark.role.attrib;** appears in:

remark

**%replaceable.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%replaceable.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%replaceable.role.attrib;** appears in:

replaceable

**%returnvalue.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%returnvalue.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%returnvalue.role.attrib;** appears in:

returnvalue

**%revdescription.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%revdescription.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%revdescription.role.attrib; appears in:**

revdescription

### **%revhistory.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%revhistory.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%revhistory.role.attrib; appears in:**

revhistory

### **%revision.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%revision.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%revision.role.attrib; appears in:**

revision

### **%revnumber.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%revnumber.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%revnumber.role.attrib; appears in:**

revnumber

### **%revremark.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%revremark.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%revremark.role.attrib; appears in:**

revremark

## **%sbr.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sbr.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%sbr.role.attrib;** appears in:

sbr

## **%screen.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%screen.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%screen.role.attrib;** appears in:

screen

## **%screenco.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%screenco.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%screenco.role.attrib;** appears in:

screenco

## **%screeninfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%screeninfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%screeninfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

screeninfo

## **%screenshot.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%screenshot.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%screenshot.role.attrib; appears in:**

screenshot

**%sect1.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect1.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%sect1.role.attrib; appears in:**

sect1

**%sect1info.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect1info.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%sect1info.role.attrib; appears in:**

sect1info

**%sect2.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect2.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%sect2.role.attrib; appears in:**

sect2

**%sect2info.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect2info.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%sect2info.role.attrib; appears in:**

sect2info

### **%sect3.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect3.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%sect3.role.attrib; appears in:**

sect3

### **%sect3info.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect3info.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%sect3info.role.attrib; appears in:**

sect3info

### **%sect4.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect4.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%sect4.role.attrib; appears in:**

sect4

### **%sect4info.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect4info.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%sect4info.role.attrib; appears in:**

sect4info

## **%sect5.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect5.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%sect5.role.attrib;** appears in:

sect5

## **%sect5info.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sect5info.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%sect5info.role.attrib;** appears in:

sect5info

## **%section.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%section.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%section.role.attrib;** appears in:

section

## **%sectioninfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sectioninfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%sectioninfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

sectioninfo

## **%seealsoie.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%seealsoie.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%seealsoie.role.attrib; appears in:**

seealsoie

**%seeie.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%seeie.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%seeie.role.attrib; appears in:**

seeie

**%seesealso.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%seesealso.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%seesealso.role.attrib; appears in:**

see seealso

**%seg.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%seg.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%seg.role.attrib; appears in:**

seg

**%seglistitem.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%seglistitem.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%seglistitem.role.attrib; appears in:**

seglistitem

**%segmentedlist.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%segmentedlist.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%segmentedlist.role.attrib; appears in:**

segmentedlist

**%segtitle.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%segtitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%segtitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

segtitle

**%seriesvolnums.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%seriesvolnums.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%seriesvolnums.role.attrib; appears in:**

seriesvolnums

**%set.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%set.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%set.role.attrib; appears in:**

set

## **%setindexinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%setindexinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%setindexinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

`setindexinfo`

## **%setinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%setinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%setinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

`setinfo`

## **%sgmltag.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sgmltag.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%sgmltag.role.attrib;** appears in:

`sgmltag`

## **%shortaffil.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%shortaffil.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%shortaffil.role.attrib;** appears in:

`shortaffil`

## **%shortcut.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%shortcut.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%shortcut.role.attrib;** appears in:

shortcut

**%sidebar.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sidebar.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%sidebar.role.attrib;** appears in:

sidebar

**%sidebarinfo.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%sidebarinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%sidebarinfo.role.attrib;** appears in:

sidebarinfo

**%simpara.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%simpara.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%simpara.role.attrib;** appears in:

simpara

**%simplelist.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%simplelist.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%simplelist.role.attrib; appears in:**

simplelist

**%simplemsgentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%simplemsgentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%simplemsgentry.role.attrib; appears in:**

simplemsgentry

**%simplesect.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%simplesect.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%simplesect.role.attrib; appears in:**

simplesect

**%ssscript.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%ssscript.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%ssscript.role.attrib; appears in:**

subscript

superscript

**%state.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%state.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%state.role.attrib; appears in:**

state

## **%step.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%step.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%step.role.attrib;** appears in:

step

## **%street.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%street.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%street.role.attrib;** appears in:

street

## **%structfield.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%structfield.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%structfield.role.attrib;** appears in:

structfield

## **%structname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%structname.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%structname.role.attrib;** appears in:

structname

## **%subject.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%subject.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%subject.role.attrib; appears in:**

subject

**%subjectset.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%subjectset.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%subjectset.role.attrib; appears in:**

subjectset

**%subjectterm.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%subjectterm.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%subjectterm.role.attrib; appears in:**

subjectterm

**%substeps.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%substeps.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%substeps.role.attrib; appears in:**

substeps

**%subtitle.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%subtitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%subtitle.role.attrib; appears in:**

subtitle

**%surname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%surname.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%surname.role.attrib; appears in:**

surname

**%symbol.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%symbol.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%symbol.role.attrib; appears in:**

symbol

**%synopfragment.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%synopfragment.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%synopfragment.role.attrib; appears in:**

synopfragment

**%synopfragmentref.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%synopfragmentref.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%synopfragmentref.role.attrib; appears in:**

synopfragmentref

## **%synopsis.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%synopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%synopsis.role.attrib; appears in:**

synopsis

## **%systemitem.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%systemitem.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%systemitem.role.attrib; appears in:**

systemitem

## **%tables.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

## **%term.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%term.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%term.role.attrib; appears in:**

term

## **%textdata.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%textdata.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%textdata.role.attrib; appears in:**

textdata

**%textobject.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%textobject.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%textobject.role.attrib; appears in:**

textobject

**%title.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%title.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%title.role.attrib; appears in:**

title

**%titleabbrev.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%titleabbrev.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%titleabbrev.role.attrib; appears in:**

titleabbrev

**%toc.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%toc.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%toc.role.attrib; appears in:**

toc

## **%tocback.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%tocback.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%tocback.role.attrib;** appears in:

tocback

## **%tocchap.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%tocchap.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%tocchap.role.attrib;** appears in:

tocchap

## **%tocentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%tocentry.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%tocentry.role.attrib;** appears in:

tocentry

## **%tocfront.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%tocfront.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%tocfront.role.attrib;** appears in:

tocfront

## **%toclevel1.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%toclevel1.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%toclevel1.role.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel1

**%toclevel2.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%toclevel2.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%toclevel2.role.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel2

**%toclevel3.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%toclevel3.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%toclevel3.role.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel3

**%toclevel4.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%toclevel4.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%toclevel4.role.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel4

**%toclevel5.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%toclevel5.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%toclevel5.role.attrib; appears in:**

toclevel5

## **%tocpart.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%tocpart.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%tocpart.role.attrib; appears in:**

tocpart

## **%token.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%token.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%token.role.attrib; appears in:**

token

## **%trademark.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%trademark.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%trademark.role.attrib; appears in:**

trademark

## **%type.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%type.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%type.role.attrib; appears in:**

type

## **%ulink.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%ulink.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%ulink.role.attrib;** appears in:

ulink

## **%userinput.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%userinput.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%userinput.role.attrib;** appears in:

userinput

## **%varargs.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%varargs.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%varargs.role.attrib;** appears in:

varargs

## **%variablelist.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%variablelist.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%variablelist.role.attrib;** appears in:

variablelist

## **%varlistentry.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%varlistentry.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%varlistentry.role.attrib;** appears in:

varlistentry

**%varname.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%varname.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%varname.role.attrib;** appears in:

varname

**%videodata.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%videodata.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%videodata.role.attrib;** appears in:

videodata

**%videoobject.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%videoobject.role.attrib;** appears in:

**%videoobject.role.attrib;** appears in:

videoobject

**%void.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%void.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%void.role.attrib; appears in:**

void

**%volumenum.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%volumenum.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%volumenum.role.attrib; appears in:**

volumenum

**%wordasword.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%wordasword.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%wordasword.role.attrib; appears in:**

wordasword

**%xref.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%xref.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%xref.role.attrib; appears in:**

xref

**%year.role.attrib;**

Parameter entity content:

Name	Type	Default
role	CDATA	<i>None</i>

**%year.role.attrib; appears in:**

**%year.role.attrib; appears in:**

year

# DocBook Character Entity Reference

The reference pages in this section describe each of the ISO character entity sets referenced in DocBook.

## A Note on Unicode Character References and Glyphs

Most of the glyphs this reference are from the TmsPF Roman font by Production First Software<sup>i</sup>. A few glyphs are from Everson Mono<sup>ii</sup>, and are provided with the permission of Michael Everson.

The Unicode character numbers and reference glyphs in this section are examples only. Some characters have more than one Unicode representation and different Unicode characters may be appropriate in different contexts. Similarly, the glyph images offer only one of many possible representations for the specified character.

Unicode support requires much more than a simple character to glyph mapping; for more information on Unicode, consult *The Unicode Standard, Version 2.0*<sup>iii</sup> and *Unicode Technical Report #8*<sup>iv</sup>, which describes Unicode Version 2.1.

<sup>i</sup><http://ourworld.compuserve.com/homepages/profirst/homepagx.htm>

<sup>ii</sup><http://www.indigo.ie/egt/celtsript/>

<sup>iii</sup><http://www.unicode.org/unicode/uni2book/u2.html>

<sup>iv</sup><http://www.unicode.org/unicode/reports/tr8.html>

# Added Math Symbols: Arrow Relations Character Entities (%isoamsa;)

Added Math Symbols: Arrow Relations Character Entities (%isoamsa;) -- Added Math Symbols: Arrow Relations Character Entities

The `%isoamsa;` parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Arrow Relations//EN

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
cularr	21B6		Anticlockwise top semicircle arrow
curarr	21B7		Clockwise top semicircle arrow
dArr	21D3		Downwards double arrow
darr2	21CA		Downwards paired arrows
dharl	21C3		Downwards harpoon with barb leftwards
dharr	21C2		Downwards harpoon with barb rightwards
lAarr	21DA		Leftwards triple arrow
Larr	219E		Leftwards two headed arrow
larr2	21C7		Leftwards paired arrows
larrhk	21A9		Leftwards arrow with hook
larrlp	21AB		Leftwards arrow with loop
larrtl	21A2		Leftwards arrow with tail
lhard	21BD		Leftwards harpoon with barb downwards

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
lharu	21BC		Leftwards harpoon with barb upwards
hArr	21D4		Left right double arrow
harr	2194		Left right arrow
lrarr2	21C6		Leftwards arrow over rightwards arrow
rlarr2	21C4		Rightwards arrow over leftwards arrow
harrw	21AD		Left right wave arrow
rlhar2	21CC		Rightwards harpoon over leftwards harpoon
lrhar2	21CB		Leftwards harpoon over rightwards harpoon
lsh	21B0		Upwards arrow with tip leftwards
map	21A6		Rightwards arrow from bar
mumap	22B8		Multimap
nearr	2197		North east arrow
nlArr	21CD		Leftwards double arrow with stroke
nlarr	219A		Leftwards arrow with stroke
nhArr	21CE		Left right double arrow with stroke
nharr	21AE		Left right arrow with stroke
nrarr	219B		Rightwards arrow with stroke
nrArr	21CF		Rightwards double arrow with stroke
nwarr	2196		North west arrow

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
olarr	21BA		Anticlockwise open circle arrow
orarr	21BB		Clockwise open circle arrow
rAarr	21DB		Rightwards triple arrow
Rarr	21A0		Rightwards two headed arrow
rarr2	21C9		Rightwards paired arrows
rarrhk	21AA		Rightwards arrow with hook
rarrlp	21AC		Rightwards arrow with loop
rarrtl	21A3		Rightwards arrow with tail
rarrw	21DD		Rightwards squiggle arrow
rhard	21C1		Rightwards harpoon with barb downwards
rharu	21C0		Rightwards harpoon with barb upwards
rsh	21B1		Upwards arrow with tip rightwards
drarr	2198		South east arrow
dlarr	2199		South west arrow
uArr	21D1		Upwards double arrow
uarr2	21C8		Upwards paired arrows
vArr	21D5		Up down double arrow
varr	2195		Up down arrow
uharl	21BF		Upwards harpoon with barb leftwards

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
uharr	21BE	↑	Upwards harpoon with barb rightwards
xlArr		⇐	long l dbl arrow
xhArr		↔	long l&r dbl arr
xharr		⇔	long l&r arr
xrArr		⇒	long rt dbl arr

# Added Math Symbols: Binary Operators Character Entities (%isoamsb;)

Added Math Symbols: Binary Operators Character Entities (%isoamsb;) -- Added Math Symbols: Binary Operators Character Entities

The `%isoamsb;` parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Binary Operators//EN

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
amalg			amalgamation or coproduct
Barwed	22BC		Nand
barwed	22BC		Nand
Cap	22D2		Double intersection
Cup	22D3		Double union
cuvee	22CE		Curly logical or
cuwed	22CF		Curly logical and
diam	22C4		Diamond operator
divonx	22C7		Division times
intcal	22BA		Intercalate
lthree	22CB		Left semidirect product
ltimes	22C9		Left normal factor semidirect product
minusb	229F		Squared minus

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
oast	229B		Circled asterisk operator
ocir	229A		Circled ring operator
odash	229D		Circled dash
odot	2299		Circled dot operator
ominus	2296		Circled minus
oplus	2295		Circled plus
osol	2298		Circled division slash
otimes	2297		Circled times
plusb	229E		Squared plus
plusdo	2214		Dot plus
rthree	22CC		Right semidirect product
rtimes	22CA		Right normal factor semidirect product
sdot	22C5		Dot operator
sdotb	22A1		Squared dot operator
setmn	2216		Set minus
sqcap	2293		Square cap
sqcup	2294		Square cup
ssetmn			sm reverse solidus
sstarf	22C6		Star operator

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
timesb	22A0	$\boxtimes$	Squared times
top	22A4	$\top$	Down tack
uplus	228E	$\uplus$	Multiset union
wreath	2240	$\wr$	Wreath product
xcirc	25EF	$\bigcirc$	Large circle
xdtri	25BD	$\nabla$	White down-pointing triangle
xutri	25B3	$\triangle$	White up-pointing triangle
coprod	2210	$\amalg$	N-ary coproduct
prod	220F	$\prod$	N-ary product
sum	2211	$\sum$	N-ary summation

# Added Math Symbols: Delimiters Character Entities (%isoamsc;)

Added Math Symbols: Delimiters Character Entities (%isoamsc;) -- Added Math Symbols: Delimiters Character Entities

The `%isoamsc;` parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Delimiters//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
rceil	2309		Right ceiling
rfloor	230B		Right floor
rpargt			right paren, gt
urcorn	231D		Top right corner
drcorn	231F		Bottom right corner
lceil	2308		Left ceiling
lfloor	230A		Left floor
lpargt			left parenthesis, gt
ulcorn	231C		Top left corner
dlcorn	231E		Bottom left corner

# Added Math Symbols: Negated Relations Character Entities (%isoamsn;)

Added Math Symbols: Negated Relations Character Entities (%isoamsn;) -- Added Math Symbols: Negated Relations Character Entities

The `%isoamsn;` parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Negated Relations//EN

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
gnap			greater, not approximate
gne	2269		Greater-than but not equal to
gnE	2269		Greater-than but not equal to
gnsim	22E7		Greater-than but not equivalent to
gvnE			gt, vert, not dbl eq
lnap			less, not approximate
lnE	2268		Less-than but not equal to
lne	2268		Less-than but not equal to
lnsim	22E6		Less-than but not equivalent to
lvnE			less, vert, not dbl eq
nap	2249		Not almost equal to
ncong	2247		Neither approximately nor actually equal to
nequiv	2262		Not identical to

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
ngE	2271		Neither greater-than nor equal to
nge			not greater-than-or-equal
nges	2271		Neither greater-than nor equal to
ngt	226F		Not greater-than
nle			not less-than-or-equal
nLE	2270		Neither less-than nor equal to
nles	2270		Neither less-than nor equal to
nlt	226E		Not less-than
nltri	22EA		Not normal subgroup of
nltrie	22EC		Not normal subgroup of or equal to
nmid	2224		Does not divide
npar	2226		Not parallel to
npr	2280		Does not precede
npre			not precedes, equals
nrtri	22EB		Does not contain as normal subgroup of
nrtrie	22ED		Does not contain as normal subgroup or equal
nsc	2281		Does not succeed
nsce			not succeeds, equals
nsim	2241		Not tilde

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
nsime	2244	$\neq$	Not asymptotically equal to
nsmid		$\times$	nshortmid
nspar		$\#$	not short par
nsub	2284	$\not\subset$	Not a subset of
nsube	2288	$\not\subseteq$	Neither a subset of nor equal to
nsubE	2288	$\not\subseteq$	Neither a subset of nor equal to
nsup	2285	$\not\supset$	Not a superset of
nsupE	2289	$\not\supseteq$	Neither a superset of nor equal to
nsupe	2289	$\not\supseteq$	Neither a superset of nor equal to
nvdash	22AC	$\nVdash$	Does not prove
nvDash	22AD	$\nDash$	Not true
nVDash	22AF	$\nVdash$	Negated double vertical bar double right turnstile
nVdash	22AE	$\nVdash$	Does not force
prnap	22E8	$\preceq$	Precedes but not equivalent to
prnE		$\preceq$	precedes, not dbl eq
prnsim	22E8	$\preceq$	Precedes but not equivalent to
scnap	22E9	$\succcurlyeq$	Succeed but not equivalent to
scnE		$\succcurlyeq$	succeeds, not dbl eq
sensim	22E9	$\succcurlyeq$	Succeed but not equivalent to

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
subne	228A		Subset of or not equal to
subnE	228A		Subset of or not equal to
supne	228B		Superset of or not equal to
supnE	228B		Superset of or not equal to
vsubnE			subset not dbl eq, var
vsubne			subset, not eq, var
vsupne			superset, not eq, var
vsupnE			super not dbl eq, var

# Added Math Symbols: Ordinary Character Entities (%isoamso;)

Added Math Symbols: Ordinary Character Entities (%isoamso;) -- Added Math Symbols: Ordinary Character Entities

The `%isoamso;` parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Ordinary//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
ang	2220	∠	Angle
angmsd	2221	∠	Measured angle
beth	2136	ב	Bet symbol
bprime	2035	∕	Reversed prime
comp	2201	∕	Complement
daleth	2138	ד	Dalet symbol
ell	2113	ℓ	Script small l
empty		∅	emptyset /varnothing =small o, slash
gimel	2137	ג	Gimel symbol
image	2111	ℑ	Fraktur letter capital i
inodot	0131	ı	Latin small letter dotless i
jnodot		Ƶ	jmath - small j, no dot
nexist	2204	∄	There does not exist

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
oS	24C8	Ⓢ	Circled latin capital letter S
planck	0127	ℏ	Latin small letter h with stroke
real	211C	℞	Fraktur letter capital r
sbsol		↖	sbs - short reverse solidus
vprime	2032	′	Prime
weierp	2118	℘	Script capital p

# Added Math Symbols: Relations Character Entities (%isoamsr;)

Added Math Symbols: Relations Character Entities (%isoamsr;) -- Added Math Symbols: Relations Character Entities

The `%isoamsr;` parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Relations//EN

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
ape	224A	$\approx$	Almost equal or equal to
asymp	224D	$\asymp$	Equivalent to
bcong	224C	$\equiv$	All equal to
bepsi		$\backsimeq$	such that
bowtie	22C8	$\bowtie$	Bowtie
bsim	223D	$\smile$	Reversed tilde
bsime	22CD	$\simeq$	Reversed tilde equals
bump	224E	$\bumpeq$	Geometrically equivalent to
bumpe	224F	$\Bumpeq$	Difference between
cire	2257	$\circlearrowleft$	Ring equal to
colone	2254	$\coloneqq$	Colon equals
cuepr	22DE	$\preceq$	Equal to or precedes
cuesc	22DF	$\preceq$	Equal to or succeeds

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
cupre	227C		Precedes or equal to
dashv	22A3		Left tack
ecir	2256		Ring in equal to
ecolon	2255		Equals colon
eDot	2251		Geometrically equal to
esdot	2250		Approaches the limit
efDot	2252		Approximately equal to or the image of
egs	22DD		Equal to or greater-than
els	22DC		Equal to or less-than
erDot	2253		Image of or approximately equal to
fork	22D4		Pitchfork
frown	2322		Frown
gap	2273		Greater-than or equivalent to
gsdot	22D7		Greater-than with dot
gE	2267		Greater-than over equal to
gel	22DB		Greater-than equal to or less-than
gEl	22DB		Greater-than equal to or less-than
ges			gt-or-equal, slanted
Gg	22D9		Very much greater-than

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
gt	2277		Greater-than or less-than
gsim	2273		Greater-than or equivalent to
Gt	226B		Much greater-than
lap	2272		Less-than or equivalent to
ldot	22D6		Less-than with dot
lE	2266		Less-than over equal to
lEg	22DA		Less-than equal to or greater-than
leg	22DA		Less-than equal to or greater-than
les			less-than-or-eq, slant
lg	2276		Less-than or greater-than
Ll	22D8		Very much less-than
lsim	2272		Less-than or equivalent to
Lt	226A		Much less-than
ltrie	22B4		Normal subgroup of or equal to
mid	2223		Divides
models	22A7		Models
pr	227A		Precedes
prap	227E		Precedes or equivalent to
pre			precedes, equals

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
prsim	227E		Precedes or equivalent to
rtrie	22B5		Contains as normal subgroup or equal to
samalg	2210		N-ary coproduct
sc	227B		Succeeds
scap	227F		Succeeds or equivalent to
sccue	227D		Succeeds or equal to
sce	227D		Succeeds or equal to
scsim	227F		Succeeds or equivalent to
sfrown			small down curve
smid			
smile	2323		Smile
spar			short parallel
sqsub	228F		Square image of
sqsube	2291		Square image of or equal to
sqsup	2290		Square original of
sqsupe	2292		Square original of or equal to
ssmile			small up curve
Sub	22D0		Double subset
subE	2286		Subset of or equal to

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Sup	22D1		Double superset
supE	2287		Superset of or equal to
thkap			thick approximate
thksim			thick similar
trie	225C		Delta equal to
twixt	226C		Between
vdash	22A2		Right tack
Vdash	22A9		Forces
vDash	22A8		True
veebar	22BB		Xor
vltri	22B2		Normal subgroup of
vprop	221D		Proportional to
vrtri	22B3		Contains as normal subgroup
Vvdash	22AA		Triple vertical bar right turnstile

# Box and Line Drawing Character Entities (%isobox;)

Box and Line Drawing Character Entities (%isobox;) -- Box and Line Drawing Character Entities

The %isobox; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Box and Line Drawing//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
boxh	2500	—	Box drawings light horizontal
boxv	2502		Box drawings light vertical
boxur	2514	└	Box drawings light up and right
boxul	2518	┐	Box drawings light up and left
boxdl	2510	┌	Box drawings light down and left
boxdr	250C	┘	Box drawings light down and right
boxvr	251C	├	Box drawings light vertical and right
boxhu	2534	┤	Box drawings light up and horizontal
boxvl	2524	├	Box drawings light vertical and left
boxhd	252C	┘	Box drawings light down and horizontal
boxvh	253C	├	Box drawings light vertical and horizontal
boxvR	255E	┘	Box drawings vertical single and right double
boxhU	2568	┘	Box drawings up double and horizontal single
boxvL	2561	┘	Box drawings vertical single and left double

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
boxhD	2565		Box drawings down double and horizontal single
boxvH	256A		Box drawings vertical single and horizontal double
boxH	2550		Box drawings double horizontal
boxV	2551		Box drawings double vertical
boxUR	255A		Box drawings double up and right
boxUL	255D		Box drawings double up and left
boxDL	2557		Box drawings double down and left
boxDR	2554		Box drawings double down and right
boxVR	2560		Box drawings double vertical and right
boxHU	2569		Box drawings double up and horizontal
boxVL	2563		Box drawings double vertical and left
boxHD	2566		Box drawings double down and horizontal
boxVH	256C		Box drawings double vertical and horizontal
boxVr	255F		Box drawings vertical double and right single
boxHu	2567		Box drawings up single and horizontal double
boxVI	2562		Box drawings vertical double and left single
boxHd	2564		Box drawings down single and horizontal double
boxVh	256B		Box drawings vertical double and horizontal single
boxuR	2558		Box drawings up single and right double

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
boxUI	255C	⌋	Box drawings up double and left single
boxdL	2555	⌋	Box drawings down single and left double
boxDr	2553	⌋	Box drawings down double and right single
boxUr	2559	⌋	Box drawings up double and right single
boxuL	255B	⌋	Box drawings up single and left double
boxdI	2556	⌋	Box drawings down double and left single
boxdR	2552	⌋	Box drawings down single and right double

# Russian Cyrillic Character Entities (%isocyr1;)

Russian Cyrillic Character Entities (%isocyr1;) -- Russian Cyrillic Character Entities

The %isocyr1; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Russian Cyrillic//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
acy	0430	а	Cyrillic small letter a
Acy	0410	А	Cyrillic capital letter A
bcy	0431	б	Cyrillic small letter be
Bcy	0411	Б	Cyrillic capital letter BE
vcy	0432	в	Cyrillic small letter ve
Vcy	0412	В	Cyrillic capital letter VE
gcy	0433	г	Cyrillic small letter ghe
Gcy	0413	Г	Cyrillic capital letter GHE
dcy	0434	д	Cyrillic small letter de
Dcy	0414	Д	Cyrillic capital letter DE
iecy	0435	е	Cyrillic small letter ie
IEcy	0415	Е	Cyrillic capital letter IE
ioey	0451	ё	Cyrillic small letter io
IOey	0401	Ё	Cyrillic capital letter IO

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
zhey	0436	ж	Cyrillic small letter zhe
ZHey	0416	Ж	Cyrillic capital letter ZHE
zcy	0437	з	Cyrillic small letter ze
Zcy	0417	З	Cyrillic capital letter ZE
icy	0438	и	Cyrillic small letter i
Icy	0418	И	Cyrillic capital letter I
jcy	0439	й	Cyrillic small letter short i
Jcy	0419	Й	Cyrillic capital letter SHORT i
kcy	043A	к	Cyrillic small letter ka
Kcy	041A	К	Cyrillic capital letter KA
ley	043B	л	Cyrillic small letter el
Lcy	041B	Л	Cyrillic capital letter EL
mcy	043C	м	Cyrillic small letter em
Mcy	041C	М	Cyrillic capital letter EM
ncy	043D	н	Cyrillic small letter en
Ncy	041D	Н	Cyrillic capital letter EN
ocy	043E	о	Cyrillic small letter o
Ocy	041E	О	Cyrillic capital letter O
pcy	043F	п	Cyrillic small letter pe

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Pcy	041F	П	Cyrillic capital letter PE
rcy	0440	р	Cyrillic small letter er
Rcy	0420	Р	Cyrillic capital letter ER
scy	0441	с	Cyrillic small letter es
Scy	0421	С	Cyrillic capital letter ES
tcy	0442	т	Cyrillic small letter te
Tcy	0422	Т	Cyrillic capital letter TE
ucy	0443	у	Cyrillic small letter u
Ucy	0423	У	Cyrillic capital letter U
fcy	0444	ф	Cyrillic small letter ef
Fcy	0424	Ф	Cyrillic capital letter EF
khcy	0445	х	Cyrillic small letter ha
KHcy	0425	Х	Cyrillic capital letter HA
tscy	0446	ц	Cyrillic small letter tse
TScy	0426	Ц	Cyrillic capital letter TSE
chcy	0447	ч	Cyrillic small letter che
CHcy	0427	Ч	Cyrillic capital letter CHE
shcy	0448	ш	Cyrillic small letter sha
SHcy	0428	Ш	Cyrillic capital letter SHA

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
shchcy	0449	щ	Cyrillic small letter shcha
SHCHcy	0429	Щ	Cyrillic capital letter SHCHA
hardcy	044A	ъ	Cyrillic small letter hard sign
HARDcy	042A	Ъ	Cyrillic capital letter HARD sign
ycy	044B	ы	Cyrillic small letter yeru
Ycy	042B	Ы	Cyrillic capital letter YERU
softcy	044C	ь	Cyrillic small letter soft sign
SOFTcy	042C	Ь	Cyrillic capital letter SOFT sign
ecy	044D	э	Cyrillic small letter e
Ecy	042D	Э	Cyrillic capital letter E
yucy	044E	ю	Cyrillic small letter yu
YUcy	042E	Ю	Cyrillic capital letter YU
yacy	044F	я	Cyrillic small letter ya
YAcy	042F	Я	Cyrillic capital letter YA
numero	2116	№	Numero sign

# Non-Russian Cyrillic Character Entities (%isocyr2;)

Non-Russian Cyrillic Character Entities (%isocyr2;) -- Non-Russian Cyrillic Character Entities

The %isocyr2; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Non-Russian Cyrillic//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
djcy	0452	ђ	Cyrillic small letter dje
DJcy	0402	Ђ	Cyrillic capital letter DJE
gjcy	0453	ѓ	Cyrillic small letter gje
GJcy	0403	Ѓ	Cyrillic capital letter GJE
juicy	0454	є	Cyrillic small letter ukrainian ie
Juicy	0404	Є	Cyrillic capital letter UKRAINIAN ie
dscy	0455	ѕ	Cyrillic small letter dze
DScy	0405	Ѕ	Cyrillic capital letter DZE
iuicy	0456	і	Cyrillic small letter byelorussian-ukrainian i
Iuicy	0406	І	Cyrillic capital letter BYELORUSSIAN-UKRAINIAN i
yicy	0457	ѣ	Cyrillic small letter yi
YIcy	0407	Ў	Cyrillic capital letter YI
jserycy	0458	ј	Cyrillic small letter je
Jsercy	0408	Ј	Cyrillic capital letter JE

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
ljcy	0459	Љ	Cyrillic small letter lje
LJcy	0409	Љ	Cyrillic capital letter LJE
njcy	045A	Њ	Cyrillic small letter nje
NJcy	040A	Њ	Cyrillic capital letter NJE
tshcy	045B	ѣ	Cyrillic small letter tshe
TSHcy	040B	Ѣ	Cyrillic capital letter TSHE
kjcy	045C	ќ	Cyrillic small letter kje
KJcy	040C	Ќ	Cyrillic capital letter KJE
ubrcy	045E	ѱ	Cyrillic small letter short u
Ubrcy	040E	Ѳ	Cyrillic capital letter SHORT u
dzcy	045F	Ѹ	Cyrillic small letter dzhe
DZcy	040F	ѹ	Cyrillic capital letter DZHE

# Diacritical Marks Character Entities (%isodia;)

Diacritical Marks Character Entities (%isodia;) -- Diacritical Marks Character Entities

The %isodia; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Diacritical Marks//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
acute	00B4	´	Acute accent
breve	02D8	˘	Breve
caron	02C7	ˇ	Caron
cedil	00B8	¸	Cedilla
circ	005E	ˆ	Circumflex accent
dblac	02DD	˝	Double acute accent
die	00A8	¨	Diaeresis
dot	02D9	˙	Dot above
grave	0060	̀	Grave accent
macr	00AF	¯	Macron
ogon	02DB	˛	Ogonek
ring	02DA	˚	Ring above
tilde	02DC	˜	Small tilde
uml	00A8	¨	Diaeresis

# Greek Letters Character Entities (%isogrk1;)

Greek Letters Character Entities (%isogrk1;) -- Greek Letters Character Entities

The %isogrk1; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Greek Letters//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
agr	03B1	α	Greek small letter alpha
Agr	0391	Α	Greek capital letter ALPHA
bgr	03B2	β	Greek small letter beta
Bgr	0392	Β	Greek capital letter BETA
ggr	03B3	γ	Greek small letter gamma
Ggr	0393	Γ	Greek capital letter GAMMA
dgr	03B4	δ	Greek small letter delta
Dgr	0394	Δ	Greek capital letter DELTA
egr	03B5	ε	Greek small letter epsilon
Egr	0395	Ε	Greek capital letter EPSILON
zgr	03B6	ζ	Greek small letter zeta
Zgr	0396	Ζ	Greek capital letter ZETA
eegr	03B7	η	Greek small letter eta
EEgr	0397	Η	Greek capital letter ETA

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
thgr	03B8	θ	Greek small letter theta
THgr	0398	Θ	Greek capital letter THETA
igr	03B9	ι	Greek small letter iota
Igr	0399	Ι	Greek capital letter IOTA
kgr	03BA	κ	Greek small letter kappa
Kgr	039A	Κ	Greek capital letter KAPPA
lgr	03BB	λ	Greek small letter lamda
Lgr	039B	Λ	Greek capital letter LAMDA
mgr	03BC	μ	Greek small letter mu
Mgr	039C	Μ	Greek capital letter MU
ngr	03BD	ν	Greek small letter nu
Ngr	039D	Ν	Greek capital letter NU
xgr	03BE	ξ	Greek small letter xi
Xgr	039E	Ξ	Greek capital letter XI
ogr	03BF	ο	Greek small letter omicron
Ogr	039F	Ο	Greek capital letter OMICRON
pgr	03C0	π	Greek small letter pi
Pgr	03A0	Π	Greek capital letter PI
rgr	03C1	ρ	Greek small letter rho

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Rgr	03A1	Ρ	Greek capital letter RHO
sgr	03C3	σ	Greek small letter sigma
Sgr	03A3	Σ	Greek capital letter SIGMA
sfgr	03C2	ς	Greek small letter final sigma
tgr	03C4	τ	Greek small letter tau
Tgr	03A4	Τ	Greek capital letter TAU
ugr	03C5	υ	Greek small letter upsilon
Ugr	03A5	Υ	Greek capital letter UPSILON
phgr	03C6	φ	Greek small letter phi
PHgr	03A6	Φ	Greek capital letter PHI
khgr	03C7	χ	Greek small letter chi
KHgr	03A7	Χ	Greek capital letter CHI
psgr	03C8	ψ	Greek small letter psi
PSgr	03A8	Ψ	Greek capital letter PSI
ohgr	03C9	ω	Greek small letter omega
OHgr	03A9	Ω	Greek capital letter OMEGA

# Monotoniko Greek Character Entities (%isogr2;)

Monotoniko Greek Character Entities (%isogr2;) -- Monotoniko Greek Character Entities

The %isogr2; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Monotoniko Greek//EN

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
aacgr	03AC	ά	Greek small letter alpha with tonos
Aacgr	0386	Α	Greek capital letter ALPHA with tonos
eacgr	03AD	έ	Greek small letter epsilon with tonos
Eacgr	0388	Ε	Greek capital letter EPSILON with tonos
eeacgr	03AE	ή	Greek small letter eta with tonos
EEacgr	0389	Η	Greek capital letter ETA with tonos
idigr	03CA	ϊ	Greek small letter iota with dialytika
Idigr	03AA	Ι	Greek capital letter IOTA with dialytika
iacgr	03AF	ί	Greek small letter iota with tonos
Iacgr	038A	Ι	Greek capital letter IOTA with tonos
idiagr	0390	ΐ	Greek small letter iota with dialytika and tonos
oacgr	03CC	ό	Greek small letter omicron with tonos
Oacgr	038C	Ο	Greek capital letter OMICRON with tonos
udigr	03CB	ϋ	Greek small letter upsilon with dialytika

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Udigr	03AB	Ų	Greek capital letter UPSILON with dialytika
uacgr	03CD	ύ	Greek small letter upsilon with tonos
Uacgr	038E	Υ	Greek capital letter UPSILON with tonos
udiagr	03B0	ϋ	Greek small letter upsilon with tonos and dialytika
ohacgr	03CE	ώ	Greek small letter omega with tonos
OHacgr	038F	Ω	Greek capital letter OMEGA with tonos

# Greek Symbols Character Entities (%isogr3;)

Greek Symbols Character Entities (%isogr3;) -- Greek Symbols Character Entities

The %isogr3; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Greek Symbols//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
alpha	03B1	α	Greek small letter alpha
beta	03B2	β	Greek small letter beta
gamma	03B3	γ	Greek small letter gamma
Gamma	0393	Γ	Greek capital letter GAMMA
gammad	03DC	Ϝ	Greek letter digamma
delta	03B4	δ	Greek small letter delta
Delta	0394	Δ	Greek capital letter DELTA
epsi	03B5	ε	Greek small letter epsilon
epsiv	025B	ɛ	Latin small letter open e
epsis	03B5	ε	Greek small letter epsilon
zeta	03B6	ζ	Greek small letter zeta
eta	03B7	η	Greek small letter eta
thetas	03B8	θ	Greek small letter theta
Theta	0398	Θ	Greek capital letter THETA

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
thetav	03D1	ϑ	Greek theta symbol
iota	03B9	ι	Greek small letter iota
kappa	03BA	κ	Greek small letter kappa
kappav	03F0	ϰ	Greek kappa symbol
lambda	03BB	λ	Greek small letter lamda
Lambda	039B	Λ	Greek capital letter LAMDA
mu	03BC	μ	Greek small letter mu
nu	03BD	ν	Greek small letter nu
xi	03BE	ξ	Greek small letter xi
Xi	039E	Ξ	Greek capital letter XI
pi	03C0	π	Greek small letter pi
piv	03D6	ϖ	Greek omega symbol
Pi	03A0	Π	Greek capital letter PI
rho	03C1	ρ	Greek small letter rho
rhov	03F1	ϱ	Greek rho symbol
sigma	03C3	σ	Greek small letter sigma
Sigma	03A3	Σ	Greek capital letter SIGMA
sigmav	03C2	ς	Greek small letter final sigma
tau	03C4	τ	Greek small letter tau

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
upsilon	03C5	ϛ	Greek small letter upsilon
Upsilon	03D2	Υ	Greek upsilon with hook symbol
phi	03C6	ϕ	Greek small letter phi
Phi	03A6	Φ	Greek capital letter PHI
phiv	03D5	ϕ	Greek phi symbol
chi	03C7	χ	Greek small letter chi
psi	03C8	ψ	Greek small letter psi
Psi	03A8	Ψ	Greek capital letter PSI
omega	03C9	ω	Greek small letter omega
Omega	03A9	Ω	Greek capital letter OMEGA

# Alternative Greek Symbols Character Entities (%isogr4;)

Alternative Greek Symbols Character Entities (%isogr4;) -- Alternative Greek Symbols Character Entities

The %isogr4; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Alternative Greek Symbols//EN

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
b.alpha	03B1	α	Greek small letter alpha
b.beta	03B2	β	Greek small letter beta
b.gamma	03B3	γ	Greek small letter gamma
b.Gamma	0393	Γ	Greek capital letter GAMMA
b.gammad	03DC	Ϝ	Greek letter digamma
b.delta	03B4	δ	Greek small letter delta
b.Delta	0394	Δ	Greek capital letter DELTA
b.epsi	03B5	ε	Greek small letter epsilon
b.epsiv	025B	ɛ	Latin small letter open e
b.esis	03B5	ϵ	Greek small letter epsilon
b.zeta	03B6	ζ	Greek small letter zeta
b.eta	03B7	η	Greek small letter eta
b.thetas	03B8	θ	Greek small letter theta
b.Theta	0398	Θ	Greek capital letter THETA

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
b.thetav	03D1	ϑ	Greek theta symbol
b.iota	03B9	ι	Greek small letter iota
b.kappa	03BA	κ	Greek small letter kappa
b.kappav	03F0	ϰ	Greek kappa symbol
b.lambda	03BB	λ	Greek small letter lamda
b.Lambda	039B	Λ	Greek capital letter LAMDA
b.mu	03BC	μ	Greek small letter mu
b.nu	03BD	ν	Greek small letter nu
b.xi	03BE	ξ	Greek small letter xi
b.Xi	039E	Ξ	Greek capital letter XI
b.pi	03C0	π	Greek small letter pi
b.Pi	03A0	Π	Greek capital letter PI
b.piv	03D6	Ϸ	Greek omega symbol
b.rho	03C1	ρ	Greek small letter rho
b.rhov	03F1	ϱ	Greek rho symbol
b.sigma	03C3	σ	Greek small letter sigma
b.Sigma	03A3	Σ	Greek capital letter SIGMA
b.sigmap	03C2	ς	Greek small letter final sigma
b.tau	03C4	τ	Greek small letter tau

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
b.upsilon	03C5	ϛ	Greek small letter upsilon
b.Upsilon	03D2	Υ	Greek upsilon with hook symbol
b.phis	03C6	φ	Greek small letter phi
b.Phi	03A6	Φ	Greek capital letter PHI
b.phiv	03D5	ϕ	Greek phi symbol
b.chi	03C7	χ	Greek small letter chi
b.psi	03C8	ψ	Greek small letter psi
b.Psi	03A8	Ψ	Greek capital letter PSI
b.omega	03C9	ω	Greek small letter omega
b.Omega	03A9	Ω	Greek capital letter OMEGA

# ISO Latin 1 Character Entities (%isolat1;)

ISO Latin 1 Character Entities (%isolat1;) -- ISO Latin 1 Character Entities

The %isolat1; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Latin 1//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
aacute	00E1	á	Latin small letter a with acute
Aacute	00C1	Á	Latin capital letter A with acute
acirc	00E2	â	Latin small letter a with circumflex
Acirc	00C2	Â	Latin capital letter A with circumflex
agrave	00E0	à	Latin small letter a with grave
Agrave	00C0	À	Latin capital letter A with grave
aring	00E5	å	Latin small letter a with ring above
Aring	00C5	Å	Latin capital letter A with ring above
atilde	00E3	ã	Latin small letter a with tilde
Atilde	00C3	Ã	Latin capital letter A with tilde
auml	00E4	ä	Latin small letter a with diaeresis
Auml	00C4	Ä	Latin capital letter A with diaeresis
aelig	00E6	æ	Latin small letter ae
AElig	00C6	Æ	Latin capital letter AE

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
ccedil	00E7	ç	Latin small letter c with cedilla
Ccedil	00C7	Ç	Latin capital letter C with cedilla
eth	00F0	ð	Latin small letter eth
ETH	00D0	Ð	Latin capital letter ETH
eacute	00E9	é	Latin small letter e with acute
Eacute	00C9	É	Latin capital letter E with acute
ecirc	00EA	ê	Latin small letter e with circumflex
Ecirc	00CA	Ê	Latin capital letter E with circumflex
egrave	00E8	è	Latin small letter e with grave
Egrave	00C8	È	Latin capital letter E with grave
euml	00EB	ë	Latin small letter e with diaeresis
Euml	00CB	Ë	Latin capital letter E with diaeresis
iacute	00ED	í	Latin small letter i with acute
Iacute	00CD	Í	Latin capital letter I with acute
icirc	00EE	î	Latin small letter i with circumflex
Icirc	00CE	Î	Latin capital letter I with circumflex
igrave	00EC	ì	Latin small letter i with grave
Igrave	00CC	Ì	Latin capital letter I with grave
iuml	00EF	ï	Latin small letter i with diaeresis

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Iuml	00CF	İ	Latin capital letter I with diaeresis
ntilde	00F1	ñ	Latin small letter n with tilde
Ntilde	00D1	Ñ	Latin capital letter N with tilde
oacute	00F3	ó	Latin small letter o with acute
Oacute	00D3	Ó	Latin capital letter O with acute
ocirc	00F4	ô	Latin small letter o with circumflex
Ocirc	00D4	Ô	Latin capital letter O with circumflex
ograve	00F2	ò	Latin small letter o with grave
Ograve	00D2	Ò	Latin capital letter O with grave
oslash	00F8	ø	Latin small letter o with stroke
Oslash	00D8	Ø	Latin capital letter O with stroke
otilde	00F5	õ	Latin small letter o with tilde
Otilde	00D5	Õ	Latin capital letter O with tilde
ouml	00F6	ö	Latin small letter o with diaeresis
Ouml	00D6	Ö	Latin capital letter O with diaeresis
szlig	00DF	ß	Latin small letter sharp s
thorn	00FE	þ	Latin small letter thorn
THORN	00DE	Þ	Latin capital letter THORN
uacute	00FA	ú	Latin small letter u with acute

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Uacute	00DA	Ú	Latin capital letter U with acute
ucirc	00FB	û	Latin small letter u with circumflex
Ucirc	00DB	Û	Latin capital letter U with circumflex
ugrave	00F9	ù	Latin small letter u with grave
Ugrave	00D9	Ù	Latin capital letter U with grave
uuml	00FC	ü	Latin small letter u with diaeresis
Uuml	00DC	Ü	Latin capital letter U with diaeresis
yacute	00FD	ý	Latin small letter y with acute
Yacute	00DD	Ý	Latin capital letter Y with acute
yuml	00FF	ÿ	Latin small letter y with diaeresis

# Added Latin 2 Character Entities (%isolat2;)

Added Latin 2 Character Entities (%isolat2;) -- Added Latin 2 Character Entities

The %isolat2; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Latin 2//EN

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
abreve	0103	ă	Latin small letter a with breve
Abreve	0102	Ă	Latin capital letter A with breve
amacr	0101	ā	Latin small letter a with macron
Amacr	0100	Ā	Latin capital letter A with macron
aogon	0105	ą	Latin small letter a with ogonek
Aogon	0104	Ą	Latin capital letter A with ogonek
cacute	0107	ć	Latin small letter c with acute
Cacute	0106	Ć	Latin capital letter C with acute
ccaron	010D	č	Latin small letter c with caron
Ccaron	010C	Č	Latin capital letter C with caron
ccirc	0109	ĉ	Latin small letter c with circumflex
Ccirc	0108	Ĉ	Latin capital letter C with circumflex
cdot	010B	ċ	Latin small letter c with dot above
Cdot	010A	Ĉ	Latin capital letter C with dot above

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
dcaron	010F	ď	Latin small letter d with caron
Dcaron	010E	Ď	Latin capital letter D with caron
dstrok	0111	đ	Latin small letter d with stroke
Dstrok	0110	Đ	Latin capital letter D with stroke
ecaron	011B	ě	Latin small letter e with caron
Ecaron	011A	Ě	Latin capital letter E with caron
edot	0117	è	Latin small letter e with dot above
Edot	0116	Ě	Latin capital letter E with dot above
emacr	0113	ē	Latin small letter e with macron
Emacr	0112	Ē	Latin capital letter E with macron
eogon	0119	ę	Latin small letter e with ogonek
Eogon	0118	Ę	Latin capital letter E with ogonek
gacute	01F5	ǵ	Latin small letter g with acute
gbreve	011F	ǵ̆	Latin small letter g with breve
Gbreve	011E	Ǵ̆	Latin capital letter G with breve
Gcedil	0122	Ǵ	Latin capital letter G with cedilla
gcirc	011D	ǵ̂	Latin small letter g with circumflex
Gcirc	011C	Ǵ̂	Latin capital letter G with circumflex
gdot	0121	ǵ̇	Latin small letter g with dot above

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Gdot	0120	Ġ	Latin capital letter G with dot above
hcirc	0125	ĥ	Latin small letter h with circumflex
Hcirc	0124	Ĥ	Latin capital letter H with circumflex
hstrok	0127	ħ	Latin small letter h with stroke
Hstrok	0126	Ĥ	Latin capital letter H with stroke
Idot	0130	İ	Latin capital letter I with dot above
Imacr	012A	Ī	Latin capital letter I with macron
imacr	012B	ī	Latin small letter i with macron
ijlig	0133	ij	Latin small ligature ij
IJlig	0132	IJ	Latin capital ligature ij
inodot	0131	ı	Latin small letter dotless i
iogon	012F	ȩ	Latin small letter i with ogonek
Iogon	012E	Ȫ	Latin capital letter I with ogonek
itilde	0129	ĩ	Latin small letter i with tilde
Itilde	0128	Ĩ	Latin capital letter I with tilde
jeirc	0135	ĵ	Latin small letter j with circumflex
Jcirc	0134	Ĵ	Latin capital letter J with circumflex
kcedil	0137	ķ	Latin small letter k with cedilla
Kcedil	0136	Ķ	Latin capital letter K with cedilla

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
kgreen	0138	Ɔ	Latin small letter kra
lacute	013A	ł	Latin small letter l with acute
Lacute	0139	Ł	Latin capital letter L with acute
lcaron	013E	ĺ	Latin small letter l with caron
Lcaron	013D	Ľ	Latin capital letter L with caron
lcedil	013C	ļ	Latin small letter l with cedilla
Lcedil	013B	Ļ	Latin capital letter L with cedilla
lmidot	0140	ł̣	Latin small letter l with middle dot
Lmidot	013F	Ł̣	Latin capital letter L with middle dot
lstrok	0142	ł̨	Latin small letter l with stroke
Lstrok	0141	Ł̨	Latin capital letter L with stroke
nacute	0144	ń	Latin small letter n with acute
Nacute	0143	Ń	Latin capital letter N with acute
eng	014B	ŋ	Latin small letter eng
ENG	014A	Ŋ	Latin capital letter ENG
napos	0149	’n	Latin small letter n preceded by apostrophe
ncaron	0148	ň	Latin small letter n with caron
Ncaron	0147	Ň	Latin capital letter N with caron
ncedil	0146	ņ	Latin small letter n with cedilla

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Ncedil	0145	Ñ	Latin capital letter N with cedilla
odblac	0151	õ	Latin small letter o with double acute
Odblac	0150	Õ	Latin capital letter O with double acute
Omacr	014C	Ō	Latin capital letter O with macron
omacr	014D	ō	Latin small letter o with macron
oelig	0153	œ	Latin small ligature oe
OElig	0152	Œ	Latin capital ligature oe
racute	0155	í	Latin small letter r with acute
Racute	0154	Ŕ	Latin capital letter R with acute
rcaron	0159	ř	Latin small letter r with caron
Rcaron	0158	Ř	Latin capital letter R with caron
rcedil	0157	ŗ	Latin small letter r with cedilla
Rcedil	0156	Ŗ	Latin capital letter R with cedilla
sacute	015B	ś	Latin small letter s with acute
Sacute	015A	Ś	Latin capital letter S with acute
scaron	0161	š	Latin small letter s with caron
Scaron	0160	Š	Latin capital letter S with caron
scedil	015F	ș	Latin small letter s with cedilla
Scedil	015E	Ș	Latin capital letter S with cedilla

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
scirc	015D	ŝ	Latin small letter s with circumflex
Scirc	015C	Ŝ	Latin capital letter S with circumflex
tcaron	0165	ť	Latin small letter t with caron
Tcaron	0164	Ť	Latin capital letter T with caron
tcedil	0163	ț	Latin small letter t with cedilla
Tcedil	0162	Ț	Latin capital letter T with cedilla
tstrok	0167	ƚ	Latin small letter t with stroke
Tstrok	0166	Ʀ	Latin capital letter T with stroke
ubreve	016D	ǔ	Latin small letter u with breve
Ubreve	016C	Ů	Latin capital letter U with breve
udblac	0171	ǘ	Latin small letter u with double acute
Udblac	0170	ǚ	Latin capital letter U with double acute
umacr	016B	ū	Latin small letter u with macron
Umacr	016A	Ū	Latin capital letter U with macron
uogon	0173	ų	Latin small letter u with ogonek
Uogon	0172	Ų	Latin capital letter U with ogonek
uring	016F	ů	Latin small letter u with ring above
Uring	016E	Ů	Latin capital letter U with ring above
utilde	0169	ũ	Latin small letter u with tilde

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
Utilde	0168	Ũ	Latin capital letter U with tilde
wcirc	0175	ŵ	Latin small letter w with circumflex
Wcirc	0174	Ŵ	Latin capital letter W with circumflex
ycirc	0177	ŷ	Latin small letter y with circumflex
Ycirc	0176	Ŷ	Latin capital letter Y with circumflex
Yuml	0178	ÿ	Latin capital letter Y with diaeresis
zacute	017A	ź	Latin small letter z with acute
Zacute	0179	Ź	Latin capital letter Z with acute
zcaron	017E	ž	Latin small letter z with caron
Zcaron	017D	Ž	Latin capital letter Z with caron
zdot	017C	ẏ	Latin small letter z with dot above
Zdot	017B	Ẑ	Latin capital letter Z with dot above

# Numeric and Special Graphic Character Entities (%isonum;)

Numeric and Special Graphic Character Entities (%isonum;) -- Numeric and Special Graphic Character Entities

The %isonum; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Numeric and Special Graphic//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
half	00BD	$\frac{1}{2}$	Vulgar fraction one half
frac12	00BD	$\frac{1}{2}$	Vulgar fraction one half
frac14	00BC	$\frac{1}{4}$	Vulgar fraction one quarter
frac34	00BE	$\frac{3}{4}$	Vulgar fraction three quarters
frac18	215B	$\frac{1}{8}$	Vulgar fraction one eighth
frac38	215C	$\frac{3}{8}$	Vulgar fraction three eighths
frac58	215D	$\frac{5}{8}$	Vulgar fraction five eighths
frac78	215E	$\frac{7}{8}$	Vulgar fraction seven eighths
sup1	00B9	1	Superscript one
sup2	00B2	2	Superscript two
sup3	00B3	3	Superscript three
plus	002B	+	Plus sign
plusmn	00B1	$\pm$	Plus-minus sign

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
lt	003C	<	Less-than sign
equals	003D	=	Equals sign
gt	003E	>	Greater-than sign
divide	00F7	÷	Division sign
times	00D7	×	Multiplication sign
curren	00A4	¤	Currency sign
pound	00A3	£	Pound sign
dollar	0024	\$	Dollar sign
cent	00A2	¢	Cent sign
yen	00A5	¥	Yen sign
num	0023	#	Number sign
percent	0025	%	Percent sign
amp	0026	&	Ampersand
ast	002A	*	Asterisk
commat	0040	@	Commercial at
lsqb	005B	[	Left square bracket
bsol	005C	\	Reverse solidus
rsqb	005D	]	Right square bracket
lcub	007B	{	Left curly bracket

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
horbar	2015	—	Horizontal bar
verbar	007C		Vertical line
rcub	007D	}	Right curly bracket
micro	00B5	μ	Micro sign
ohm	2126	Ω	Ohm sign
deg	00B0	°	Degree sign
ordm	00BA	º	Masculine ordinal indicator
ordf	00AA	ª	Feminine ordinal indicator
sect	00A7	§	Section sign
para	00B6	¶	Pilcrow sign
middot	00B7	·	Middle dot
larr	2190	←	Leftwards arrow
rarr	2192	→	Rightwards arrow
uarr	2191	↑	Upwards arrow
darr	2193	↓	Downwards arrow
copy	00A9	©	Copyright sign
reg	00AE	®	Registered sign
trade	2122	™	Trade mark sign
brvbar	00A6		Broken bar

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
not	00AC	↯	Not sign
sung		🎵	Eighth note
excl	0021	!	Exclamation mark
ixcl	00A1	¡	Inverted exclamation mark
quot	0022	"	Quotation mark
apos	0027	'	Apostrophe
lpar	0028	(	Left parenthesis
rpar	0029	)	Right parenthesis
comma	002C	,	Comma
lowbar	005F	—	Low line
hyphen	002D	-	Hyphen
period	002E	.	Period
sol	002F	/	Solidus
colon	003A	:	Colon
semi	003B	;	Semicolon
quest	003F	?	Question mark
iquest	00BF	¿	Inverted question mark
laquo	00AB	«	Left-pointing double angle quotation mark
raquo	00BB	»	Right-pointing double angle quotation mark

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
lsquo	2018	‘	Left single quotation mark
rsquo	2019	’	Right single quotation mark
ldquo	201C	“	Left double quotation mark
rdquo	201D	”	Right double quotation mark
nbsp	00A0	␣	No-break space
shy	00AD	–	Soft hyphen

# Publishing Character Entities (%isopub;)

Publishing Character Entities (%isopub;) -- Publishing Character Entities

The %isopub; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

```
ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Publishing//EN
```

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
emsp	2003		Em space
ensp	2002		En space
emsp13	2004		Three-per-em space
emsp14	2005		Four-per-em space
numsp	2007		Figure space
puncsp	2008		Punctuation space
thinsp	2009		Thin space
hairsp	200A		Hair space
mdash	2014		Em dash
ndash	2013		En dash
dash	2010		Dash
blank	2423		Open box
hellip	2026		Horizontal ellipsis
nldr	2025		Two dot leader

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
frac13	2153	$\frac{1}{3}$	Vulgar fraction one third
frac23	2154	$\frac{2}{3}$	Vulgar fraction two thirds
frac15	2155	$\frac{1}{5}$	Vulgar fraction one fifth
frac25	2156	$\frac{2}{5}$	Vulgar fraction two fifths
frac35	2157	$\frac{3}{5}$	Vulgar fraction three fifths
frac45	2158	$\frac{4}{5}$	Vulgar fraction four fifths
frac16	2159	$\frac{1}{6}$	Vulgar fraction one sixth
frac56	215A	$\frac{5}{6}$	Vulgar fraction five sixths
incare	2105	$\text{c}/\text{o}$	Care of
block	2588		Full block
uhblk	2580		Upper half block
lhblk	2584		Lower half block
blk14	2591		Light shade
blk12	2592		Medium shade
blk34	2593		Dark shade
marker	25AE		Black vertical rectangle
cir	25CB		White circle
squ	25A1		White square
rect	25AD		White rectangle

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
utri	25B5	▲	White up-pointing small triangle
dtri	25BF	▼	White down-pointing small triangle
star		☆	star, open
bull	2022	•	Bullet
squf	25AA	■	Black small square
utrif	25B4	▲	Black up-pointing small triangle
dtrif	25BE	▼	Black down-pointing small triangle
ltrif	25C2	◀	Black left-pointing small triangle
rtrif	25B8	▶	Black right-pointing small triangle
clubs	2663	♣	Black club suit
diams	2666	♦	Black diamond suit
hearts	2661	♥	White heart suit
spades	2660	♠	Black spade suit
malt	2720	✠	Maltese cross
dagger	2020	†	Dagger
Dagger	2021	‡	Double dagger
check	2713	✓	Check mark
cross	2717	✗	Ballot x
sharp	266F	♯	Music sharp sign

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
flat	266D	♭	Music flat sign
male	2642	♂	Male sign
female	2640	♀	Female sign
phone	260E	☎	Black telephone
telrec	2315	📞	Telephone recorder
copysr	2117	©	Sound recording copyright
caret	2041	⸮	Caret insertion point
lsquor	201A	‘	Single low-nine quotation mark
ldquor	201E	”	Double low-nine quotation mark
fflig	FB00	ff	Latin small ligature ff
filig	007F	fi	Latin small ligature fi
fjlig		fj	small fj ligature
ffilig	FB03	ffi	Latin small ligature ffi
ffllig	FB04	ffl	Latin small ligature ffl
flig	0090	fl	Latin small ligature fl
mldr	2026	⋯	Horizontal ellipsis
rdquor	201D	”	Right double quotation mark
rsquor	2019	’	Right single quotation mark
vellip	22EE	⋮	Vertical ellipsis

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
hybull	2043	▪	Hyphen bullet
loz	25CA	◊	Lozenge
lozf		◆	blacklozenge - lozenge, filled
ltri	25C3	◀	White left-pointing small triangle
rtri	25B9	▶	White right-pointing small triangle
starf		★	bigstar - star, filled
natur	266E	♮	Music natural sign
rx	211E	℞	Prescription take
sext	2736	✳	Six pointed black star
target	2316	⊕	Position indicator
dlcrop	230D	⌞	Bottom left crop
drcrop	230C	⌟	Bottom right crop
ulcrop	230F	⌠	Top left crop
urcrop	230E	⌡	Top right crop

# General Technical Character Entities (%isotech;)

General Technical Character Entities (%isotech;) -- General Technical Character Entities

The %isotech; parameter entity includes the ISO character entities with the public identifier:

ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES General Technical//EN

## Description

The following character entities are defined in this entity set:

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
aleph	2135	$\aleph$	Alef symbol
and	2227	$\wedge$	Logical and
ang90	221F	$\llcorner$	Right angle
angsph	2222	$\sphericalangle$	Spherical angle
ap	2248	$\approx$	Almost equal to
because	2235	$\because$	Because
bottom	22A5	$\perp$	Up tack
cap	2229	$\cap$	Intersection
cong	2245	$\cong$	Approximately equal to
conint	222E	$\oint$	Contour integral
cup	222A	$\cup$	Union
equiv	2261	$\equiv$	Identical to
exist	2203	$\exists$	There exists
forall	2200	$\forall$	For all

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
fnof	0192	$\mathfrak{f}$	Latin small letter f with hook
ge	2265	$\geq$	Greater-than or equal to
iff		$\Leftrightarrow$	iff =if and only if
infin	221E	$\infty$	Infinity
int	222B	$\int$	Integral
isin	2208	$\in$	Element of
lang	3008	$\langle$	Left angle bracket
lArr	21D0	$\Leftarrow$	Leftwards double arrow
le	2264	$\leq$	Less-than or equal to
minus	2212	$-$	Minus sign
mnplus	2213	$\mp$	Minus-or-plus sign
nabla	2207	$\nabla$	Nabla
ne	2260	$\neq$	Not equal to
ni	220B	$\ni$	Contains as member
or	2228	$\vee$	Logical or
par	2225	$\parallel$	Parallel to
part	2202	$\partial$	Partial differential
permil	2030	$\text{‰}$	Per mille sign
perp	22A5	$\perp$	Up tack

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
prime	2032	'	Prime
Prime	2033	''	Double prime
prop	221D	$\propto$	Proportional to
radic	221A	$\sqrt{\quad}$	Square root
rang	3009	$\rangle$	Right angle bracket
rArr	21D2	$\Rightarrow$	Rightwards double arrow
sim	223C	$\sim$	Tilde operator
sime	2243	$\approx$	Asymptotically equal to
square	25A1	$\square$	White square
sub	2282	$\subset$	Subset of
sube	2286	$\subseteq$	Subset of or equal to
sup	2283	$\supset$	Superset of
supe	2287	$\supseteq$	Superset of or equal to
there4	2234	$\therefore$	Therefore
Verbar	2016	$\parallel$	Double vertical line
angst	212B	$\text{\AA}$	Angstrom sign
bernou	212C	$\mathcal{B}$	Script capital b
compfn	2218	$\circ$	Ring operator
Dot	00A8	$\ddot{\quad}$	Diaeresis

Entity	Unicode #	Glyph	ISO Description
DotDot	20DC	⋯⋯	Combining four dots above
hamilt	210B	<i>H</i>	Script capital h
lagran	2112	<i>L</i>	Script capital l
lowast	2217	*	Asterisk operator
notin	2209	∉	Not an element of
order	2134	<i>O</i>	Script capital o
phmmat	2133	<i>M</i>	Script capital m
tdot	20DB	⋯	Combining three dots above
tprime	2034	≡	Triple prime
wedgeq	2259	≐	Estimates